



**ELMOASSER**  
GUIDE

# CONNECT

By a group of supervisors

**Parents' Guide** دليل ولي الأمر

الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



**AL TALADA BOOKSTORE**  
For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt  
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91  
E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com  
www.elmoasserbooks.com

15014

**4<sup>th</sup>**  
Primary

FIRST TERM

# Specifications for Fourth Year Primary (1<sup>st</sup> Term )

## English Examination (2024 - 2025)

مواصفات ورقة امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الرابع الإبتدائي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥

Time : One Hour and a Half    2024 / 2025    30 Marks

### A Listening [6 Marks]

#### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

A text about **FOURTY [40]** words related to the Set Books is provided.

Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR [4]** multiple

choice questions with **FOUR [4]** options each.

[One mark and a half each]

### B Reading [14 Marks]

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة. [4 Marks]

**FOUR [4]** MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are

provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR**

**[4]** options given.

[One mark each]

#### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. [4 Marks]

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

An unseen text from **FORTY [40]** to **FIFTY [50]** words with **FOUR [4]**

deletions is provided. **FIVE [5]** words related to vocabulary are also

given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text

with **ONE [1]** of the **FIVE [5]** words given. The first sentence should be

written in full.

[One mark each]

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة. [6 Marks]

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY [70]** to **EIGHTY**

**[80]** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty

level for primary FOUR. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO [2]** MCQ questions with **FOUR [4]** options each dealing with **TWO [2]** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text. [One mark each]

B. **TWO [2]** open ended questions dealing with **TWO [2]** of the following reading comprehension skills:



- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text. *[Two marks each]*

### **C Writing [10 Marks]**

#### **5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

*[4 Marks]* اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

**FOUR [4]** structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. *[One mark each]*

#### **6 Punctuate the following:**

*[1 Mark]* ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

A simple statement [sentence or question] of about **SIX [6]** words with **TWO [2]** missing punctuation marks is provided [Capital Letter / Full Stop/ Question Mark/ Exclamation Mark/ Comma]. Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. *[Half a mark each]*

#### **7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

*[5 Marks]*

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر [١٨] كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **EIGHTEEN [18]** words using **TWO [2]** given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file.....etc.

*[One mark for relevance of ideas - one mark for vocabulary - one mark for grammar - one mark for spelling - one mark for punctuation]*

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الرابع الابتدائي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤/٢٠٢٥ First Term

| Months       | Connect-Primary Four Student's Book |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| October      | Unit 1 + Unit 2 + Unit 3            |
| November     | Review 1 + Unit 4 + Unit 5          |
| December     | Unit 6 + Review 2                   |
| January 2025 | General Revision                    |



# Reading & writing skill

## 1 Reading skill

هو عبارة عن قطعة فهم تتكون من [٧٠-٨٠] كلمة وعلي الطالب أن يجيب عن الأسئلة التالية:

١. سؤالين اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

[حدد الفكرة العامة في النص - وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص - حدد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص]

٢. سؤالين من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية :

[وضح العلاقة بين شخصين، حدثين أو فكرتين في النص - وضع استنتاجات منطقية في النص - تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الرئيسية في النص]

### ★ Read the text and answer the questions.

To stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. Keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information [e.g. telephone number]. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Everyone should follow these instructions to stay safe online.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

#### • Identify the general idea of the text.

حدد الفكرة العامة في النص.

1. This text is about ".....".

a. pollution

b. celebrating festivals

c. having fun

d. being safe online

#### • Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.

وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص.

2. You should tell your ..... if you're worried about something.

a. neighbors

b. friends

c. parents

d. classmates

#### • Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

حدد معنى كلمات أو عبارات في النص.

3. The underlined word "online" means connected to the .....

a. TV

b. radio

c. internet

d. library

### B. Answer the following questions.

#### • Describe the relationship between two pieces of information in a text.

وضح العلاقة بين معلومتين في النص.

- Why shouldn't you tell anyone your personal information ?

- To stay safe online.

#### • Make logical inferences from the text.

ضع استنتاجات منطقية في النص.

A • Infer استنتج the instructions you should follow to stay safe online.

Mention two اذكر اثنين.

• Don't make friends with people you don't know.

• Don't send photos to people you don't know.



- B** • What will happen if we answer a video call from someone we don't know ?

\* We won't be safe online.

- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

لخص التفاصيل والأفكار الرئيسية والفرعية في النص.

- Summarize the key idea of the text in one sentence.

\* How to stay safe online.

## 2 Writing skill

### 1 How to write a paragraph: كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

#### القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا ١ سم) في السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع [.] واضحة في نهاية كل جملة.
٤. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
٥. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل وتووع بدايات الجمل.
٦. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. اجتهد في تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

### 2 How to write an email : كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

| New Message   |                                     | - □ × |
|---|-------------------------------------|-------|
| From :  | عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل      |       |
| To :  | عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه |       |
| Subject :   | موضوع الرسالة                       |       |
| Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه,                  |                                     |       |
| How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you. |                                     |       |
| ..... موضوع الرسالة .....                           |                                     |       |
| .....   |                                     |       |
| .....   |                                     |       |
| Yours,  |                                     |       |
| اسم الراسل  |                                     |       |
| 📍 ★ 📎 ✎ 🗑 ⌵   |                                     |       |

# CONTENTS

## ► **THEME 1** | I discover myself

|          |                               |     |
|----------|-------------------------------|-----|
| Unit 1   | I feel good .....             | 16  |
| Unit 2   | Desert animals .....          | 51  |
| Unit 3   | Why do we grow plants ? ..... | 86  |
| Review 1 | .....                         | 126 |

## ► **THEME 2** | Myself and others

|          |                           |     |
|----------|---------------------------|-----|
| Unit 4   | Where do you live ? ..... | 131 |
| Unit 5   | Where do you work ? ..... | 167 |
| Unit 6   | What do you do ? .....    | 203 |
| Review 2 | .....                     | 233 |

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| ► Monthly Assessments ..... | 235 |
| ► Listening Texts .....     | 239 |
| ► Answers of Topics .....   | 243 |





# THEME

# 1

I discover myself





## I feel good

أشعر أنني بحالة جيدة

## Aims of Unit One : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.  
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الأطعمة وكيف أبقي صحتي.
- practice making sentences with [and] or [but].  
- أتدرب على صياغة جمل باستخدام [and] أو [but].
- read and listen to a Chinese folk tale.  
- أقرأ وأستمع إلى حكاية شعبية صينية.
- distinguish long and short vowels.  
- أميز بين الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة.
- talk about a place in Egypt.  
- أتحدث عن مكان في مصر.
- research and make a presentation.  
- أبحث وأقوم بإعداد عرض تقديمي.







## I

## Vocabulary

## ► Key vocabulary



chicken دجاج



grapes عنب



milk لبن



onions بصل



mangoes مانجو



bananas موز



rice أرز



sugarcane قصب السكر



watermelon ثمرة بطيخ



potatoes بطاطس



## ► Extra vocabulary

|          |               |             |            |
|----------|---------------|-------------|------------|
| Egyptian | مصرية الجنسية | healthy     | صحي - سليم |
| food     | طعام          | yummy / yum | لذيذ       |
| ready    | جاهز          | special     | مميز - خاص |
| fruits   | فاكهة         | vegetables  | خضروات     |
| country  | دولة / بلد    | drinks      | مشروبات    |

## ► Meals الوجبات

|           |              |        |             |       |             |
|-----------|--------------|--------|-------------|-------|-------------|
| breakfast | وجبة الإفطار | dinner | وجبة العشاء | lunch | وجبة الغداء |
|-----------|--------------|--------|-------------|-------|-------------|

## Did you know ?

In Japan, you can buy a watermelon that looks like a pyramid.

في اليابان يمكنك شراء بطيخة تشبه الهرم.

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular |      |          | Irregular |             |         |
|---------|------|----------|-----------|-------------|---------|
| Present |      | Past     | Present   |             | Past    |
| raise   | يربى | raised   | grow      | يزرع - ينمو | grew    |
| produce | ينتج | produced | make      | يصنع        | made    |
|         |      |          | think     | يعتقد       | thought |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                           |              |               |              |
|---------------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| look delicious            | يبدو لذيذًا  | That's right. | هذا صحيح.    |
| come from                 | يأتي من      | What else ?   | ماذا أيضًا ؟ |
| Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل . | هيا بنا .... |               |              |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic         | Guiding words     | Sentences                             |
|---------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Egyptian food | make - special    | Mom made special food for us.         |
|               | grow - rice       | We grow rice in Egypt.                |
|               | raise - chickens  | We raise chickens in Egypt.           |
|               | farmers - produce | Egyptian farmers produce many things. |

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We made chips from .....

- a. bananas      b. mangoes      c. potatoes      d. tomatoes

2. I drink a glass of ..... for breakfast.

- a. onions      b. bananas      c. milk      d. rice

3. We ..... chickens to get fresh eggs.

- a. raise      b. read      c. look      d. grow

4. Watermelon and ..... are my favorite fruits.

- a. onions      b. grapes      c. potatoes      d. rice



## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Where are Mom and Maged ? أين ماجد ووالدته ؟

Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.



الغداء جاهز. لقد أعددت بعض من الطعام المميز لنا.

Mom, it looks delicious !

إنه يبدو لذيذاً يا أمي!



Which food comes from our country, do you think ?

في اعتقادك ، أي طعام يأتي من بلدنا ؟



I think we grow rice in Egypt.

أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر.



Yes, that's right. What else ?

نعم، هذا صحيح. ماذا أيضاً ؟



Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.

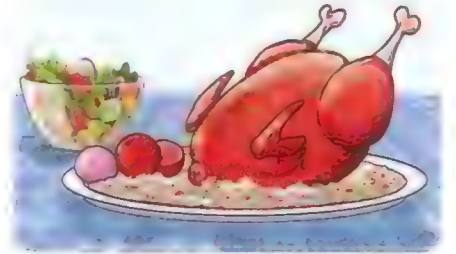
هممم، أعتقد أننا نربي دجاج في مصر.



Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table.

Let's eat!

نعم، والطماطم والبصل. ينتج المزارعون المصريون الكثير من الأشياء التي تراها على هذه المائدة. هيا بنا نأكل!



Yum !

لذيذ!



# General Exercises | on Lesson 1

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mazen and his mom are .....  
a. thirsty      b. hungry      c. excited      d. angry
2. Mazen's mom decided to make special ..... for them.  
a. food      b. party      c. clothes      d. bag
3. She cooked rice and .....  
a. onions      b. pizza      c. fish      d. chicken
4. The food looks .....  
a. ugly      b. delicious      c. bad      d. unhealthy

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

**Fruits - grapes - grow - chicken - sugar**

Fruits grow in different times of the year. We [1] ..... different kinds of them in Egypt. Mangoes and [2] ..... are delicious fruits. We get [3] ..... from sugarcane. [4] ..... have important vitamins that are good for our health.

[الاسماعيلية - القصاصين ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

Farmers are very important to us. They produce a lot of food for us to eat. They grow rice in Egypt. They also grow vegetables like onions. They grow fruits like watermelons and bananas. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

My uncle is a farmer. He works hard on his farm. I like to visit him every summer. My cousin helps him on the farm. I like to help them, too. It's interesting! They grow many kinds of delicious fruit. We get fresh mangoes from the farm every year. There are different animals on his farm like goats, cows and a donkey.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "delicious" means ".....".  
a. tiring      b. ready      c. yummy      d. boring
2. Farmers raise ..... to get eggs.  
a. cows      b. sheep      c. chickens      d. goats



**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why are farmers very important ?

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

**A**

1. .... grow vegetables for us to eat.

[القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤]

a. Engineers      b. Farmers      c. Doctors      d. Vets

2. We produce vegetables like ..... and potatoes.

a. onions      b. bananas      c. watermelons      d. apples

3. Breakfast is my favorite .....

[القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٤]

a. job      b. meal      c. clothes      d. place

4. The food looks ..... and smells good.

a. delicious      b. bad      c. ugly      d. noisy

**B**

1. Orange juice is my favorite .....

a. book      b. sport      c. food      d. drink

2. .... and mangoes are my favorite fruits.

[الاسكندرية - المنتزة ٢٠٢٤]

a. Watermelon      b. Rice      c. Milk      d. Onions

3. He is a farmer. He ..... rice on his farm.

a. raises      b. grows      c. comes      d. drinks

4. Farmers ..... many vegetables every year.

a. happen      b. practice      c. talk      d. produce

**5 Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

egyptian food is yummy

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر (١٨) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

**Food in Egypt**

[قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٤]

**Guiding elements :**

- grow

- farmers



## I

## Vocabulary

|             |               |                  |                   |
|-------------|---------------|------------------|-------------------|
| candy       | حلوى          | banana milkshake | لبن مخفوق بالموز  |
| wheelchair  | كرسي متحرك    | cola             | مياه غازية [كولا] |
| scientist   | عالِم         | interesting      | شيق/ممتع          |
| video games | ألعاب الفيديو | sweet            | حلو المذاق        |
| awesome     | رائع          | busy             | مشغول             |
| team        | فريق          | fresh            | طازج              |

• **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

| Regular        |           | Irregular   |         |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|---------|
| Present        | Past      | Present     | Past    |
| practice يتدرب | practiced | think يعتقد | thought |
| talk يتحدث     | talked    | see يرى     | saw     |

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                 |                       |             |              |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------|--------------|
| on the weekend  | في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | on Saturday | في يوم السبت |
| do sport        | يمارس رياضة           | go walking  | يذهب للتمشية |
| in a wheelchair | على كرسي متحرك        | talk to     | يتحدث إلى    |

**Main points on Listening and Reading texts**

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic         | Guiding words  | Sentences   |
|---------------|----------------|---|
| Being healthy | sport - school | Judy does a lot of sport at school.                 |
|               | candy - fruit  | Judy doesn't eat candy, but she likes fruit.        |
|               | wheelchair     | Adam is in a wheelchair basketball team at school.  |
|               | basketball     | Adam practices basketball three times every week.   |
|               | drink - water  | Adam wants to drink more water.                     |
|               | love - burgers | Dareen loves burgers, but she only eats one a week. |





## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- It's ..... to drink water.  
a. bad                      b. healthy                      c. unhealthy                      d. not good
- Basketball is my favorite ..... ,  
a. sport                      b. food                      c. drink                      d. candy
- I play football in the school football ..... .  
a. meal                      b. food                      c. weekend                      d. team

## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Adam, Dareen and Judy are talking about being healthy.

- آدم ودارين وجودي يتحدثون عن كيف يكونوا أصحاء.



Do you think you're **healthy**<sup>[1]</sup>, Judy ?

هل تعتقد أنك تتمتعين بصحة جيدة يا جودي ؟



Yes, I do. I do a lot of **sport**<sup>[2]</sup> at school. On the weekend, I walk

to my grandma's house with my

family. I really like **walking**<sup>[3]</sup> because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat **candy**<sup>[4]</sup>, but I like fruit.

My favorite fruits are bananas and **watermelon**<sup>[5]</sup>.

My mom makes an **awesome**<sup>[6]</sup> **banana milkshake**<sup>[7]</sup> !



[1] صحي

[2] رياضة

[3] السير

[4] حلوى

[5] بطيخ

[6] رائع

[7] لبن مخفوق بالموز

نعم، أعتقد. أنني أمارس الرياضة كثيرًا في المدرسة. في العطلة الأسبوعية، أسير إلى منزل جدتي مع عائلتي. أنا حقًا أحب السير لأنني أستطيع التحدث إلى والدي ووالدي. نحن نستطيع أن نرى المنازل والمحلات المختلفة. لا أتناول الحلوى، ولكني أحب الفاكهة. فاكهتي المفضلة هي الموز والبطيخ. والدي تصنع لبن مخفوق بالموز رائع !



Do you think you are healthy , Adam ?

هل تعتقد أنك تتمتع بصحة جيدة، يا آدم ؟



Yes. I'm in a **wheelchair**<sup>[8]</sup> **basketball**<sup>[9]</sup> **team**<sup>[10]</sup> at school. We practice three times every week. I **drink cola**<sup>[11]</sup>, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very **busy**<sup>[12]</sup>. I play basketball and I play **football**<sup>[13]</sup> in the park.



[8] كرسي متحرك

[9] كرة السلة

[10] فريق

[11] يشرب مياه غازية

[12] مشغول

[13] كرة القدم

نعم، أنا عضو في فريق كرة السلة على كرسي متحرك في المدرسة. نتدرب ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع. أنا أشرب المياه الغازية [كولا] ، لكنني أريد أن أشرب المزيد من الماء. لا ألعب ألعاب الفيديو لأنني مشغول للغاية. ألعب كرة السلة وكرة القدم في الحديقة.



Do you think you are healthy, Dareen ?

هل تعتقدين أنك بصحة جيدة، يا دارين ؟



Yes, I think I'm healthy. My mom and I go walking in the **desert**<sup>[14]</sup> with my dad. Dad is a **scientist**<sup>[15]</sup> and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every **weekend**<sup>[16]</sup>. It's very interesting, but it's very hot sometimes ! I only drink water because I don't like cola. I love **burgers**<sup>[17]</sup>, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes **yummy**<sup>[18]</sup> salads.



[14] صحراء

[15] عالم

[16] عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

[17] برجر

[18] لذيذ

نعم، أعتقد أنني بصحة جيدة. والدتي وأنا نذهب للتمشية في الصحراء مع والدي. أبي عالم ويحب دراسة الحيوانات والنباتات. نذهب معه دائمًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه أمر ممتع للغاية، لكن الطقس حار جدًا في بعض الأحيان ! أنا أشرب الماء فقط لأنني لا أحب المياه الغازية [كولا]. أحب البرجر، لكنني أتناول ساندوتش واحدًا فقط في الأسبوع. تصنع والدي أنواعًا لذيذة من السلطات.



### III

### Language Focus

► A conjunction : is a word that joins words and sentences together.

أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل معًا.

1

and و

To add two ideas together

- نستخدم (and) عندما نضيف أفكار (نربطها)  
معًا أو أحداث متتالية

I eat vegetables  
and  
I exercise.



2

but لكن

To contrast two ideas

- نستخدم (but) عند التعبير عن تناقض فكرتين

I want to play football,  
but  
my leg hurts.



### Pop Quiz on Language focus

► Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. I want to go swimming, ..... [and] it is raining.
2. Fatima loves ice cream ..... [but] chocolate.
3. After school, I do my homework ..... [because] I eat dinner.
4. I practice basketball ..... [or] I walk home from school every day.
5. I don't drink cola, ..... [or] I drink fresh juice.
6. He can speak English, ..... [and] he can't speak Chinese.
7. In summer, it's dry ..... [but] hot.
8. I want to be healthy, ..... [and] I don't like to eat vegetables.
9. Cats are cute ..... [but] quiet.
10. I like reading stories ..... [but] I like watching films, too.

• Help your child learn how to use conjunctions "but" & "and".

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي كيفية استخدام أدوات الربط "but" و "and".

# General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Judy does a lot of sports at .....  
a. hospital      b. house      c. school      d. club
- Judy likes .....  
a. running      b. jumping      c. walking      d. sleeping
- Judy's favorite fruits are bananas and .....  
a. watermelon      b. figs      c. guavas      d. apples
- Judy's mom makes an awesome ..... milkshake.  
a. mango      b. watermelon      c. orange      d. banana

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Fruits are ..... and healthy.  
a. salty      b. sweet      c. bad      d. busy
- He is a/an ..... He is doing some research about plants.  
a. teacher      b. engineer      c. scientist      d. guide
- Mom uses bananas and milk to make delicious banana .....  
a. milkshake      b. tea      c. burgers      d. soup
- I don't drink cola because it is .....  
a. healthy      b. unhealthy      c. good      d. delicious

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

weekend - easy - hot - scientist - walking

I'm Dareen. My mom and I go [1] ..... in the desert with my dad. Dad is a [2] ..... and he likes looking at animals and plants. The desert is very interesting, but it's very [3] ..... sometimes. I go with my dad every [4] .....  
[البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٤]

## 4 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

A

- Your cat is small, ..... [so] my cat is big.
- She is a tour guide ..... [but] she likes reading about museums.
- I can speak English ..... [or] French.
- We wash the potatoes ..... [but] cut them into pieces.



## B

1. I like chocolate ice cream, ..... [or] my sister likes vanilla.
2. Moaz has a car, ..... [and] he likes walking to his office.
3. I have one brother..... [but] two sisters.
4. She wants to buy a car, ..... [and] she doesn't have enough money.

## 5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

I'm Adam. I like sports. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I'm healthy. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I like to play with my friends in the park. We go to the park on Fridays. My dad is a scientist. He likes looking at animals and plants.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about " ..... ".  
 a. Reading      b. Fruits      c. Video games      d. Being healthy
2. Adam's favorite sport is .....  
 a. basketball      b. football      c. tennis      d. swimming

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
 .....
4. How often does Adam practice basketball ?  
 .....

## 6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

do you think you're healthy

[الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٣]

## 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر (١٨) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

"Healthy food"

Guiding elements : vegetables - watermelon

.....

.....

.....

.....

- ▶ The empty pot
- ▶ Pronunciation
- ▶ CLIL : Math



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|             |          |          |        |         |             |
|-------------|----------|----------|--------|---------|-------------|
| emperor     | إمبراطور | palace   | قصر    | honest  | أمين / صادق |
| competition | مسابقة   | gardener | بستاني | honesty | أمانة / صدق |

## • Extra vocabulary

|         |       |          |             |       |            |
|---------|-------|----------|-------------|-------|------------|
| pot     | وعاء  | next     | قادم        | China | دولة الصين |
| winning | الفوز | dead     | ميت         | seeds | بذور       |
| empty   | فارغ  | Folktale | حكاية شعبية | lie   | يكذب       |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular |       |          | Irregular |      |      |
|---------|-------|----------|-----------|------|------|
| Present |       | Past     | Present   |      | Past |
| happen  | يحدث  | happened | say       | يقول | said |
| ask     | يسأل  | asked    | give      | يعطي | gave |
| try     | يحاول | tried    | win       | يفوز | won  |
| water   | يروي  | watered  | lose      | يخسر | lost |
| travel  | يتنقل | traveled | put       | يضع  | put  |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                   |              |            |              |
|-------------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| bring ... back to | يعيد ... إلى | look after | يعتني بـ     |
| good at           | جيد في       | long ago   | منذ زمن بعيد |

## • Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

| Word الكلمة                 | Definition التعريف  |
|-----------------------------|---|
| An emperor إمبراطور         | is someone who is like a king هو شخص مثل الملك                        |
| A palace قصر                | is where an emperor lives هو المكان الذي يعيش به الإمبراطور           |
| honest أمين / صادق          | someone who does not lie الشخص الذي لا يكذب                           |
| competition منافسة / مسابقة | in a competition someone tries to win في المسابقة يحاول الشخص أن يفوز |



★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

### The Empty Pot : A Folktale From China

الإناء الفارغ : حكاية شعبية من الصين

Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the emperor<sup>[1]</sup>. He lived in a beautiful palace<sup>[2]</sup>. One day the emperor said, "There will be a competition<sup>[3]</sup>. I will give a seed to each gardener<sup>[4]</sup>. The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."

"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it." says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me."

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew.

At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.

"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng.

"I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng. "But it didn't grow."

"Then you win!<sup>[5]</sup>" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave everyone were dead. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and honest<sup>[6]</sup>. So you will be the next emperor!"



[1] إمبراطور

[2] قصر

[3] مسابقة

[4] بستاني

[5] يفوز

[6] أمين/صادق

**The moral of the story :** مغزى القصة

Honesty is more important than winning. الصدق أكثر أهمية من الفوز.

منذ زمن بعيد عاش تشنغ في الصين. كان أهم رجل في الصين هو الإمبراطور. عاش في قصر جميل. ذات يوم قال الإمبراطور: "ستكون هناك مسابقة. سأعطي بذرة لكل بستاني. الشخص الذي يستطيع أن يزرع أجمل نبات من البذرة سيكون هو الإمبراطور القادم."

قال الإمبراطور: "خذ القدر والبذرة وازرعها. اجعلها تنمو إلى نبات جميل، ثم أحضر النبات لي."

كان تشنغ جيدًا جدًا في زراعة الأشياء والاعتناء بحديقته. وضع البذرة في الشمس وأعطاه الماء. ولكن لم يحدث شيء. حاول تشنغ لأسابيع ولكن لم ينمو أي نبات. كان لدى البستانيون الآخرين نباتات نمت.

في القصر، جميع البستانيون لديهم نباتات جميلة.

سأل الإمبراطور تشنغ: "أين نباتك؟" قال تشنغ: "لقد عملت بجد. كنت أسقيها كل يوم، لكنها لم تنمو."

قال الإمبراطور: "إذا أنت تفوز!، البذور التي أعطيتها للجميع كانت غير صالحة. البذور لا يمكن أن تنمو. أنت الوحيد الصالح والصادق. لذلك ستكون الإمبراطور القادم!"

**Describe the relationship between ideas.**

صف العلاقة بين الأفكار.

**Learn**

1. Who will be the next emperor ? - Cheng.

**Practice**

2. Where did Cheng live ? .....

### III

## Pronunciation

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

### Short and long vowels

#### Short vowels

- The letter [a] makes the sound /æ/



bag حقيبة

- The letter [i] makes the sound /ɪ/



mix يخلط

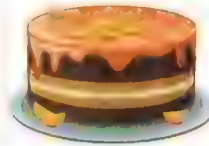
- The letter [o] makes the sound /ɒ/



mom أم

#### Long vowels

- The letters [a - e] make the sound /eɪ/



cake كيك

- The letters [i - e] make the sound /aɪ/



rice أرز

- The letters [o - e] make the sound /ou/



nose أنف





## Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Look and write the missing sound. انظر واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1.



r - c -

2.



n - s -

3.



m - x

2 Read and circle the long vowels.

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تحتوي على صوت متحرك [طويل].

1. nice  
big

2. mom  
nose

3. rice  
mix

4. bag  
cake

## IV

## Language

### The prefix "re"

re:

البادئة "re"

is a prefix that can be added before the verb and gives the meaning of "again".

(re) هي بادئة يمكن أن تضاف قبل الفعل وتعطي معنى [مرة أخرى].

Examples :

do → redo يعيد فعل make → remake يعيد صنع paint → repaint يعيد طلاء

He painted the room again. = He repainted the room.

He cleaned his bike again. = He recleaned his bike.



## Pop Quiz on Language

تدريب لغائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



► Complete the sentences with the words in the box. اكمل الجمل بكلمات من المربع.

remake - repaint - reclean - reread

1. The colors of the room are not good. He will ..... it.

2. His car is dirty. He will ..... it.

3. Please, ..... this cake. It isn't delicious.

4. The story is interesting. She will ..... it.

## Learn

How do you read 6-digit numbers ?

step 1 :

say 2 hundred

step 2 :

say 65 thousand

265,814

step 3 :

say 8 hundred

step 4 :

say number 14

Word form : Two hundred, sixty-five thousand, and eight hundred fourteen

544,432 Five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two

178,880 One hundred, seventy-eight thousand and eight hundred eighty

## Ascending order

### 1 How to arrange numbers in ascending order

• **Ascending order** : means to arrange numbers from smallest to largest.

الترتيب التصاعدي هو ترتيب الأرقام من الأصغر إلى الأكبر.

**Ex. : Arrange in ascending order:**

1. 90,780 - 90,230 - 90,633

90,230 - 90,633 - 90,780

2. 780,050 - 791,005 - 779,500

779,500 - 780,050 - 791,005



Did you know ?

The numerical digits we use today 1, 2, and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numeral system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago.

تعتمد الأرقام التي نستخدمها اليوم ١، ٢، ٣ على نظام الترقيم الهندي العربي. تم تطوير هذا النظام منذ أكثر من ١٠٠٠ عام.



## 2 Comparing numbers : مقارنة الأرقام

### The signs العلامات

$>$  → greater than أكبر من  $<$  → less than أصغر من  $=$  → equals to يساوي

Compare 2,349 and 2,617.

#### Step 1

Begin at the left. Compare.

2,349 } Both numbers have  
2,617 } 2 thousand.

#### Step 2

Find the first place where the digits are different. Compare.

2,349 } 3 hundred is less  
2,617 } than 6 hundred.

so,  $2,349 < 2,617$

or  $2,617 > 2,349$



When comparing numbers, the number which has more number of digits is the greater.  
 $5843 > 798$



### Pop Quiz on Math

#### 1 Read and write the numbers into letters.

اقرأ واكتب الأعداد بالحروف.

- 709,818 .....
- 870,404 .....
- 30,210 .....

#### 2 Put the correct sign ( $<$ , $>$ or $=$ ).

ضع العلامة الصحيحة ( $<$ ,  $>$  أو  $=$ ).

- 7,900,303  790,003
- ten million  10,000,000
- 205,750  203,760

#### 3 Arrange the following numbers in ascending order.

رتب الأرقام التالية ترتيب تصاعدي.

- 698,881      -      690,882      -      690,880  
The order is :    - - - , - - -      -      - - - , - - -      -      - - - , - - -
- 30,000      -      30,120      -      18,700  
The order is :    - - , - - -      -      - - , - - -      -      - - , - - -

# General Exercises | on Lesson 3

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Yang was my friend from .....  
a. Egypt      b. China      c. America      d. England
- Yang was good at ..... things.  
a. buying      b. selling      c. growing      d. keeping
- He was good at looking after his .....  
a. children      b. family      c. house      d. garden
- He liked to plant .....  
a. fruits      b. vegetables      c. cotton      d. flowers

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

### A

- The ..... is someone who is like a king. [الجيزة - البدرشين ٢٠٢٣]  
a. teacher      b. farmer      c. emperor      d. vet
- Someone who is ..... , does not lie .  
a. beautiful      b. ugly      c. honest      d. happy
- This plant is ..... because it doesn't grow.  
a. dead      b. honest      c. empty      d. good
- The emperor lives in a .....  
a. garden      b. palace      c. cupboard      d. playground

### B

- My brother will try to win in the ..... [اسيوط - ديروط ٢٠٢٣]  
a. competition      b. station      c. transportation      d. seed
- The ..... keeps the garden clean.  
a. vet      b. bus driver      c. gardener      d. electrician
- He is from ..... . He is Chinese.  
a. China      b. Egypt      c. Italy      d. France
- The boy was very sad because he ..... the game.  
a. asked      b. won      c. tried      d. lost



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

garden – lie – palace – honest – gardener

Jack was a rich king. He lived in a [1] ..... . He was [2] ..... .  
When people had problems, he helped them. All people loved him. He had  
a very beautiful [3] ..... and it was full of flowers. The [4] .....  
looked after the plants and the flowers in his garden. [سوهاج - جھينة ٢٠٢٣]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

One day, an emperor in China gave the gardeners some seeds to grow.  
The emperor told the gardeners that the one who could grow the most beautiful  
plant, he would be the next emperor. Cheng was one of the gardeners.

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He  
put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng  
tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that  
grew. At the end, Cheng won because the seeds were dead. Only Cheng was  
honest and good so the emperor said that he would be the next emperor.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "beautiful" means " ..... ".

a. bad                      b. ugly                      c. lazy                      d. nice

2. The emperor gave seeds to the ..... .

a. doctors                      b. gardeners                      c. vets                      d. teachers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What was Cheng good at ?

.....

4. Who would be the next emperor ?

.....

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

A

the gardener is good at growing plants

.....

B

where is your plant

.....



I

Vocabulary

|       |        |             |        |           |              |
|-------|--------|-------------|--------|-----------|--------------|
| land  | أرض    | guavas      | جوافة  | fisherman | صياد سمك     |
| crops | محاصيل | governorate | محافظة | nutrients | عناصر غذائية |
| wheat | قمح    | lemons      | ليمون  | Damietta  | محافظة دمياط |
| life  | حياة   | part        | جزء    | Domati    | دمياطى       |

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|          |                 |            |             |
|----------|-----------------|------------|-------------|
| rich in  | غنى بـ / ملي بـ | famous for | مشهور بـ    |
| good for | جيد لـ          | catch fish | يصطاد السمك |

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic                | Guiding words    | Sentences  |
|----------------------|------------------|--|
| Damietta governorate | famous - cheese  | Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese.                 |
|                      | goats - cows     | Goats, cows and sheep live in Damietta.                |
|                      | land - nutrients | The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. |
|                      | farmers - guavas | The farmers grow tomatoes, wheat, lemons and guavas.   |
|                      | people - live in | About 1.5 million people live in Damietta.             |



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- ..... catch fish in the sea.  
a. Vets                      b. Fishermen                      c. Doctors                      d. Farmers
- We need to grow ..... to make bread.  
a. lemons                      b. potatoes                      c. wheat                      d. guava
- Damietta is an Egyptian .....  
a. governorate                      b. park                      c. palace                      d. garden
- My favorite fruits are ..... and grapes.  
a. wheat                      b. rice                      c. guavas                      d. milk



## II Listening and Reading

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

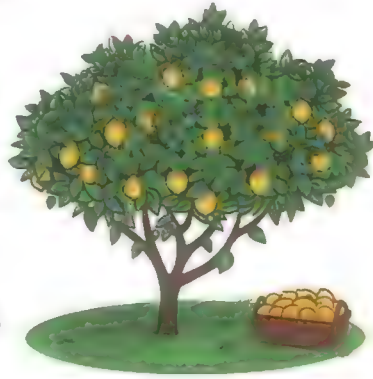
### Food from Damietta

الطعام من محافظة دمياط

The land<sup>(1)</sup> in Damietta governorate<sup>(2)</sup> is rich in<sup>(3)</sup> nutrients<sup>(4)</sup>. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat<sup>(5)</sup>, lemons<sup>(6)</sup>, grapes, and guavas.

Fishermen<sup>(7)</sup> catch<sup>(8)</sup> thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous<sup>(9)</sup>.

About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life<sup>(10)</sup> is good in Damietta !



- (1) أرض
- (2) محافظة
- (3) غني بـ
- (4) عناصر غذائية
- (5) قمح
- (6) ليمون
- (7) صيادون
- (8) يصطاد
- (9) مشهور
- (10) حياة

Describe the relationship between ideas in the text.

صف العلاقة بين الأفكار في النص.

Learn

1. What is the land of Damietta rich in ?  
- It is rich in nutrients.

Practice

2. What do the farmers grow in Damietta ?

3. How many people live in Damietta governorate ?

الأرض بمحافظـة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية. يمكن للمزارعين زراعة الأرز، الطماطم، البطاطس، القمح، الليمون، العنب والجوافة. الصيادون يصطادون آلاف الأسماك من البحر. يتم تربية الأبقار، الماعز والأغنام بمحافظـة دمياط أيضًا. الجبن الدمياطي مشهور جدًا. حوالي واحد ونصف مليون شخص يعيشون في هذا الجزء من مصر. الحياة جيدة في دمياط!

الاختبارات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

# General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Damietta is one of the governorates of .....  
a. China                      b. Egypt                      c. Italy                      d. France
- The ..... in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.  
a. land                      b. sky                      c. home                      d. palace
- Farmers in Damietta grow ..... , lemons and potatoes.  
a. figs                      b. milk                      c. mangoes                      d. wheat
- In Damietta, ..... raise cows and goats.  
a. doctors                      b. fishermen                      c. farmers                      d. vets

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

nutrients – catch – live – goats – grow

I'm Hatem. I live in Damietta governorate. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in [1] ..... The farmers can [2] ..... rice, tomatoes, wheat and grapes. Fishermen [3] ..... thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, [4] ..... and sheep live in Damietta governorate. Domiati cheese is very famous.

[المنيا - بنى مزارع ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Fruits are healthy. They're rich in .....  
a. salt                      b. nutrients                      c. leaves                      d. money
- ..... and sheep are animals we find on the farm.  
a. Elephants                      b. Fish                      c. Goats                      d. Lions
- Damietta is ..... for Domiati cheese.  
a. bad                      b. famous                      c. terrible                      d. poor
- About 1.5 million Egyptians live in Damietta .....  
a. governorate                      b. town                      c. village                      d. country

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

I live in Minya. Minya is a governorate in Upper Egypt. Farmers can grow cotton, corn, wheat, dates and sugarcane in Minya. It is famous for black honey. It is made from sugarcane. There are many interesting places in Minya that many tourists like to visit it. About six million people live in Minya.



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about " ..... Governorate" .

- a. Damietta      b. Minya      c. Alexandria      d. Luxor

2. Black honey is made from .....

- a. wheat      b. cotton      c. corn      d. sugarcane

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many people live in Minya ?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. Farmers can grow rice ..... [but] tomatoes in Damietta.

2. He wants to visit his grandparents, ..... [and] he is busy.

3. Ali is honest ..... [but] he doesn't lie.

4. Fishermen catch fish ..... [so] sell it at the market.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

life is good in damietta.

.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر (18) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

### Damietta governorate

Guiding elements :

- What's Damietta famous for ?

- How is life in Damietta ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

[القاهرة - حلوان ٢٠٢٤]

## Make logical inferences from the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.



التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في استنتاج بعض المعلومات التي تكون موجودة بشكل غير مباشر في النص.



مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص جيداً تستطيع من خلال الأحداث القيام باستنتاج هذه المعلومات.

### Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

#### Read and learn how to answer :

I'm Noha. I live in Damietta. The land in Damietta is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Damiaty cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta !

اقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيداً لكي تتمكن من استنتاج

معلومات أخرى مثلاً :

- \* الأرض في دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية فتستنتج انها جيدة لزراعة المحاصيل.
- \* تقول نهى أن الحياة جيدة في دمياط فتستنتج انها سعيدة هناك.

1. Do you think the land in Damietta is good for growing crops ? Why ?

- Yes, because it's rich in nutrients.

2. Does Noha like living in Damietta ? Why ?

- Yes, because life is good in Damietta.

### Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

#### Read and answer the questions :

I'm Judy. I do a lot of sports at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon.

1. Is Judy healthy or unhealthy ? Why ?

2. Do you think Judy likes talking to her mom and dad ?



# 2

## Correction Notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء

### Review

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| and → [و]         | نستخدم [and] عندما نضيف أفكار (نربطها) معا أو أحداث متتالية |
| but → [لكن]       | نستخدم [but] عند التعبير عن تناقض فكرتين                    |
| the prefix → [re] | البادئة [re] يمكن ان تضاف قبل الفعل وتعني (مرة أخرى)        |

### Learn

| Sentence   | Correction | Reason                               |
|--|------------|--------------------------------------|
| ① I want to go outside, ..... [and] it is raining. | but        | لوجود تناقض                          |
| ② She likes fish ..... [but] rice.                 | and        | ربط فكرتين مقًا                      |
| ③ I want to run, ..... [and] my leg hurts.         | but        | لوجود تناقض                          |
| ④ The chef ..... [unmade] rice.                    | remade     | نستخدم [re] قبل الفعل بمعنى مرة أخرى |

### Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة. Write the reason.

|  |           |       |
|--|-----------|-------|
| ① I eat fruit ..... [but] vegetables.                        | and       | ..... |
| ② I like fresh juice, ..... [and] I don't like cola.         | but       | ..... |
| ③ Nada ..... [uncleaned] her bike. It was dirty.             | recleaned | ..... |
| ④ That color isn't nice. I want to ..... [unpaint] the room. | repaint   | ..... |

◀ اكتب التصحيح. Write the correction.

|  |       |                                       |
|--|-------|---------------------------------------|
| ① I'm good at English, ..... [or] I'm bad at Arabic.   | ..... | يوجد تناقض                            |
| ② I don't eat candy, ..... [and] I eat fruit.          | ..... | يوجد تناقض                            |
| ③ She cooks rice ..... [but] fish.                     | ..... | ربط فكرتين                            |
| ④ I can't understand the text. I'll ..... [unread] it. | ..... | نستخدم [re] قبل الفعل بمعنى مرة أخرى. |

# 3

## Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

### الجملة الخبرية

|   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 | made - <b>I</b> - food - some - special.        |
| 2 | things - <b>Farmers</b> - produce - many.       |
| 3 | raise - <b>We</b> - in Egypt - chicken.         |
| 4 | candy - eat - <b>I</b> - don't.                 |
| 5 | the park - in - basketball - <b>I</b> - play.   |
| 6 | love - <b>I</b> - video games - playing.        |
| 7 | every day - watered - <b>He</b> - the seeds.    |
| 8 | be - will - <b>He</b> - emperor - the next.     |
| 9 | thousands - catch - <b>Fishermen</b> - of fish. |

| 1    | 2         | 3              |
|------|-----------|----------------|
| فاعل | فعل       | باقي الجملة    |
| We   | grow      | rice in Egypt. |
|      |           |                |
|      | don't eat |                |
|      |           |                |
|      | love      |                |
|      |           |                |
|      | will be   |                |
|      |           |                |

### الجملة الأمرية

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | <b>Take</b> - the seed - and - the pot.  |
| 2 | back - the plant - <b>Bring</b> - to me. |
| 3 | drink - <b>Don't</b> - cola.             |
| 4 | candy - <b>Don't</b> - eat.              |

| 1     | 2          | 3               |
|-------|------------|-----------------|
| Don't | مصدر الفعل | باقي الجملة     |
| Don't | eat        | unhealthy food. |
|       |            |                 |
|       |            |                 |
|       |            |                 |
|       |            |                 |

### الجملة الاستفهامية

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | food - <b>Which</b> - comes - our country - from ? |
| 2 | farmers - do - <b>What</b> - produce ?             |
| 3 | you - <b>Do</b> - food - healthy - like ?          |
| 4 | is - <b>Where</b> - plant - your ?                 |
| 5 | they - are - <b>What meal</b> - having ?           |

| 1            | 2         | 3    | 4    | 5           |
|--------------|-----------|------|------|-------------|
| كلمة استفهام | فعل مساعد | فاعل | فعل  | باقي السؤال |
| What         | do        | we   | grow | in Egypt ?  |
|              |           |      |      |             |
|              |           |      |      |             |
|              |           |      |      |             |
|              | is        |      |      |             |
|              | are       |      |      |             |



# 4

## Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٨ جملة].

### 1 Healthy life

I'm healthy<sup>[1]</sup>. I do a lot of sports at school<sup>[2]</sup>. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family<sup>[3]</sup>. I really like walking<sup>[4]</sup>. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit<sup>[5]</sup>. Fruit is healthy food<sup>[6]</sup>. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon<sup>[7]</sup>. Mom makes a delicious banana milkshake<sup>[8]</sup>.

### 2 A scientist

I'm a scientist<sup>[9]</sup>. I like looking at animals and plants<sup>[10]</sup>. I go walking in the desert to see plants and animals<sup>[11]</sup>. It's a very interesting job<sup>[12]</sup>. It's also a difficult job when it's very hot in the desert<sup>[13]</sup>.

### 3 Foods in Egypt

A lot of food we eat come from our country<sup>[14]</sup>. We grow many crops in Egypt<sup>[15]</sup>. Farmers grow rice, tomatoes and onions in Egypt<sup>[16]</sup>. We raise chickens in Egypt<sup>[17]</sup>. Egyptian food is yummy<sup>[18]</sup>. It's also healthy<sup>[19]</sup>. I like the Egyptian food<sup>[20]</sup>.

### 4 Damietta governorate

Damietta is a very beautiful governorate<sup>[21]</sup>. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients<sup>[22]</sup>. The farmers grow a lot of different fruits<sup>[23]</sup>. They can grow fruits like grapes and guavas<sup>[24]</sup>. They also grow a lot of vegetables like tomatoes and potatoes<sup>[25]</sup>. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea<sup>[26]</sup>. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate<sup>[27]</sup>. Life is very good there<sup>[28]</sup>.

# TEST YOUR SKILLS

I feel good



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

ممن بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد فمن بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

## My Speaking

- 1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

country - raise - crops - grow - drink

Alaa : Mom, which food comes from our [1] .....

Mom : We grow a lot of [2] ..... in our country.

Alaa : I think we grow rice in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, that's right. We [3] ..... tomatoes and onions, too.

Alaa : What else ?

Mom : We also [4] ..... chickens in Egypt.

## My Language

- 2 Put the word in the correct order to make sentences.

1. corps - We - Egypt - grow - many - in.

2. governorate - Damietta - very - a - is - beautiful.

3. favorite - are - My - fruits - bananas.

## My Writing

- 3 Write an email of about [24] words about Egyptian food to your friend Yasser. Your name is Hatem and your email address is hatem@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is yasser@gmail.com.

To : .....

From : .....

Subject : .....

..... ,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## My Project

- 4 Make a poster about Egyptian food.



Notes for parents

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



# Review on Unit 1

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى في ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

|             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| grapes      | عنب        |
| chicken     | دجاج       |
| rice        | أرز        |
| onions      | بصل        |
| wheelchair  | كرسي متحرك |
| bananas     | موز        |
| competition | مسابقة     |
| watermelon  | بطيخ       |
| mangoes     | مانجو      |
| win         | يفوز       |
| desert      | صحراء      |
| emperor     | إمبراطور   |
| palace      | قصر        |
| honest      | صادق/أمين  |

## Phonics

### Short vowels

/æ/ → bag

/ɪ/ → mix

/ɒ/ → mom

### Long vowels

/eɪ/ → cake

/aɪ/ → rice

/oʊ/ → nose

## Language

### 1 Conjunctions

and و

To add two ideas together.

- نستخدم [and] عند الربط بين الأفكار أو أحداث متتالية.

- I eat vegetables **and** I exercise.
- I love burgers, **but** I only eat one a week.

but لكن

To contrast two ideas.

- نستخدم [but] عند التعبير عن تناقض فكريتين.

### 2 The prefix 're' = again

do → redo

make → remake

paint → repaint

- He **painted** the room **again**.  
= He **repainted** the room.
- He **cleaned** his bike **again**.  
= He **recleaned** his bike.

# Test 1 on Unit 1

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
• فى نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The land in Damietta governorate is rich in .....  
a. animals      b. candies      c. nutrients      d. fish
- The land is ..... for growing crops.  
a. bad      b. good      c. poor      d. unhealthy
- ..... catch thousands of fish.  
a. Vets      b. Farmers      c. Fishermen      d. Engineers
- In Damietta, there are ..... , cows and sheep.  
a. goats      b. lizards      c. lions      d. foxes

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Our house is so old. We need to ..... it.  
a. repaint      b. recook      c. reread      d. rewrite
- We use ..... to make sugar.  
a. onions      b. watermelon      c. sugarcane      d. grapes
- Lunch is ..... . Mom made some special food for us.  
a. ready      b. dirty      c. hungry      d. happy
- I like chocolate, but it's .....  
a. salty      b. unhealthy      c. healthy      d. honest

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

practice - make - football - cola - play

I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We [1] ..... three times every week. I drink [2] ..... , but I want to drink more water. I don't [3] ..... video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball and I play [4] ..... in the park.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Dina. I'm healthy. I do a lot of sports at the club. I practice tennis four times a week. I don't like cola. It is unhealthy. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an **awesome** banana milkshake.



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dina does a lot of ..... at the club.  
a. buildings      b. jobs      c. sports      d. foods
2. The underlined word "awesome" means .....  
a. bad      b. wonderful      c. unhealthy      d. late

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4. What are Dina's favorite fruits ?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. I like oranges, apples ..... [but] bananas.  
2. I want to eat pizza, ..... [or] it isn't healthy.  
3. My mom ..... [but] dad are teachers.  
4. Mohammed wants to climb a mountain ..... [and] it isn't easy.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

i think we grow rice in Egypt

.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر (١٨) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

"Being healthy"

Guiding elements :

- exercise      - fruit and vegetables

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 2 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams  
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- ..... are good for our country.  
a. Farmers      b. Doctors      c. Vets      d. Teachers
- Farmers grow ..... and carrots.  
a. sheep      b. cows      c. goats      d. onions
- Farmers raise ..... in Egypt.  
a. rice      b. grapes      c. chickens      d. lemons
- There is ..... food in Egypt.  
a. unhealthy      b. healthy      c. bad      d. worse

[كفر الشيخ - سيدى غازى ٢٠٢٤]

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I like fruits like apples and .....  
a. milk      b. bananas      c. chickens      d. potatoes  
[الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤]
- Farmers grow tomatoes and .....  
a. onions      b. candies      c. cakes      d. chickens  
[المنوفية - أشمون ٢٠٢٤]
- An emperor is someone who is like a .....  
a. queen      b. princess      c. king      d. doctor  
[قنا - نقادة ٢٠٢٤]
- He is a/an ..... man. He never lies.  
a. ugly      b. noisy      c. honest      d. messy  
[بنى سويف - سمسطا ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

colors - beautiful - friends - repainted - grow

My house was old. I wanted to make it [1] ..... I [2] ..... it.  
The new [3] ..... were green and red. My [4] ..... helped me.  
We were very happy.

[سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٣]

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. In his village, farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like bananas and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "Omar's .....".  
a. family                      b. school                      c. village                      d. garden
2. The opposite of the underlined word "sell" is ".....".  
a. ask                      b. buy                      c. grow                      d. die

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do farmers raise ?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

[البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٣]

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. I like playing tennis, ..... [and] I can't play well. [دمياط - دمياط ٢٠٢٤]
2. I like vegetables ..... [but] fruit. [السويس - جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٤]
3. Milk is healthy, ..... [or] cola is unhealthy. [فنا - فقط ٢٠٢٤]
4. I want to relax ..... [but] sleep in my bedroom.

[الإسماعيلية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية ٢٠٢٤]

6. Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

egyptian farmers are clever

[الشرقية - أبو كبير ٢٠٢٣]

.....

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر [١٨] كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

### Egyptian farmers

Guiding elements :

- grow rice
- raise chickens

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٣]



#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- Cheng was very good at ..... things.  
[ growing - building - making ]
- Cheng put the seeds in the ..... [ soil - street - sun ]
- The seeds were ..... [ dead - fresh - rich ]

#### 2 Read and complete the dialogue.

What - raise - country - grow

Dad : Which food comes from our {1} .....

Maged : I think we {2} ..... rice in Egypt.

Dad : Yes, that's right. {3} ..... else ?

Maged : I think we {4} ..... chickens in Egypt.

#### 3 Read and answer the following questions.

Hady is twenty years old. He lives in a village near the river in Egypt. There is a lot of food that comes from Egypt. Farmers grow many fruits and vegetables there. They grow onions, tomatoes and rice. Farmers grow apples and oranges too. There are a lot of plants near the river. Farmers raise a lot of animals in Egypt. They raise chicken for us to eat and get fresh eggs. They are very delicious.  
[الفطور]

#### A. Answer the following questions.

- Where does Hady live ?
- What do farmers grow in Egypt ?

#### B. Choose the correct answer.

- Farmers grow many ..... and vegetables in Egypt.  
a. cows b. eggs c. chickens d. fruits

- Farmers ..... chickens in Egypt .  
a. raise b. produce c. grow d. plant
- We get ..... from chicken .  
a. eggs b. milk c. meat d. eggs and meat

#### 4 Choose the correct answer.

- Fatima is very clever ..... she studies her lessons well.  
a. or b. and c. but d. as
- Egyptian farmers ..... many vegetables.  
a. produce b. study c. read d. happen
- My mother likes tea, ..... she doesn't like coffee.  
a. but b. and c. so d. or
- The emperor lives in a beautiful .....  
a. cave b. desert c. farm d. palace
- Good children never .....  
a. play b. lie c. work d. eat

#### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- delicious - cheese - is - Domiati.  
.....
- cows - Farmers - goats - raise - and.  
.....
- person - The honest - not - does - lie.  
.....
- farmers - Egyptian - produce - things - many.  
.....
- in - basketball - I'm - team - a - playing.  
.....

# UNIT

# 2

## Desert Animals

الحيوانات الصحراوية

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية : Aims of Unit Two :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about desert animals. - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.
- practice making comparisons. - أتدرب على عمل المقارنات.
- listen to a short story. - أستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- learn about the difference between the / p / and / b / sounds. - أتعلم الاختلاف بين الأصوات / p / و / b /.
- describe two animals. - أصف اثنين من الحيوانات.
- write a fact file. - أكتب ملف حقائق.
- research and make a poster. - أبحث وأصنع ملصقاً.







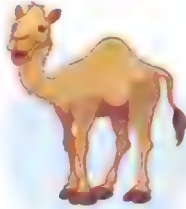
## I

## Vocabulary

## ► Key vocabulary



snake ثعبان



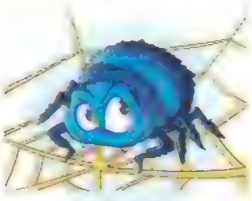
camel جمل



lizard سحلية



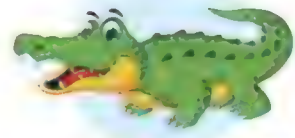
insect حشرة



spider عنكبوت

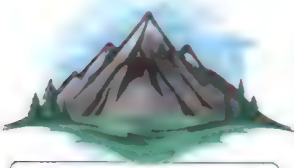


fennec fox ثعلب الفنك

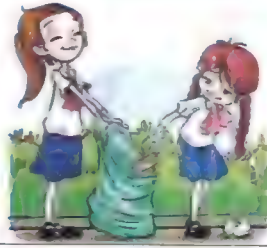


crocodile تمساح

## Adjectives



huge ضخم



helpful متعاون / مفيد



dangerous خطير

## ► Extra vocabulary

|         |      |           |              |       |             |
|---------|------|-----------|--------------|-------|-------------|
| country | بلد  | job       | وظيفة / مهنة | cute  | لطيف / جذاب |
| ugly    | قبيح | important | هام          | scary | مخيف        |

Did you know ? The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger !

تغطي الصحراء الكبرى أجزاء كبيرة من عشر دول في قارة إفريقيا. إنها كبيرة جدًا، لكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر!



## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular |       |            | Irregular |       |         |
|---------|-------|------------|-----------|-------|---------|
| Present |       | Past       | Present   |       | Past    |
| control | يتحكم | controlled | think     | يعتقد | thought |
| live    | يعيش  | lived      | eat       | يأكل  | ate     |
| agree   | يوافق | agreed     | do        | يفعل  | did     |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

That's true. هذا حقيقي / صحيح. | What about ... ? ماذا عن ... ؟

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic            | Guiding words     | Sentences  |
|------------------|-------------------|--|
| Animals in Egypt | crocodiles - huge | The crocodiles are huge and scary.                             |
|                  | dangerous         | Crocodiles and snakes are dangerous.                           |
|                  | spider - helpful  | Spiders are very helpful.                                      |
|                  | eat - insects     | Spiders eat insects.   |
|                  | important - job   | Crocodiles and snakes do a very important job.                 |
|                  | control - animals | Crocodiles and snakes control the number of the small animals. |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Crocodiles are huge and .....  
a. cute                      b. scary                      c. small                      d. young
- Spiders are ..... They eat insects.  
a. tall                      b. funny                      c. huge                      d. helpful
- It is ..... to swim here. There are crocodiles.  
a. dangerous                      b. cute                      c. huge                      d. ugly
- The ..... is a big animal.  
a. ant                      b. bee                      c. camel                      d. spider

## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Are snakes and crocodiles important ?

هل الثعابين والتماسيح مهمين ؟



Look at all these animals that live in our country.

انظروا إلى كل هذه الحيوانات التي تعيش في بلدنا.

Look at the crocodile, it's huge !

انظروا إلى التمساح، إنه ضخم !



Huge and scary !

ضخم ومخيف !

I think the spider is scarier.

أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.



Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

نعم، لكن العنكبوت مفيدة جدًا. إنهم يأكلون الحشرات. المزارعون يحبون العنكبوت .

OK, what about the snake and the crocodile ? They're dangerous, aren't they ?

حسنًا، وماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح ؟ إنهما خطيران، أليس كذلك ؟



Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

نعم، هذا صحيح، لكنهما يقومان بعمل مهم للغاية. إنهما يأكلان الحشرات والطيور والسحالي. هذا يتحكم في عدد هذه الحيوانات الصغيرة. نعتقد في بعض الأحيان أن بعض الحيوانات مخيفة أو قبيحة، لكن جميعهم مهمين.



# General Exercises | on Lesson 1

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Snakes and crocodiles are ..... animals.  
a. ugly                      b. dangerous                      c. big                      d. huge
- Crocodiles live in .....  
a. water                      b. sky                      c. farm                      d. garden
- ..... are animals with no legs.  
a. Camels                      b. Fish                      c. Sharks                      d. Snakes
- Snakes eat ..... and rats .  
a. camels                      b. lions                      c. mice                      d. crocodiles

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A**                      job - scary - makes - controls - insects

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous. They do a very important  
(1) ..... They eat (2) ....., birds and lizards. This (3) ..... the  
number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are  
(4) ..... or ugly, but they are all important. [دمياط - فارسكور ٢٠٢٤]

**B**                      huge - spiders - agree - snake - farmers

Last week, I visited the zoo with my parents. We saw many different  
animals there. The crocodile was (1) ..... The (2) ..... was scary.  
We saw many (3) ..... My sister thought spiders were ugly ! Mom told  
us (4) ..... like spiders because they eat insects.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Nour. I'm doing some research about animals in Egypt. My mom is  
helping me. There are many animals in our country. All animals are very  
important. I think spiders are scary, but they are helpful. They eat insects  
so farmers like spiders. Crocodiles and snakes are dangerous, but they do  
a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the  
number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are  
scary or ugly, but they're all important.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- This text is about "..... in Egypt".  
a. Clothes                      b. Food                      c. Animals                      d. Books



2. The underlined word ugly is the opposite of .....

- a. honest      b. dangerous      c. scary      d. beautiful

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do farmers like spiders ?

4. How do crocodiles and snakes control the number of small animals ?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... eat insects and they have eight legs.

- a. Spiders      b. Elephants      c. Camels      d. Dogs

2. Crocodiles are very .....

- a. cute      b. dangerous      c. nice      d. sad

3. .... live in the desert.

- a. Crocodiles      b. Camels      c. Whales      d. Fish

4. This mountain is ..... It's difficult to climb it.

- a. huge      b. sad      c. funny      d. helpful

5 Punctuate the following.

A

which animals are cute

B

spiders are very helpful

[القاهرة - عابدين ٢٠٢٤]

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Crocodiles and snakes"

Guiding elements :

- control      - dangerous



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|           |       |           |                   |        |             |
|-----------|-------|-----------|-------------------|--------|-------------|
| amazing   | مدهش  | large     | كبير الحجم / واسع | noisy  | مزعج - صاخب |
| beautiful | جميل  | flat feet | أقدام مسطحة       | fur    | فراء        |
| perfect   | مثالي | sand      | رمال              | desert | صحراء       |

## • Extra vocabulary

|            |              |         |       |             |         |
|------------|--------------|---------|-------|-------------|---------|
| surprising | مفاجئ - مدهش | without | بدون  | fresh water | ماء عذب |
| special    | مميز         | grass   | حشائش | strong      | قوي     |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular |      |         | Irregular |      |       |
|---------|------|---------|-----------|------|-------|
| Present |      | Past    | Present   |      | Past  |
| carry   | يحمل | carried | sink      | يغوص | sank  |
| cross   | يعبر | crossed | drink     | يشرب | drank |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                   |                  |                 |             |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| • perfect for     | مناسب / ملائم لـ | • Be careful !  | كن حذرًا !  |
| • for a long time | لمدة طويلة       | • stop ... from | يمنع ... من |
| • get angry       | يغضب             | • look after    | يعتني بـ    |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic  | Guiding words    | Sentences  |
|--------|------------------|--|
| Camels | amazing - strong | Camels are amazing, beautiful and strong animals.        |
|        | carry - desert   | They carry things and people to cross the desert.        |
|        | milk - delicious | Camel's milk is delicious.                               |
|        | fur - clothes    | We can use camel's fur to make clothes.                  |
|        | flat feet        | Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand. |
|        | without - long   | They can live without water for a long time.             |
|        | noisy - angry    | Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.            |

|        |                     |                                       |
|--------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Horses | large - eyes        | Horses have large, beautiful eyes.    |
|        | eat - drink         | They eat grass and drink fresh water. |
|        | live - desert       | They can live in the desert.          |
|        | people - look after | They need people to look after them.  |

## II

## Listening and Reading

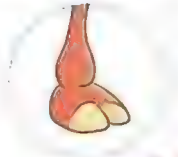
### 1 Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

#### What is surprising about camels?

ما هو المدهش عن الجمال؟

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, **strong**<sup>(1)</sup> animals. They help us to **carry**<sup>(2)</sup> things and people to **cross**<sup>(3)</sup> the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their **fur**<sup>(4)</sup> to make clothes! Camels are **perfect**<sup>(5)</sup> for the desert. Here's why:

Camels have large, **flat feet**<sup>(6)</sup> so they don't **sink**<sup>(7)</sup> in sand.



Camels can live **without**<sup>(8)</sup> water for a long time.



Camels have **special ways**<sup>(9)</sup> to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.



But be careful! Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.



[1] قوى

[2] يحمل

[3] يعبر

[4] فراء

[5] مثالي

[6] أقدام مسطحة

[7] يغوص

[8] بدون

[9] طرق خاصة

Describe the relationship between ideas.

وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. Why should we be careful about camels?

- Because they're very noisy and can get angry.

Practice

2. Why are camels important for people?

الجمال مدهشة! إنها حيوانات جميلة وقوية. هم يساعدوننا في حمل الأشياء والأشخاص ليعبرون الصحراء. ألبان الجمال لذيذة. يمكننا استخدام فرائهم لصنع الملابس! الجمال ملائمة للصحراء. إليكم الأسباب:

- الجمال تستطيع العيش بدون مياه لفترة طويلة.

- الجمال لديهم أقدام كبيرة، مستوية لذلك لا تغوص في الرمال.

- ولكن كن حريص! الجمال صاخبة للغاية ويمكن أن تغضب.

- الجمال لديهم طرق خاصة لبغلق أنوفهم وعيونهم لمنع الرمال من الدخول فيهم.



2 Read the fact file and identify. اقرأ ملف الحقائق وتعرف.

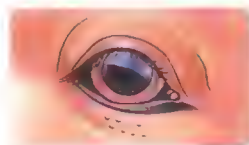
## The differences between horses and camels.

الاختلافات بين الأحصنة والجمال.

|                         | Animals       |              |
|-------------------------|---------------|--------------|
|                         | Horse         | Camel        |
| How tall is it ?        | 1.4 - 1.8 m   | 1.8 - 2.0 m  |
| How heavy is it ?       | 380 - 550 kg  | 400 - 650 kg |
| How fast is it ?        | 88 kph        | 65 kph       |
| How long does it live ? | 25 - 30 years | 40 years     |

Horses have large, beautiful eyes.

تتمتع الأحصنة بعيون واسعة وجميلة.

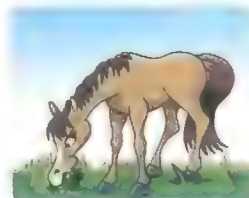


Horses eat grass and drink fresh water.

تأكل الأحصنة الحشائش وتشرب الماء العذب.

Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

تستطيع الأحصنة العيش في الصحراء، ولكنهم يحتاجون الأشخاص للعناية بهم.



**Demonstrate understanding of specific details.**

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

**Learn**

1. Horses have large, beautiful .....

a. ears      b. mouths      c. noses      d. eyes

**Practice**

2. Horses drink fresh water and eat .....

a. meat      b. paper      c. grass      d. sand

• kg = kilogram

• kph = kilometer per hour

← «وحدة قياس الوزن» كيلو جرام

← «وحدة قياس السرعة» كيلو متر في الساعة

### III

## Language Focus

### 1

## Adjectives

١. الصفات

ex.: - He is a **tall** man.



١. تستخدم الصفة لوصف الاسم وتأتي قبله :

ex.: - The whale is **big**.



٢. تأتي الصفة بعد [verb to be] :

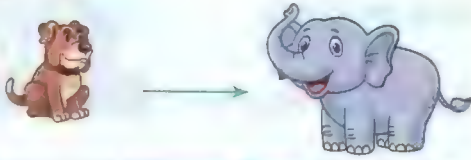
## 2 Comparative

٢. صيغة المقارنة

### A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

• عند المقارنة بين اثنين [شخصين - شيئين] أحدهما يزيد أو يقل عن الآخر في نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد تستخدم :

[short adj. صفة قصيرة + er] + than



Dogs are **thinner** than elephants.



The horse is **bigger** than the cat.

### B. Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

★ الصفات الطويلة هي صفات مكونة من مقطعين أو أكثر

dangerous / interesting / enormous / beautiful .. etc.

وللمقارنة بين اثنين في صفة طويلة نستخدم :

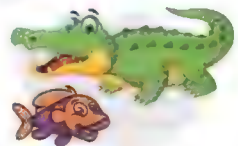
more + long adj. [صفة طويلة] + than .....



A snake is **more dangerous** than a fox.



Crocodiles are **more enormous** than fish.



#### Notes for parents

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصفات القصيرة/الطويلة في المقارنة. Help your child learn about comparative short/long adjectives.

### 3 Questions with "How ... ?"

How + adj. صفة..... ?



How tall is the camel ?

- It's about 1.8 - 2.0 m.

تستخدم ◀ How tall ..... ? للسؤال عن طول شخص أو شجرة أو مبنى.



How long does the horse live ?

- The horse lives around 25 - 30 years.

تستخدم ◀ How long ..... ? للسؤال عن المدة.



How heavy is your bag ?

- It's about 2 kg.

تستخدم ◀ How heavy ..... ? للسؤال عن الوزن.



How fast is the camel ?

- It is 65 kph.

تستخدم ◀ How fast ..... ? للسؤال عن السرعة.



#### Pop Quiz on Language Focus

#### 1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The blue car is ..... [fast] than the red one.
- Apples are ..... [healthy] than candies.
- Elephants are heavier ..... [that] giraffes.
- The city is ..... [noisy] than the countryside.
- Pizza is ..... [as] delicious than burger.
- The fennec fox is ..... [small] than other foxes. [القاهرة - عين شمس ٢٠٢٤]
- A crocodile is ..... [most] dangerous than a fish. [أسيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤]
- The red flower is ..... [beautiful] than the yellow one. [دمياط - عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٤]
- The camel is stronger ..... [then] the horse. [القاهرة - وسط البلد ٢٠٢٤]
- How ..... [heavy] is the horse ? - It's about 1.4 - 1.8 meters tall.

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A rabbit is ..... than a dog.  
a. small      b. smaller      c. smallest      d. small as
- Lions are more dangerous ..... cows.  
a. as      b. like      c. than      d. the
- How ..... is the horse ? - It is 88 kph.  
a. fast      b. long      c. heavy      d. old

تدرب تلقائياً

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية





# General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- Camels are beautiful, ..... animals.  
a. weak                      b. ugly                      c. strong                      d. messy
- Camels help us carry things and people to cross the .....  
a. desert                      b. forest                      c. sea                      d. lake
- Their milk is .....  
a. bad                      b. delicious                      c. salty                      d. scary
- We can use their ..... to make clothes.  
a. milk                      b. legs                      c. hair                      d. fur

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Camels have large, flat ....., so they don't sink in sand.  
a. fur                      b. feet                      c. noses                      d. eyes
- Camels are ..... and beautiful.  
a. careful                      b. flat                      c. amazing                      d. delicious
- Camels are ..... for the desert.  
a. sad                      b. perfect                      c. bad                      d. large
- Horses eat ..... and drink fresh water.  
a. meat                      b. grass                      c. sand                      d. fish

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

live - grass - faster - eyes - look

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. They have large, beautiful (1) .....  
They can live in the desert, but they need people to (2) ..... after them.  
Horses can (3) ..... for 25 - 30 years. They're (4) ..... than camels,  
but camels can live longer than horses.

## 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- A
- How ..... [fast] is the horse ? - It is about 450 kg.
  - A turtle is ..... [slow] than a rabbit. (القليوية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)
  - Math is ..... [most] difficult than science.
  - The cat is ..... [heavy] than the mouse.

- B** 1. A snake is ..... [much] dangerous than a dog.  
 2. How ..... [fast] does the camel live ? - 40 years.  
 3. The park is ..... [busy] during summer than winter.  
 4. I think monkeys are nicer ..... [then] horses.

**+ 5 Read the text and answer the questions.**

I went to the Pyramids last weekend with my family. I rode a beautiful camel. It was interesting. Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes ! Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about " ..... ".  
 a. Horses                      b. Camels                      c. Crocodiles                      d. Spiders  
 2. The underlined word "strong" is the opposite of the word " ..... ".  
 a. perfect                      b. beautiful                      c. amazing                      d. weak

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4. How can camels help us ?

.....

- **6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Horses"**

**Fact file :**

|                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| Where can they live ?      | in the desert     |
| What do they eat / drink ? | grass/fresh water |

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

- ▶ The Pelican and the Bear
- ▶ Pronunciation
- ▶ CLIL : Math



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary



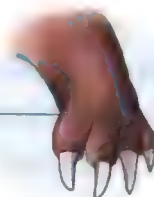
pelican بجعة



bear دب



beak منقار



paw كف حيوان

claw مخلب حيوان

|       |            |        |            |        |      |
|-------|------------|--------|------------|--------|------|
| juicy | طري - طازج | kinder | أكثر عطفًا | hungry | جائع |
|-------|------------|--------|------------|--------|------|

## • Extra vocabulary

|        |              |           |       |             |      |
|--------|--------------|-----------|-------|-------------|------|
| ready  | جاهز - مستعد | sadly     | بحزن  | scared      | خائف |
| boring | ممل          | surprised | مندهش | fun         | ممتع |
| angry  | غاضب         | river     | نهر   | interesting | ممتع |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular  |      |           | Irregular  |      |            |
|----------|------|-----------|------------|------|------------|
| Present  |      | Past      | Present    |      | Past       |
| reach    | يصل  | reached   | take       | يأخذ | took       |
| describe | يصف  | described | feel       | يشعر | felt       |
| lift     | يرفع | lifted    | understand | يفهم | understood |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                    |             |                     |              |
|--------------------|-------------|---------------------|--------------|
| • look scared      | يبدو خائفًا | • Excuse me !       | معذرة !      |
| • take .... out of | يخرج ... من | • at the end of ... | في نهاية ... |



★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

## The Pelican and the Bear

البجعة والدب

A pelican <sup>[1]</sup> and a bear <sup>[2]</sup> are in the river.  
They are very hungry <sup>[3]</sup>. They are both  
looking at a big, juicy <sup>[4]</sup> fish.

The bear reaches <sup>[5]</sup> for the fish. It lifts its paw <sup>[6]</sup>.  
The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to  
take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the  
pelican. The pelican sees the bear.

"Excuse me," the pelican says, "that's my fish."  
The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my  
claws <sup>[7]</sup>. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."  
The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly <sup>[8]</sup>.

The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear  
looks at the pelican. "How do you feel, pelican?" he  
asks. "I feel hungry," says Pelican. "I'm bigger and  
stronger than you," says Bear. "But I think you are  
hungrier than me. You can have the fish." "Thank  
you, Bear!" says Pelican. "You are kinder than all the  
other bears!"



[1] بجعة

[2] دب

[3] جائع

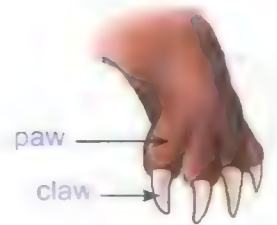
[4] طري [طازج]

[5] يصل

[6] كف [حيوان]

[7] مخالب [حيوان / طائر]

[8] بحزن



Make logical  
inferences.

قم بعمل استنتاجات  
منطقية.

Practice

1. Was the bear right to give the pelican the fish? Why?

Yes. Because the pelican was hungrier than the bear.

Practice

2. How do you think the bear feels at the end of the story?

.....

بجعة و دب في النهر. إنهما جائعان جدًا. كلاهما ينظران إلى سمكة كبيرة وطازجة. يصل الدب إلى السمكة، ويرفع مخليه، البجعة تفتح منقارها. إنها جاهزة لإخراج السمكة من الماء. يرى الدب البجعة. ترى البجعة الدب. تقول البجعة: "عفوًا هذه سمكتي". الدب مندهش وغاضب ويرد قائلاً "بجعة، انظري إلى مخالي، انظري الآن إلى أسناني. هذه سمكتي". البجعة تبدو خائفة تقول بحزن للدب: "أنا آسفة أيها الدب". الدب أقوى من البجعة. ينظر الدب إلى البجعة. ويسأل الدب: "كيف تشعرين أيها البجعة؟" تقول البجعة: "أشعر بالجوع". يقول الدب: "أنا أكبر وأقوى منك. لكنني أعتقد أنك أكثر جوعاً مني. تستطيعين الحصول على السمكة". تقول البجعة: "شكراً لك أيها الدب! إنك أطيّب من باقي الدببة!"

### III

### Pronunciation

The letter **b** makes the sound /b/.



bear دب



bird طائر



beak منقار



bee نحلة

The letter **p** makes the sound /p/.



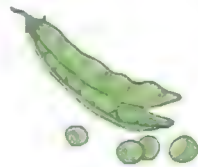
pelican بجعة



pin دبوس



pear كمثرى



peas بازلاء



#### Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

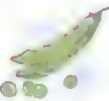
نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing sound.

1. \_ ear



2. \_ eas



3. \_ ear



4. \_ elican



5. \_ in



6. \_ ird



2 Write the words in the correct column.

pin - bear - peas - bird - bee - pear - beak

/p/

pelican

/b/

### A fraction : الكسر



A fraction consists of two parts.  
الكسر يتكون من جزئين.

1 ← numerator البسط  
2 ← denominator المقام

- **Descending order** means to put or start from the largest to the smallest number. الترتيب التنازلي يعني أن تضع أو تبدأ من الرقم الأكبر إلى الرقم الأصغر.

$$\frac{1}{1} , \frac{1}{2} , \frac{1}{3} , \frac{1}{4}$$



### Pop Quiz on Math

- **Look and put in descending order.**

انظر ورتب الكسور ترتيب تنازلي.

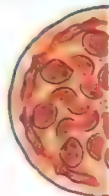
1.  $\frac{1}{4}$



2.  $\frac{3}{4}$



3.  $\frac{1}{2}$



4.  $\frac{1}{1}$



- We use fractions in everyday life. **for example :** علي سبيل المثال :  
- Here's a simple milkshake recipe :  
هذه وصفة لبس مخفوق بسيطة :  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  a glass of milk,  $\frac{1}{4}$  cup of banana,  $\frac{1}{4}$  cup of vanilla ice cream.  
- نصف كوب من اللبن، ربع كوب من الموز، ربع كوب من آيس كريم الفانيليا.



# General Exercises | on Lesson 3

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A pelican and a bear are in the ..... .  
a. forest      b. river      c. street      d. sky [الغريبة - بسيون ٢٠٢٤]
- They saw a juicy ..... .  
a. shark      b. bird      c. worm      d. fish
- The pelican looks ..... .  
a. scared      b. angry      c. excited      d. sad
- The bear is bigger and ..... .  
a. weaker      b. stronger      c. smaller      d. taller

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A**      beak - paw - juicy - water - lifts

A pelican and a bear are very hungry. They are both looking at a big,  
[1] ..... fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It [2] ..... its paw.  
The pelican opens its [3] ..... . It is ready to take the fish out  
of the [4] ..... . [الاسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤]

**B**      paws - scary - eat - bears - sky

I'm Soha. I love animals. My favorite animals are [1] ..... . Bears  
have strong [2] ..... and sharp claws. They also have sharp teeth.  
They are [3] ..... animals. They [4] ..... fish.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Bears have sharp ..... .  
a. claws      b. tails      c. noses      d. fur
- I feel ..... . I want something to eat.  
a. sad      b. thirsty      c. hungry      d. angry
- She's ..... of animals , so she doesn't like to touch them.  
a. happy      b. scared      c. kind      d. strong
- A pelican opens its ..... to catch the fish.  
a. claw      b. beak      c. hand      d. paw

**4** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

**A** 1. The lion is ..... [dangerous] than the giraffe.

2. The bear is stronger ..... [then] the pelican.

3. The cell phone is ..... [small] than the laptop.

4. The car is ..... [fast] than the bike.

(المقوم - سنويزن ٢٠٢٤)

**B** 1. The new house is ..... [nice] than the old one.

2. My cousin is ..... [old] than me.

3. My new car is ..... [expensive] than yours.

4. I think math is easier ..... [the] science.

**5** Punctuate the following.

**A.** the pelican looks scared

.....

**B.** what do bears eat

.....

- **6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

### "Bears"

Fact file :

|                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| What do bears eat ?       | • fish           |
| How can they catch fish ? | • paws and claws |

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



I

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



fennec fox  
ثعلب الفنك



rhim gazelle  
غزال الريم



coat  
فراء حيوان



horns  
قرون [حيوان]

Extra vocabulary

|       |       |        |           |               |                |
|-------|-------|--------|-----------|---------------|----------------|
| mice  | فئران | warm   | دافئ      | heat          | حرارة          |
| thick | سميك  | leaves | أوراق شجر | Sahara Desert | الصحراء الكبرى |

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular       |                 | Irregular    |       |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|-------|
| Present       | Past            | Present      | Past  |
| need<br>يحتاج | needed<br>يَزِن | hear<br>يسمع | heard |
| weigh<br>يزن  | weighed         | lose<br>يفقد | lost  |

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                  |              |                    |            |
|------------------|--------------|--------------------|------------|
| • look for       | يبحث عن      | • protect ... from | يحمي... من |
| • during the day | أثناء النهار | • walk around      | يتجول      |

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic         | Guiding words     | Sentences   |
|---------------|-------------------|---|
| Rhim gazelles | look - beautiful  | Rhim gazelles look very beautiful.                      |
|               | the Sahara Desert | They live in the Sahara Desert.                         |
|               | leaves - grass    | They eat leaves and grass.                              |
|               | coats             | Rhim gazelles have yellow-white coats.                  |
|               | drink - water     | They don't need to drink a lot of water.                |
| Fennec fox    | live - deserts    | The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.    |
|               | eat - mice        | The fennec fox eats insects, lizards and small mice.    |
|               | lose - heat       | The fennec fox loses heat from its ears during the day. |



## II

## Reading and Writing



### 1 Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

#### Animal fact file

#### Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

يبدو غزال الريم جميل جدًا. يعيش هذا الحيوان في الصحراء الكبرى، ويتجول بحثًا عن العشب وأوراق الشجر والنباتات ليأكلها. لديه أذان كبيرة وفرو صويله. لديه فراء بونه أبيض يميل إلى الاصفرار يحميه من أشعة الشمس، وهو مثل الجمال، لا يحتاج إلى شرب الكثير من المياه.

#### Rhim gazelle

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn ?

كم طول قرن غزال الريم ؟

20 - 30 cm

من ٢٠ - ٣٠ سم

How heavy is a rhim gazelle ?

كم وزن غزال الريم ؟

20 - 30 kg

من ٢٠ - ٣٠ كجم

How long does it live ?

كم المدة التي يعيشها ؟

about 14 years

حوالي ١٤ عامًا

What color is its coat ?

ما لون فراء هذا الحيوان ؟

yellow-white

لون أبيض يميل إلى الاصفرار

### 2 Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

#### The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 - 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big ! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.



يعيش ثعلب الفنك في صحارى شمال أفريقيا. إنه أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى. يبلغ ارتفاعه ٢٠ سم. يزن حوالى ١ كيلوجرام. يبلغ صوله ٣٠ - ٤٠ سم. أذنيه كبيرة للغاية؛ يحتاج ثعلب الفنك إلى أذان كبيرة لكي يسمع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة. يأكل ثعلب الفنك الحشرات والسحالي والثعالب الصغيرة. خلال النهار، يكون الجو حارًا في الصحراء. يفقد ثعلب الفنك الحرارة من أذنيه. في الليل، يكون الجو بارد. يحافظ فراء ثعلب الفنك الكثيف على دفته.

## Writing skill

### Fact file ملف حقائق

A fact file is a collection of information about a particular subject.

ملف الحقائق عبارة عن مجموعة من المعلومات عن موضوع معين.

### Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

► Look, read and write.

1

#### Fact File

|                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| Where does it live ? | ..... |
| What does it eat ?   | ..... |
| How heavy is it ?    | ..... |
| Why is it special ?  | ..... |

#### Paragraph

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It is 20 centimeters high and 30 - 40 centimeters long. It eats insects, small lizards and mice. It weighs around 1 kg. Its ears are big.

2

#### Fact File

##### • Rhim gazelle

|                                     |                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| How long is a rhim gazelle's horn ? | 20 - 30 cm     |
| How heavy is a rhim gazelle ?       | 20 - 30 kg     |
| How long does it live ?             | about 14 years |
| What color is its coat ?            | yellow-white   |

#### Paragraph

.....

.....

.....

# General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Rhim gazelles live in the .....  
a. forest      b. North Africa      c. Sahara Desert      d. sea
- They walk around looking for grass and ..... to eat.  
a. leaves      b. worms      c. birds      d. insects
- They have long .....  
a. paws      b. horns      c. claws      d. teeth
- They have yellow-white .....  
a. arms      b. head      c. legs      d. coats

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A      sun - beautiful - live - grass - camels

There are lots of desert animals and the rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very (1)..... . They eat (2)..... , leaves and plants. They don't need to drink a lot of water like (3)..... . They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the (4)..... .

[الشرقية - بليبس ٢٠٢٤]

B      deserts - kilogram - lizards - ears - heat

The fennec fox is the smallest of all the world's foxes. It is called desert fox. It lives in the (1)..... of North Africa. It weighs only one (2)..... . It has big (3)..... . It eats (4)..... and insects.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Rhim gazelles have yellow-white ..... to protect them from the sun.  
a. tails      b. beaks      c. wings      d. coats
- The fennec fox lives in the .....  
a. sea      b. desert      c. sky      d. trees
- The fennec fox has thick ..... . It helps the fennec fox stay warm.  
a. beak      b. feather      c. fur      d. wing
- The rhim gazelles have long .....  
a. horns      b. wings      c. feathers      d. beaks



• **4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about " The ..... " .  
a. rhim gazelle    b. camel    c. fennec fox    d. cat
2. The fennec fox loses ..... from its ears.  
a. cold    b. heat    c. fur    d. weight

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How heavy is the fennec fox ? .....
4. What is speical about the fennec fox's big ears ? .....

• **5 Punctuate the following.**

where do rhim gazelles live

[البحيرة - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٤]

• **6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN(18) words using following guiding element.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Rhim gazelles"

Guiding elements :

- beautiful                                      - Sahara Desert

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٤]

## Identify the general idea of the text

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

### Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read the text and learn how to answer :

Camels are amazing ! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes ! Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand.

[Camels] بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أن النص يدور حول :

- The text is about " ..... " .
- Or: The main / general idea of the text is about " ..... " .
- Or: The text talks about ..... .
- Or: What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

- a. Horses      b. **Camels**      c. Birds      d. Spiders

### Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read the text and answer the questions :

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

• The text is about " ..... " .

- a. Bears
- b. Crocodiles
- c. Pelicans
- d. Rhim gazelles

# 2

## Correction Notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء

### Review

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

للمقارنة نضيف للصفة القصيرة (-er) وبعدها (than) [صفة قصيرة] + er than

Ex : tall → taller than

للمقارنة نضع (more) قبل الصفة الطويلة وبعدها (than) [صفة طويلة] than

Ex : beautiful → more beautiful than

### Learn

| Sentence   | Correction | Reason                              |
|--|------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Parrots are ..... [noisy] than spiders.        | noisier    | مقارنة صفة قصيرة يضاف لها (er)      |
| 2 The lion is stronger ..... [then] the monkey.  | than       | نضع (than) بعد الصفة للمقارنة       |
| 3 English is ..... [most] difficult than Arabic. | more       | مقارنة صفة طويلة نضع قبلها (more)   |
| 4 Mona is ..... [tall] than Ali.                 | taller     | نضيف (er) لأنها مقارنة لوجود (than) |

### Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة. Write the reason.

|  |         |       |
|--|---------|-------|
| 1 Crocodiles are ..... [most] dangerous than fish.   | more    | ..... |
| 2 The pen is ..... [most] expensive than the pencil. | more    | ..... |
| 3 Football is ..... [most] popular than tennis.      | more    | ..... |
| 4 I'm ..... [short] than my sister.                  | shorter | ..... |

◀ اكتب التصحيح. Write the correction.

|   |       |  |
|---|-------|--|
| 1 My mom is ..... [young] than my father.         | ..... | مقارنة صفة قصيرة يضاف لها (er)           |
| 2 Salma is ..... [fast] than Lara.                | ..... | نضيف (er) لأنها صيغة مقارنة لوجود (than) |
| 3 Ice cream is more delicious ..... [then] cake.  | ..... | صيغة مقارنة لوجود (more) وصفة طويلة      |
| 4 Are camels ..... [most] beautiful than horses ? | ..... | مقارنة صفة طويلة نضع (more)              |



# 3

## Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

### الجملة الخبرية

- 1 are - Crocodiles - scary - and - huge.
- 2 are - Spiders - helpful - very.
- 3 do - job - They - important - a very.
- 4 all - are - They - important.
- 5 us - help - Camels - carry - to - things.
- 6 have - Camels - flat - large, - feet.
- 7 fresh - drink - Horses - water.
- 8 beak - opens - The pelican - its.
- 9 can - You - the fish - have.

| 1    | 2        | 3               |
|------|----------|-----------------|
| فاعل | فعل      | باقي الجملة     |
| They | are      | scary and huge. |
|      |          |                 |
|      |          |                 |
|      |          |                 |
|      |          |                 |
|      |          |                 |
|      |          |                 |
|      |          |                 |
|      |          |                 |
|      | can have |                 |

### الجملة الأمرية

- 1 at - Look - crocodile - the.
- 2 teeth - at - Look - my.
- 3 at - Look - claws - my.

| 1     | 2          | 3                    |
|-------|------------|----------------------|
| Don't | مصدر الفعل | باقي الجملة          |
|       | Look       | at all these animals |
|       |            |                      |
|       |            |                      |
|       |            |                      |
|       |            |                      |
|       |            |                      |
|       |            |                      |
|       |            |                      |

### الجملة الاستفهامية

- 1 do - What - about - you - camels - know ?
- 2 it - tall - How - is ?
- 3 do - What - eat - they ?
- 4 are - Why - special - they ?

| 1            | 2         | 3    | 4   | 5           |
|--------------|-----------|------|-----|-------------|
| كلمة استفهام | فعل مساعد | فاعل | فعل | باقي الجملة |
| How long     | does      |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     |             |

# 4

## Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٦ جملة).

### 1 The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa<sup>[1]</sup>. It's smaller than other foxes<sup>[2]</sup>. It has big ears<sup>[3]</sup>. It needs big ears to hear insects<sup>[4]</sup>. It eats insects, lizards, and small mice<sup>[5]</sup>. It weighs about 1 kilogram<sup>[6]</sup>.

### 2 Camels

Camels are amazing<sup>[7]</sup>! They are perfect for the desert<sup>[8]</sup>. They are strong animals<sup>[9]</sup>. They can live for a long time without water<sup>[10]</sup>. They have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand<sup>[11]</sup>. They help people to cross the desert<sup>[12]</sup>.

### 3 Rhim gazelles

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful<sup>[13]</sup>. They live in the Sahara Desert<sup>[14]</sup>. They have big ears<sup>[15]</sup>. They have long horns<sup>[16]</sup>. They have yellow-white coats to protect them from the sun<sup>[17]</sup>. They don't need to drink a lot of water<sup>[18]</sup>. They eat grass, leaves and plants<sup>[19]</sup>.

### 4 Different animals in Egypt

There are different animals that live in our country<sup>[20]</sup>. There are cute and scary animals<sup>[21]</sup>. Spiders are scary, but helpful<sup>[22]</sup>. Farmers like spiders<sup>[23]</sup>. Spiders and snakes eat insects<sup>[24]</sup>. Crocodiles are huge and scary, but they do a very important job<sup>[25]</sup>. They control the number of small animals<sup>[26]</sup>.

# TEST YOUR SKILLS

## Desert Animals



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

فم بتلقينم بنفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلك على ● غير جيد فم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

### My Reading

**1** Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

Sure - control - helpful -  
like - crocodiles

Noha : Hi, Ghada. Do you like gazelles ?

Ghada : (1) ..... They are beautiful.

Noha : Which animals are scary ?

Ghada : I think (2) ..... are scary.

Noha : Are they (3) ..... ?

Ghada : Yes, they (4) ..... the  
number of small animals.

### My Language

**2** Put the word in the correct order to make sentences.

1. fox - desert - The fennec - in -  
lives - the.

2. have - feet - flat - large  
- Camels .

3. snakes - Spiders - and - insects  
- eat.

### My Writing

**3** Punctuate the following.

what does the fennec fox eat

**4** Write an email of 24 words  
about the fennec fox to your  
friend Sara.

Your name is Mariam. Your email  
address is mariam@gmail.com.

Your friend's email address is  
sara@gmail.com.

From : .....

To : .....

Subject : .....

### My project

**5** Make a poster about  
an Egyptian desert animal.

فم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



# Review on Unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية فى ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| snake      | ثعبان         |
| camel      | جمل           |
| lizard     | سحلية         |
| insect     | حشرة          |
| spider     | عنكبوت        |
| crocodile  | تمساح         |
| bear       | دب            |
| fennec fox | ثعلب الفنك    |
| fur        | فراء [حيوان]  |
| beak       | منقار         |
| horns      | قرون [حيوان]  |
| claws      | مخالب [حيوان] |
| dangerous  | خطير          |
| huge       | ضخم           |
| desert     | صحراء         |

## Phonics

/p/

pear

pelican

pin

peas

/b/

bird

bee

beak

bear

## Language

### 1 Comparative adjectives

#### A Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

short adj. + [er] + than

Horses are faster than camels.



A mouse is smaller than an elephant.



#### B Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

more + long adj. + than



A snake is more dangerous than a fox.



### 2 Questions with "How"

- How tall .... ? كم الطول .... ؟
- How long .... ? كم المدة .... ؟
- How heavy .... ? كم الوزن .... ؟
- How fast .... ? كم السرعة .... ؟

# Test 3 on Unit 2

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The fennec fox lives in the deserts of ..... Africa.  
a. East                      b. North                      c. South                      d. West
- The fennec fox weighs around 1 .....  
a. gram                      b. meter                      c. kilogram                      d. kilometer
- The fennec fox eats insects, lizards and small .....  
a. lions                      b. mice                      c. gazelles                      d. camels
- The fennec fox loses ..... from its ears.  
a. weight                      b. fur                      c. heat                      d. blood

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- ..... carry things and people to cross the desert.  
a. Snakes                      b. Crocodiles                      c. Camels                      d. Insects
- Camels, fennec foxes and ..... are desert animals.  
a. rhim gazelles                      b. pelicans                      c. sharks                      d. cows
- Ali is ..... He always helps people.  
a. helpful                      b. angry                      c. hungry                      d. scary
- The ..... is a bird.  
a. pelican                      b. bear                      c. fox                      d. camel

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

without - fur - desert - live - delicious

Camels are amazing. Their milk is (1) ..... We can use their (2) ..... to make clothes! Camels are perfect for the (3) ..... They can live (4) ..... water for a long time.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Khaled. I'm ten years old. I'm in primary four. Last week, I went to the zoo. I went there with my family . We went there by car. I like animals. For me, my favorite animal is the rhim gazelle. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They eat grass and plants.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The opposite of the underlined word "long" is .....  
a. huge                      b. short                      c. big                      d. tall
- Khaled and his family went to the zoo by .....  
a. bus                      b. car                      c. taxi                      d. train

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What do rhinoceroses eat ?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- 1. Cats are nicer ..... **(then)** dogs.
- 2. Crocodiles are ..... **(many)** dangerous than turtles.
- 3. How ..... **(tall)** does the horse live ? - About 30 years.
- 4. Fruits and vegetables are ..... **(healthy)** than candies.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

1. the bear is stronger than the pelican

.....

2. the elephant is bigger than the camel

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Camels"**

Guiding elements :

- perfect
- carry things

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



# Test 4 on Unit 2

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The ..... is huge and scary.  
a. bird                      b. crocodile                      c. pelican                      d. bear
- Spiders are .....  
a. noisy                      b. tall                      c. helpful                      d. kind
- Snakes are very .....  
a. dangerous                      b. weak                      c. small                      d. large
- Snakes eat .....  
a. plants                      b. trees                      c. seeds                      d. lizards

[الشرقية - دبرج نجم ٢٠٢٤]

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Camels have large, flat .....  
a. noses                      b. feet                      c. eyes                      d. ears
- The fennec fox ..... 1 kg.  
a. hears                      b. loses                      c. lives                      d. weighs
- Some birds have long .....  
a. hands                      b. horns                      c. faces                      d. beaks
- Horses eat grass and drink ..... water.  
a. soda                      b. salt                      c. sea                      d. fresh

[القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٤]

[كفر الشيخ - شرق كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤]

[الدقهلية - السنبلوين ٢٠٢٤]

[الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Zoo - dangerous - animals - camel - big

My family likes to visit the zoo. Last Friday, we visited Giza [1] .....  
We saw different [2] ..... Some animals are [3] ..... like  
snakes. Some animals help us like the [4] ..... It is strong.

[الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٣]

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Camels are very helpful. They carry things and people in the desert. They can live without water for a long time.

Horses are helpful, too. They are very fast and they can carry heavy things, too. Horses can live up to thirty years while camels can live up to forty years. Horses and camels are good for the desert.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about ".....".

- a. Clothes      b. Jobs      c. Food      d. Animals

2. Horses can live up to ..... years.

- a. thirty      b. twelve      c. forty      d. ten

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where do camels live ?

.....

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

[بورشيد ٢٠٢٣]

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. Camels are ..... [tall] than horses.

[القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٤]

2. The snake is ..... [thinnest] than the crocodile.

[البحيرة - بندر كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٤]

3. Horses are ..... [most] beautiful than camels.

[البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤]

4. Elephants are bigger ..... [then] cows.

[الإسماعيلية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية ٢٠٢٤]

**6 Punctuate the following.**

does a fennec fox live in Egypt

[القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣]

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**The fennec fox**

**Guiding elements :**

- ears

- warm

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٣]

4. They have yellow-white coats to protect them from the .....

- a. sun      b. animals      c. moon

5. They have long .....

- a. mouth      b. horns      c. eyes

### 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I think dogs are ..... than birds.

- a. nice      b. nicer      c. nicest      d. as nice

2. .... have long horns.

- a. Pelicans      b. Lions      c. Rhim gazelles      d. Bears

3. Spiders eat .....

- a. camels      b. insects      c. birds      d. fish

4. Noha is younger ..... Fatma.

- a. then      b. the      c. than      d. that

5. The kind boy helped the old man ..... the road.

- a. meet      b. carry      c. cross      d. build

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. have - Horses - eyes - big. (توجيه اللغة ٢٠٢٤)

2. is - than - The eagle - the mouse - heavier. (المنقوبة ٢٠٢٤)

3. like - Tarek - Does - crocodiles ? (منطقة سوهاج الأهرية ٢٠٢٤)

4. animals - scary - Which - are ?

5. eats - The fennec fox - insects - lizards - and. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٤)

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. .... have large, beautiful eyes.

[Horses - Camels - Pelicans]

2. Horses eat .....

[grass - insects - fish]

3. Horses can live in the .....

[forest - grassland - desert]

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue.

insects - eat - big - hear

Sarah : What does the fennec fox (1) .....

Huda : It eats (2) ....., small lizards and mice.

Sarah : Why does the fennec fox have (3) ..... ears ?

Huda : To (4) ..... small animals and insects.

### 3 Read and answer the following questions :

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٤)

#### A. Answer the following questions.

1. What do rhim gazelles eat ?

2. Where do rhim gazelles live ?

#### B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Rhim gazelles don't need a lot of water like .....

- a. cats      b. foxes      c. camels



# Why do we grow plants?

لماذا نزرع النباتات؟

## Aims of Unit Three : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.  
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.
- practice making sentences with the superlative.  
- أتدرب على تكوين جمل باستخدام صيغة التفضيل.
- read, listen to, and understand a short story.  
- أقرأ، أستمع إلى وأفهم قصة قصيرة.
- learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.  
- أنعلم وأقول كلمات بحروف ساكنة مدمجة /sl/ و /sw/.
- write the life cycle of a sunflower.  
- أكتب عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.
- research and write a short report.  
- أبحث وأكتب تقرير قصير.

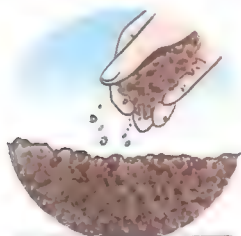




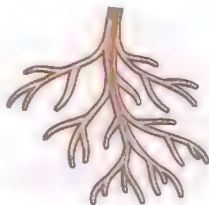
## I

## Vocabulary

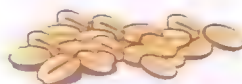
## • Key vocabulary



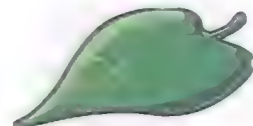
تربة زراعية soil



roots جذور



seeds بذور



leaf ورقة شجر



shoot برعم - نبتة



plant نبات



flower زهرة

## • Extra vocabulary

|             |               |         |               |
|-------------|---------------|---------|---------------|
| sunlight    | ضوء الشمس     | balcony | بلكونة [شرفة] |
| germination | إنبات - تنبيت | inside  | في الداخل     |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular |      |         | Irregular |           |        |
|---------|------|---------|-----------|-----------|--------|
| Present |      | Past    | Present   |           | Past   |
| water   | يسقى | watered | grow      | ينمو/يزرع | grew   |
| die     | يموت | died    | find      | يجد       | found  |
| plant   | يزرع | planted | become    | يصبح      | became |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                 |            |                   |                      |
|-----------------|------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| That's awesome! | هذا رائع!  | under the soil    | أسفل التربة          |
| above the soil  | فوق التربة | (be) called       | يُسمى / يُدعى        |
| on the balcony  | في الشرفة  | Let's + inf. .... | هيا بنا + مصدر الفعل |

leaf → leaves

\* لاحظ أن: تجمع كلمة leaf بحذف حرف ال [f] ووضع [ves] في نهاية الكلمة.

نحن نأكل بذور الكاكاو. الشيكولاتة تأتي من هذا النبات. We eat cacao seed. Chocolate comes from this plant.

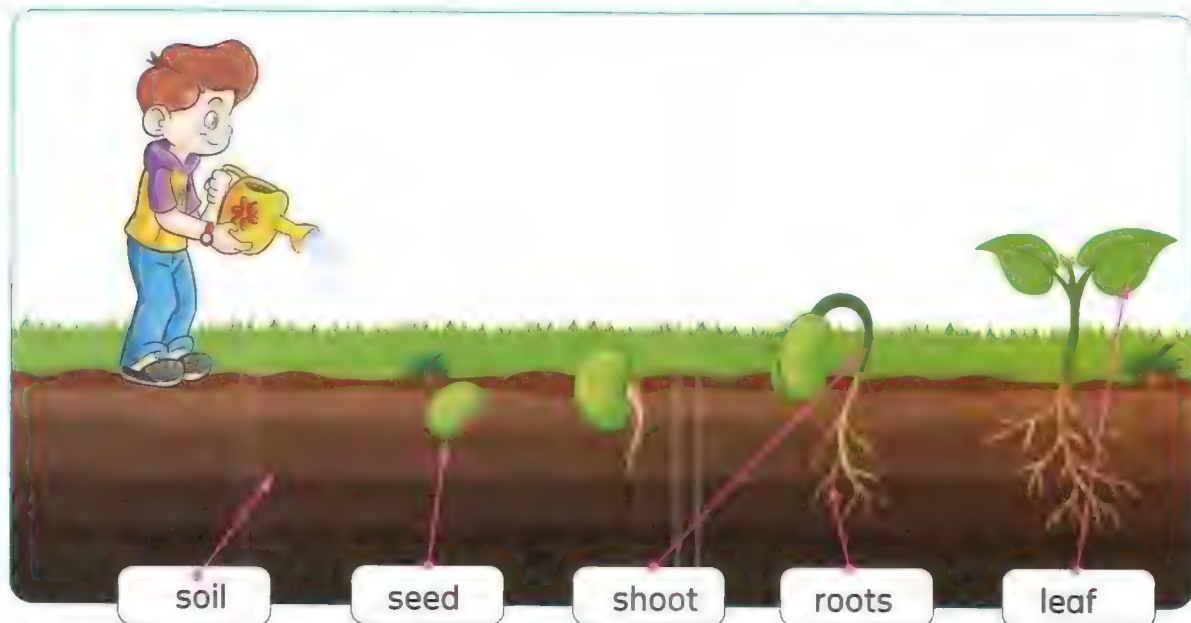


## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic         | Guiding words    | Sentences   |
|---------------|------------------|---|
| Tomato plants | tomatoes - red   | Tomatoes are green before they are red.                       |
|               | seeds - inside   | Tomatoes have seeds inside.                                   |
|               | seed - grow      | We plant a seed and the plant grows.                          |
|               | water - plant    | We water the plant every day.                                 |
|               | roots - soil     | The roots grow under the soil.                                |
|               | shoot - above    | The shoot grows above the soil.                               |
|               | flowers - become | The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. |

★ Look, read and identify.



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We ..... mango trees in our garden.  
a. shout      b. swim      c. kill      d. grow
- The farmer ..... the crops to help them grow.  
a. waters      b. reads      c. writes      d. speaks
- The sun helps the ..... grow into plants.  
a. boats      b. chairs      c. seeds      d. desks



## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

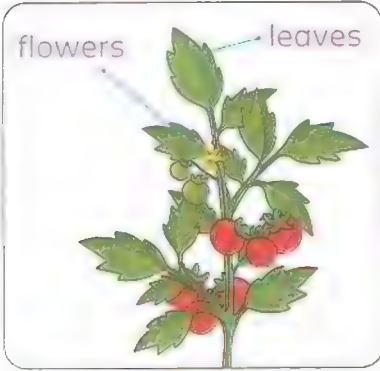


- Seleem and his dad are talking about tomato plants.  
يتحدث سليم ووالده عن ثمار الطماطم.

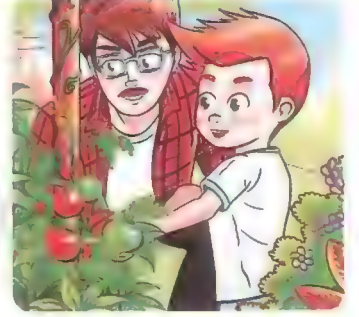


Come and look!

تعال وانظر!



What is it, Dad ?  
ما الأمر، يا أبي ؟



Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers ?

تنمو نباتات الطماطم لدينا في الشرفة!  
انظر، هل تستطيع أن ترى الأوراق والزهور ؟



Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green ?

أوه نعم، لكن لماذا الطماطم خضراء اللون ؟

Tomatoes are green before they are red.

تكون الطماطم خضراء اللون قبل أن تصبح حمراء اللون.



How do we grow new tomatoes ? كيف نزرع طماطم جديدة ؟

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

تحتوي الطماطم على بذور في الداخل. نستطيع أخذ البذور ونزرع طماطم جديدة ! نزرع البذرة وينمو النبات. وهذا ما يسمى بعملية الإنبات. نحن نسقي النبات كل يوم وتنمو الجذور تحت التربة الزراعية. ينبت النبات أزهارًا وتصبح الأزهار ثمار طماطم.



That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!

هذا رائع ! لقد وجدت طماطم حمراء اللون! هيا نتناولها لوجبة الغداء !



## ★ Read and Identify. اقرأ وتعرف.



### Audioscript

#### "The germination process"

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

#### "عملية الإنبات"

نحن نضع البذرة في التربة. البذرة تحتاج لضوء الشمس والمياه حتى تستطيع أن تنمو. البذرة تنتج جذور تحت التربة. ثم تنمو النبتة وتصبح أطول فوق التربة. في النهاية، النبات الكامل ينمو كأوراق شجر وأزهار.

Describe the relationship between ideas.

وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

#### Learn

1. What does the seed need to grow ?

- The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow

#### Practice

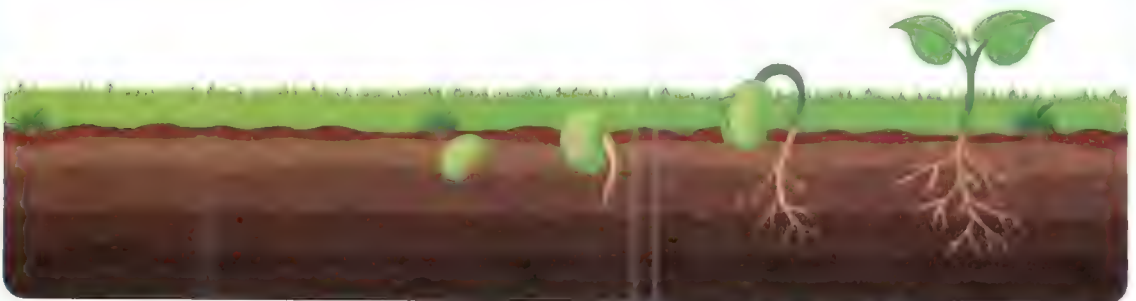
2. Where does the seed grow roots ?

.....

### Pop Quiz on listening and reading

► Look and write the germination process.

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....



# General Exercises | on Lesson 1

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. leaves                      b. seeds                      c. roots                      d. flowers
- We can take the seeds to ..... new tomatoes.  
a. clean                      b. eat                      c. raise                      d. grow
- We ..... a seed and the plant grows.  
a. wash                      b. bring                      c. plant                      d. read
- Tomatoes are ..... before they are red.  
a. white                      b. black                      c. brown                      d. green

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

grows – roots – leaves – sunlight – red

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs [1] ..... and water, so it can grow. The seed grows [2] ..... under the soil. Then it [3] ..... a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows [4] ..... and flowers. That is called germination.

[القاهرة - الشراية ٢٠٢٣]

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tomatoes are delicious and healthy. We use tomatoes in most of our food. We grow tomatoes on our balcony. Mom always takes fresh tomatoes and makes us delicious salad. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is about " ..... plants".  
a. Guava                      b. Tomato                      c. Mango                      d. Peas
- We should ..... the plant every day to grow.  
a. ask                      b. hurt                      c. water                      d. cut

### B. Answer the following questions.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

- What does mom use the fresh tomatoes for ?

.....



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

A

1. We need good ..... to grow good plants.  
a. seeds                      b. books                      c. bags                      d. pens
2. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called .....  
a. information              b. fraction                      c. germination              d. cutting
3. The ..... grows above the soil.  
a. water                      b. soil                      c. shoot                      d. root
4. The green ..... of the plants are amazing.  
a. claws                      b. leaves                      c. beaks                      d. candies

B

1. We grow white flowers on the ..... in our apartment.  
a. zoo                      b. balcony                      c. park                      d. museum
2. Put the seed in the ..... and water it.  
a. soil                      b. fridge                      c. shoot                      d. air
3. .... grow under the soil.  
a. Shoots                      b. Flowers                      c. Roots                      d. Leaves
4. Watermelons have black ..... inside.  
a. seeds                      b. leaves                      c. roots                      d. flowers
5. Plants need ..... and water to grow.  
a. fruits                      b. sunlight                      c. sugar                      d. flowers

[دمياط - عربة البرج ٢٠٢٤]

5 Punctuate the following.

can you see the leaves and the flowers

.....

- 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

How to grow tomatoes

Guiding elements :

- seeds

- germination

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key vocabulary



lotus flower  
زهرة اللوتس



sunflower  
زهرة عباد الشمس



rose وردة



bean plant  
نبات الفول



reed  
نبات القصب / الجريد



daisy  
زهرة الأقحوان [اللؤلؤ]



acacia شجرة السنط  
[شجر الصمغ العربي]



tamarisk  
شجرة الطرفاء  
[نحيلة الأغصان]



orange tree  
شجرة البرتقال

## • Extra vocabulary

|         |              |               |            |              |         |
|---------|--------------|---------------|------------|--------------|---------|
| habitat | موطن - بيئة  | maize         | ذرة        | agricultural | زراعي   |
| around  | حوالي        | living things | كائنات حية | beetle       | خنفساء  |
| farmer  | فلاح / مزارع | desert        | صحراء      | eggplant     | بادنجان |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic          | Guiding words  | Sentences   |
|----------------|----------------|---|
| Plant habitats | agricultural   | Farmers work in an agricultural habitat.              |
|                | farmers - food | Farmers grow food for us to eat.                      |
|                | rivers - water | Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.     |
|                | rain - desert  | There's not much rain in the desert.                  |
|                | plants - water | Plants that live in desert don't need a lot of water. |

A **habitat** is a place where living things live and grow.

الموطن (البيئة) هو المكان حيث الكائن الحي يعيش وينمو.

## II

## Reading

### 1 Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

#### Plant habitats بيئات النبات

#### 1 Agricultural habitat البيئة الزراعية

Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

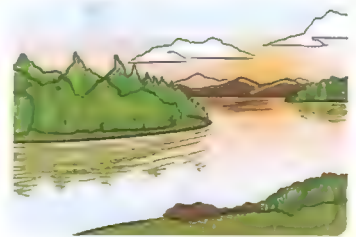
المزارعون يعملون هنا. يزرعون الطعام لنا لتأكل.



#### 2 Rivers and lakes الأنهار والبحيرات

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

تحتاج النباتات القريبة من الأنهار والبحيرات إلى الكثير من المياه.

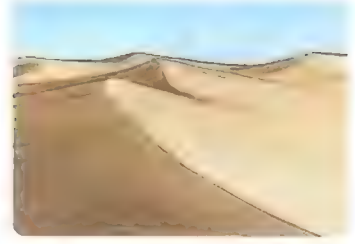




### 3 Desert habitat البيئة الصحراوية

There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار هنا. النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء لا تحتاج الكثير من المياه.



Describe the relationship between ideas.

وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. In which habitat do farmers grow food for us to eat ?  
- In agricultural habitat.

Practice

2. What do plants near rivers need to grow ?  
.....

### 4 Read and identify اقرأ وتعرف.

Where do these plants live ?

Plants نباتات

Habitats مواطن



lotus flower



reed



rivers or lakes



bean plant



orange tree



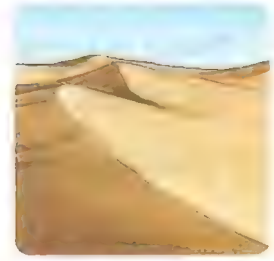
agricultural habitat



tamarisk



acacia



desert  
habitat

3 Read the fact file and compare. اقرأ ملف الحقائق وقارن.

### The differences between the flowers

|   | daisy  | rose  | sunflower  |
|---|---|--|---|
| How big is the flower ?<br>كم حجم الزهرة ؟        | 2.5 – 5 cm  | about 6 cm   | 7.5 – 15 cm   |
| How tall is it ?<br>كم طولها ؟                    | 10 cm   | 60 cm  | 1 – 3.5 m   |
| How long does it live ?<br>كم المدة التي تعيشها ؟ | around 6 days   | around 10 days   | around 2 weeks  |
| How heavy is it ?<br>كم وزنها ؟                   | around 20 g   | around 50 g  | around 200 g  |

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

- The  is taller than the .  
rose daisy  
- الورد أطول من زهرة الأقحوان.
- The  is taller than the .  
sunflower rose  
- زهرة عباد الشمس أطول من الورد.
- The  is the tallest flower.  
sunflower  
- زهرة عباد الشمس هي أطول زهرة.

## Remember :

Comparative adj. : - The rose is **taller than** the daisy.

- The sunflower is **more beautiful than** the cactus.

## • Superlative

## صيغة التفضيل

• عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين [واحد ومجموعة في صفة ذات مقطع واحد] نضع **the** قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة **[est]**:

## A Short adj. : الصفات القصيرة

[the + short adj. + est] صفة قصيرة + est



The giraffe is **the tallest** animal.



The cheetah is **the fastest** animal.



The turtle is **the slowest** animal.



My cat is **the nicest** in our street.



## B Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين في الصفات الطويلة (التي تتكون من أكثر من مقطع) نستخدم :

صفة طويلة (long adj.) + most + the

The rose is the most beautiful flower.



The lion is the most dangerous animal.



### Pop Quiz on Language Focus

#### 1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My city is the ..... [nice] place to live.
2. I think the crocodile is the ..... [scarier] animal.
3. He is the ..... [faster] boy in our class.
4. My brother is ..... [then] strongest player in the team.
5. Elephants are the ..... [bigger] animals.
6. Which animal is the ..... [scary] ?
7. The sunflower is the ..... [heavy].
8. The giraffe is the ..... [taller] land animal.
9. The Sahara Desert is the ..... [hot] desert.
10. I think pizza is the ..... [more] delicious food.
11. Soha is the ..... [tall] girl in the class.
12. What is the ..... [small] bird in the world ?
13. This mountain is the ..... [higher] mountain in the world.
14. Marwan is the ..... [smart] boy in math.
15. What is the ..... [more] expensive bag in the shop ?

[القاهرة - هليوبوليس ٢٠٢٤]



# General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Eman lives in a .....  
a. town                      b. city                      c. village                      d. forest
- ..... grow fruits and vegetables for us to eat.  
a. Farmers                      b. Vets                      c. Teachers                      d. Engineers
- There are a lot of plants near the .....  
a. desert                      b. sea                      c. lake                      d. river
- Plants near the river need a lot of .....  
a. food                      b. water                      c. juice                      d. seeds

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

farmers - rivers - tamarisk - agricultural - habitat

Plants grow in different habitats. Bean plants and orange trees grow in the (1) ..... habitat. Farmers work there. Reed and lotus flowers grow near (2) ..... and lakes. Acacia and (3) ..... trees grow in the desert. Plants that grow in this (4) ..... don't need much water to grow.

[القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Rivers and lakes are also plant habitats. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. But in the desert habitat, plants don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert. Acacia plant and tamarisk grow in the desert.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The main idea of the text is about ".....".  
a. Plant habitats                      b. Clothes                      c. Festivals                      d. Houses
- The underlined word "near" is the opposite of .....  
a. far                      b. close                      c. behind                      d. about

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is a habitat ?

.....

4. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes ?

.....



4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Acacia grows in the desert .....  
a. ice                      b. hobby                      c. habitat                      d. room
2. .... work in the agricultural habitat.  
a. Engineers                      b. Farmers                      c. Vets                      d. Teachers
3. A/An ..... is a place where living things live and grow. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. habitat                      b. office                      c. fire station                      d. hospital
4. Lotus flowers grow near the ..... They need a lot of water.  
a. desert                      b. rocks                      c. river                      d. mountains

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

A

1. The blue whale is the ..... (bigger) animal.
2. My father is the ..... (brave) person in my family.
3. The turtle is ..... (than) slowest animal.
4. The elephant is the ..... (heavier) land animal.

B

1. Hala's red dress is the ..... (nice) one.
2. Crocodiles and snakes are the ..... (more) dangerous animals.
3. A snake is the ..... (scary) animal.
4. Bikes are ..... (slow) than cars. (أسوان - نصر ٢٠٢٤)

6 Punctuate the following.

how big is the flower

.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

The desert habitat

Guiding elements :

- not much rain                      - plants

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- ▶ Lucas and his farm
- ▶ CLIL : Math
- ▶ Pronunciation



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|              |           |              |            |                   |                  |
|--------------|-----------|--------------|------------|-------------------|------------------|
| land         | أرض       | special      | مميز / خاص | rainwater         | مياه الأمطار     |
| polluted air | هواء ملوث | farm land    | أرض زراعية | dry               | جاف              |
| liter        | لتر       | grandparents | الأجداد    | the United States | الولايات المتحدة |
| difficult    | صعب       |              |            |                   |                  |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular |              | Irregular |         |
|---------|--------------|-----------|---------|
| Present | Past         | Present   | Past    |
| decide  | يقرر         | buy       | يشترى   |
| change  | يتغير - يغير | bring     | يحضر    |
|         | decided      |           | bought  |
|         | changed      |           | brought |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|            |            |                  |          |
|------------|------------|------------------|----------|
| • at first | في البداية | • work very hard | يعمل بجد |
| • proud of | فخور بـ    | • decide to      | يقرر أن  |

## • Learn :

1. It's important to turn desert land into farmland to get more crops.

١. من المهم تحويل الأرض الصحراوية إلى أرض زراعية لكي نحصل على محاصيل أكثر.

2. Farms are good for the land because farmers look after the soil.

٢. المزارع مفيدة للأرض لأن المزارعون يعتنون بالتربة الزراعية.



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... air is very dangerous for our bodies.

- a. Clean      b. Healthy      c. Polluted      d. Green

2. She ..... fresh fruits at the market.

- a. made      b. bought      c. changed      d. decided

3. They plant many crops and raise animals on the .....

- a. tree      b. sunlight      c. air      d. farm

## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

### Lucas and his farm

لوكاس ومزرعته

Pop Quiz

جواب كل سؤال  
التي في العند  
تحتوي الخيارات

#### The beginning

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very special **farm**<sup>(1)</sup>. Forty years ago, the **land**<sup>(2)</sup> was very dry. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there.

Lucas's grandparents lived in the **city**<sup>(3)</sup>, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the **polluted air**<sup>(4)</sup> and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.



(1) مزرعة

(2) أرض

(3) مدينة

(4) هواء ملوث

(5) بذور

(6) مياه الأمطار

(7) أحضروا / جلبوا

#### The middle

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted millions of **seeds**<sup>(5)</sup>. They used **rainwater**<sup>(6)</sup> to water the seeds. They needed about a billion liters of water a year. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They **brought**<sup>(7)</sup> animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.



#### The end

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

Demonstrate  
understanding of  
specific details.

وضح فهمت التفاصيل

Learn

1. Lucas lives on a \_\_\_\_\_ in the United States.

a. farm

b. roof

c. cave

d. tent

Practice

2. Lucas's grandparents used \_\_\_\_\_ to water the seeds.

a. head

b. rainwater

c. oven

d. tube

يعيش لوكاس في مزرعة في الولايات المتحدة. إنها مزرعة مميزة جدًا. قبل أربعين عامًا، كانت الأرض جافة جدًا. لم يكن هناك أي مزارع. لا أحد كان يريد العيش هناك. عاش أجداد لوكاس في المدينة لكنهم لم يعجبهم ذلك. لم يحبوا الهواء الملوث والضجيج. أرادوا أن يمتلكوا مزرعة. قروا شراء قطعة أرض. في البداية، كانت الحياة صعبة جدًا. لقد عملوا بجد وزرعوا ملايين البذور. استخدموا مياه الأمطار ليسقوا البذور. كانوا بحاجة إلى حوالي مليار لتر من الماء في السنة. لقد زرعوا الكثير من الفاكهة مثل البرتقال والليمون. جلبوا الحيوانات إلى الأرض. زرعوا الأشجار والزهور. اليوم، يعيش لوكاس في المزرعة مع والدته ووالده. هم سعداء ويعيشون حياة جيدة. هم فخرون جدًا بأجداد لوكاس الذين استخدموا النباتات في جعل الأرض خضراء.



Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees<sup>(1)</sup> across the country. This means<sup>(2)</sup> we need to plant billions of seeds.

(1) نخيل

(2) يعنى / يقصد

تريد مصر أن تزرع أكثر من ١٠٠ مليون نخلة في جميع أنحاء البلد. وهذا يعنى أننا في حاجة لزراعة مليارات من البذور.

## A Billion

Learn

A billion is a thousand million :

المليار هو ألف مليون

1,000,000,000

★ Look and identify. انظروا وتعرفوا.

Large numbers up to billions

The place-value chart

مخطط القيمة المكانية



| billions            | millions                          |                                |                    | thousands                        |                               |                   | units            |               |              |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|
| billions<br>مليارات | hundred millions<br>مئات الملايين | ten millions<br>عشرات الملايين | millions<br>ملايين | hundred thousands<br>مئات الآلاف | ten thousands<br>عشرات الآلاف | thousands<br>آلاف | hundreds<br>مئات | tens<br>عشرات | ones<br>آحاد |
| 1                   | 0                                 | 0                              | 0                  | 0                                | 0                             | 0                 | 0                | 0             | 0            |

★ Identify. تعرف.

|               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1             | one                |
| 10            | ten                |
| 100           | a hundred          |
| 1,000         | a thousand         |
| 10,000        | ten thousand       |
| 100,000       | a hundred thousand |
| 1,000,000     | a million          |
| 10,000,000    | ten million        |
| 100,000,000   | a hundred million  |
| 1,000,000,000 | a billion          |



Pop Quiz on Math

1 Read and complete.

billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands

Large numbers up to billions

|   |  |                 |  |                  |  |          |  |       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|-----------------|--|------------------|--|----------|--|-------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| .....   |  | ten<br>millions |  | .....            |  | .....    |  | ..... |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> </table> |  |                 |  |                  |  |          |  |       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |                 |  |                  |  |          |  |       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| .....   |  | millions        |  | ten<br>thousands |  | hundreds |  | ones  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

2 Read and match.

- 1,000,000,000
- 100,000,000
- 1,000
- 100,000
- 10,000

- a thousand
- ten thousand
- a billion
- a hundred million
- a hundred thousand

# IV

## Pronunciation

**s + l = sl**

The letters **sl** make the sound /sl/.



sleep بنام



slice شريحة



slippers نعال

**s + w = sw**

The letters **sw** make the sound /sw/.



sweep  
يكنس



switch  
مفتاح كهربائي



sweets  
حلوى



swan  
بجعة



swim  
يسبح

### Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

**1** Look and write the missing sound.

1. 2. 3.



\_ \_ an



\_ \_ ice



\_ \_ ippers

**2** Read and circle the odd sound out.

1. sweep – sleep – swan – swim
2. slippers – sleep – slices – sweets
3. switches – sweep – sweets – slippers
4. slice – swim – sweep – swan



## The suffix "-ful". [اللاحقة [-ful]].

### The suffix :

is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word.  
اللاحقة هي إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الحروف في نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

### Learn :

We use the suffix **[-ful]** at the end of many adjectives. It means "full of".  
تستخدم اللاحقة [-ful] في نهاية العديد من الصفات وهي تعني كثير من.

| Adjectives end by the suffix [-ful] |                  |           |                     |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|-----------|---------------------|
| Base word                           |                  | Adjective |                     |
| care                                | رعاية / يعتنى    | careful   | حذر / حريص          |
| help                                | يساعد / مساعدة   | helpful   | مساعد / متعاون      |
| color                               | يلون / لون       | colorful  | زاهي الألوان - ملون |
| use                                 | يستخدم / استخدام | useful    | مفيد                |
| beauty                              | جمال             | beautiful | جميل                |



He's a **careful** driver.

هو سائق حذر.



**Notice :** The letter "y" changes to "i" in the word "beautiful".

لاحظ أن الحرف "y" يتغير إلى "i" في كلمة "beautiful".



## Pop Quiz on Language

**1** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Salma is a ..... (beauty) girl.
2. My brother likes ..... (colorfully) flowers.
3. Ali is a ..... (care) driver. He drives carefully.
4. This book is ..... (use). I will read it again.

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Someone who always helps people is .....

a. helpful

b. helpless

c. helpfully

d. help

2. Soha is ..... and cute.

a. beautiful

b. beauty

c. more beauty

d. as beauty

3. These dresses are .....

a. color

### b. colors

c. colorful

d. colorfully

4. She usually ..... about her children.

a. careful

**b. cares**

c. carefully

d. careless

5. My sister likes the ..... of nature.

a. beauty

b. beautiful

c beautifully

d. more beautiful

**3** Add the suffix [-ful] to make new adjectives and write the new word.

1. base + suffix = new word

2. hope + ful = hopeful

3. help + =

- |    |       |   |  |   |  |
|----|-------|---|--|---|--|
| 4. | thank | + |  | = |  |
|----|-------|---|--|---|--|

5. color + =

6. use + =

## تدریب تلقائى

**يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية**



# General Exercises

## on Lesson 3

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Waleed lives on a .....  
a. cave                      b. tent                      c. farm                      d. boat
2. They plant millions of .....  
a. flowers                      b. seeds                      c. leaves                      d. sweets
3. They use the ..... to water the seeds.  
a. Nile                      b. lake                      c. sea                      d. ocean
4. They grow many fruits like .....  
a. pineapples                      b. oranges                      c. apples                      d. figs

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When there is no water in the land, it becomes .....  
a. wet                      b. dry                      c. good                      d. fresh
2. They used ..... to water the seeds. [السويس - شمال السويس ٢٠٢٤]  
a. rainwater                      b. air                      c. heat                      d. sun
3. I don't like the ..... air in the city.  
a. clear                      b. fresh                      c. polluted                      d. clean
4. He is ..... of his parents. They did many useful things.  
a. scared                      b. afraid                      c. full                      d. proud

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

flowers - green - billion - proud - life

My grandparents had a farm. They had a good (1) ..... there. They grew many fruits. They used rainwater to water the plants. They needed about a (2) ..... liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land (3) ..... They planted trees and (4) ..... [الجيزة - العمرانية ٢٠٢٣]

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They



grew many fruits and brought animals to the land. Today, Adam lives on the farm with his parents. They're very happy and they have a good life. His parents are very proud of his grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- They planted millions of .....  
a. seeds                      b. flowers                      c. farms                      d. crops
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to Adam's .....  
a. friends                      b. parents                      c. grandparents                      d. sisters

**B. Answer the following questions.**

- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
- What did Adam's grandparents bring to the land ? ....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- The flowers in the garden are very ..... [beauty].
- Be ..... [care] when you cut the vegetables with a knife.
- Noha likes wearing ..... [color] clothes.
- Reading is very ..... [use].

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i live on a farm

.....

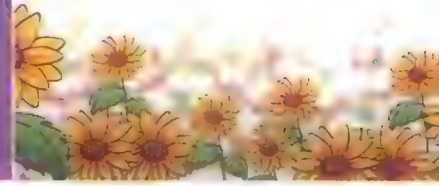
**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Life on a farm**

**Guiding elements :**

- plant                                      - bring animals
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|         |                   |            |           |         |             |
|---------|-------------------|------------|-----------|---------|-------------|
| first   | أولاً             | next       | التالي    | after   | بعد         |
| finally | أخيراً            | after that | بعد ذلك   | papyrus | نبات البردي |
| sandals | حذاء مفتوح (صيفي) | life cycle | دورة حياة |         |             |

## • Extra vocabulary

|         |          |         |       |            |             |
|---------|----------|---------|-------|------------|-------------|
| again   | مرة أخرى | weather | طقس   | get taller | يزداد طولاً |
| quickly | بسرعة    | baskets | بيلال | process    | عملية       |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

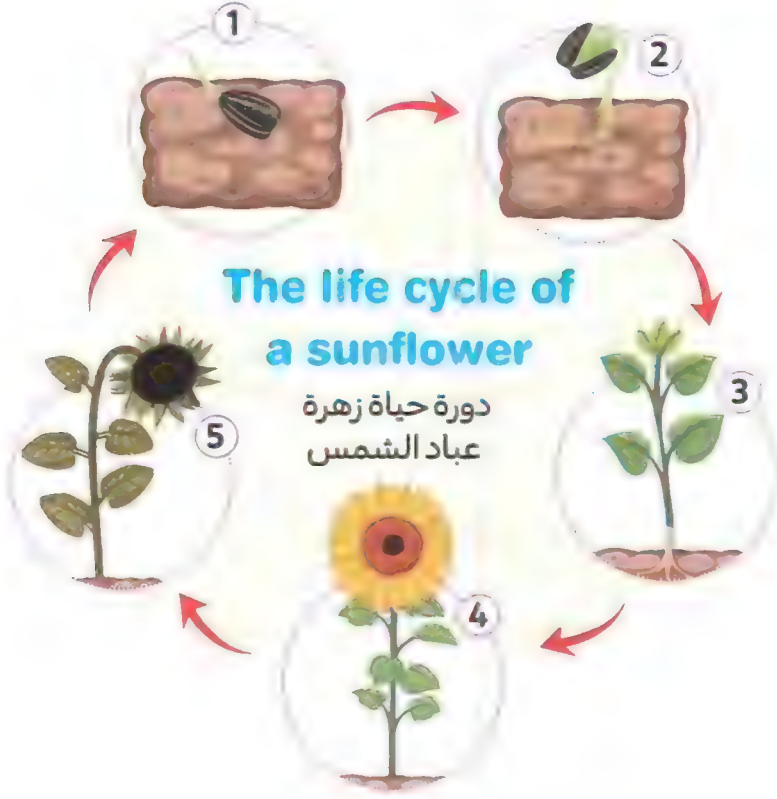
| Regular   |       |            | Irregular |      |       |
|-----------|-------|------------|-----------|------|-------|
| Present   |       | Past       | Present   |      | Past  |
| face      | يواجه | faced      | begin     | يبدأ | began |
| germinate | ينبت  | germinated | get       | يصبح | got   |
| drop      | يسقط  | dropped    |           |      |       |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic                         | Guiding words     | Sentences   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|---|
| The life cycle of a sunflower | seed - soil       | Plant the sunflower seed in soil, and water the seed.           |
|                               | germinate - roots | The seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil. |
|                               | shoot - leaves    | The shoot grows above the soil and it grows leaves.             |
|                               | face - sun        | The sunflower opens and faces the sun.                          |
|                               | die - drop        | The sunflower dies and drops its seeds.                         |
| Papyrus                       | special           | Papyrus is a very special plant.                                |
|                               | paper             | Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper.                   |
|                               | sandals           | They made sandals and baskets from papyrus.                     |
|                               | warm weather      | Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather.                  |
|                               | Nile Delta        | Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the river.                 |

★ Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.



- **First**, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. Water the seed.  
- أولاً، ازرع بذرة زهرة عباد الشمس في التربة. أروي البذرة بالماء.
- **Next**, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.  
- ثم، تنبت البذرة وتبدأ الجذور في النمو تحت التربة.
- **After that**, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.  
- بعد ذلك، البرعم ينمو فوق التربة. تنمو أوراق الشجر ويزداد طولاً.
- **After** about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.  
- بعد حوالي 4 أشهر، تتفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.
- **Finally**, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.  
- في النهاية، تذبل زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها. تبدأ العملية مرة أخرى.



★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

## The life cycle of a tomato

دورة حياة نبات الطماطم



**First**, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You water it.

**Next**, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

**After that**, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller .

**After a few weeks**, the plant grows leaves, flowers, and tomatoes.

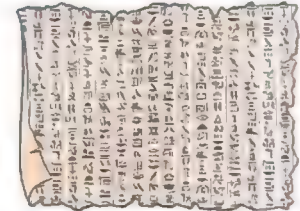
**Finally**, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

## Papyrus نبات البردى

Papyrus is a very special plant.  
It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly.  
It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.



نبات البردى هو نبات مميز جدًا، وهو مشهور لأن المصريين القدماء استخدموا نبات البردى لصنع الورق. صنعوا أيضًا الصنادل والسلال من نبات البردى. يحتاج نبات البردى الكثير من المياه والجو الدافئ لينمو بسرعة. ينمو نبات البردى في دلتا النيل بالقرب من النهر.

# General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Papyrus is a very ..... plant. [أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤]  
a. bad                      b. poor                      c. special                      d. dangerous
- Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make .....  
a. food                      b. paper                      c. chairs                      d. tables
- Papyrus needs a lot of water and ..... weather to grow quickly.  
a. warm                      b. cold                      c. windy                      d. rainy
- Papyrus grows in the ..... near the river.  
a. desert                      b. Nile Delta                      c. sea                      d. farm

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The sunflower opens and ..... the sun.  
a. closes                      b. faces                      c. puts                      d. drops
- Baskets and sandals in Ancient Egypt were made from .....  
a. glass                      b. papyrus                      c. cotton                      d. water
- The sunflower dies and the life ..... begins again.  
a. cycle                      b. time                      c. boat                      d. style
- Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm ..... to grow.  
a. feather                      b. stem                      c. forest                      d. weather

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A

useful - drink - grow - oil - yellow

A sunflower is a big flower. It's always [1] ..... in color. Sunflowers need a lot of sun to [2] ..... Sunflower seeds also have a lot of [3] ..... in them and people use it for cooking a lot of kinds of foods such as rice, fried potatoes and onions. It's a very beautiful and [4] ..... flower.

[الجيزة - الهرم ٢٠٢٣]

B

roots - sun - After that - germinates - months

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You water it. Next, the seed [1] ..... and it starts to grow roots under the soil. [2] ..... , the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 [3] ..... , it opens and faces the [4] .....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing a lot of plants near the river. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. The Ancient Egyptians also used the papyrus to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about " .....".  
a. Lotus                      b. Rose                      c. Papyrus                      d. Tomatoes
2. The opposite of the underlined word "warm" is .....  
a. cold                      b. dry                      c. rainy                      d. sunny

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does papyrus need to grow ?  
.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....

5 Punctuate the following.

1. why do farmers grow sunflower (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
2. papyrus grows in the Nile delta.

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The life cycle of a tomato"

Guiding elements :

- seed    - germinate

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Skills

## 1 Reading Comprehension

### Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد معنى مفردة لغوية أو عبارة في النص.

مفتاح الحل بعد قراءة النص يمكنك أن تخمن معنى الكلمة المشار إليها من خلال الجملة التي ذكرت بها.

#### Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

##### Read and learn how to answer :

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

تقرأ الفقرة جيداً لتحديد معاني الكلمات المستهدفة  
عملية إنبات **germination** تحت **under**

1. The underlined word "under" is the opposite of .....  
a. near      b. above      c. in      d. between
2. The underlined word "germination" means .....  
a. growing      b. buying      c. selling      d. eating

#### Step 2

##### Read and answer the questions :

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly . It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

1. The underlined word "quickly" means .....  
a. fast      b. slowly      c. loudly      d. sadly
2. The underlined word "near" means .....  
a. far      b. big      c. close to      d. between

# 2

## Correction Notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

### Review

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| the → [صفة قصيرة] + est             | للتفضيل نضع قبل الصفة القصيرة [the] ونضيف لها [est] |
| Ex : tall → the tallest             |   |
| the most → [صفة طويلة]              | للتفضيل نضع قبل الصفة الطويلة [the most]            |
| Ex : beautiful → the most beautiful |   |
| the suffix [-ful]                   | اللاحقة [-ful] تضاف في نهاية الفعل لتحويله إلى صفة  |

### Learn

| Sentence   | Correction | Reason  |
|--|------------|---|
| ① The rose is the ..... [more] beautiful flower.   | most       | صفة تفضيل لصفة طويلة ووجود [the]                    |
| ② My city is the ..... [nicer] place to live.      | nicest     | للتفضيل نضيف للصفة القصيرة [the] وقبلها [est]       |
| ③ Salma is a ..... [help] girl.                    | helpful    | فعل مضاف له ful لتحويله إلى صفة                     |
| ④ Mona is ..... [than] tallest girl in our family. | the        | للتفضيل نضع قبل الصفة القصيرة [the] ونضيف لها [est] |

### Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة. Write the reason.

|   |              |       |
|---|--------------|-------|
| ① What is the ..... [taller] flower ?           | tallest      | ..... |
| ② A rose is a ..... [beauty] flower.            | beautiful    | ..... |
| ③ Football is the ..... [more] popular sport.   | most         | ..... |
| ④ I'm ..... [shorter than] boy in my classroom. | the shortest | ..... |

◀ اكتب التصحيح. Write the correction.

|  |       |   |
|--|-------|---|
| ① Lara is the ..... [young] girl in our family.    | ..... | للتفضيل نضيف للصفة القصيرة [the] وقبلها [est] |
| ② Salma is ..... [than] fastest girl.              | ..... | نضع [the] قبل صفة التفضيل القصيرة             |
| ③ Ice cream is the ..... [more] delicious dessert. | ..... | للتفضيل نضع [most] قبل الصفة الطويلة          |
| ④ The dress is very ..... [color].                 | ..... | فعل مضاف له [ful] لتحويله إلى صفة             |





# 4

## Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٩ جملة).

### 1 A tomato Plant

Tomatoes have seeds inside<sup>[1]</sup>. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes<sup>[2]</sup>. We plant a seed and water it every day<sup>[3]</sup>. The roots grow under the soil<sup>[4]</sup>. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits<sup>[5]</sup>. Tomatoes are green before they are red<sup>[6]</sup>.

### 2 Different flowers

There are many different flowers such as sunflower, rose and daisy<sup>[7]</sup>. The sunflower is the biggest flower<sup>[8]</sup>. The rose lives longer than the daisy<sup>[9]</sup>. The sunflower is the heaviest flower<sup>[10]</sup>. The rose is taller than the daisy<sup>[11]</sup>. The sunflower is taller than the rose<sup>[12]</sup>.

### 3 Plant habitats

There are many plant habitats<sup>[13]</sup>. In agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat<sup>[14]</sup>. They plant bean plants and orange trees<sup>[15]</sup>. There are plants that grow near rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed<sup>[16]</sup>. They need a lot of water to grow<sup>[17]</sup>. In desert habitat, there is not much rain so the plants don't need a lot of water<sup>[18]</sup>.

### 4 Papyrus

Papyrus is a very special plant<sup>[19]</sup>. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river<sup>[20]</sup>. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper<sup>[21]</sup>. They also used the papyrus plant to make sandals and baskets<sup>[22]</sup>. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly<sup>[23]</sup>. It is a very useful plant<sup>[24]</sup>.

### 5 Life on a farm

Life is good on farms<sup>[25]</sup>. The air isn't polluted and there isn't any noise<sup>[26]</sup>. People grow a lot of plants on farms<sup>[27]</sup>. They need a lot of water for growing plants<sup>[28]</sup>. They work hard to make the land green<sup>[29]</sup>.

# Review on Unit 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة فى ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

|              |                     |
|--------------|---------------------|
| leaf         | ورقة شجر            |
| soil         | تربة زراعية         |
| roots        | جذور                |
| seeds        | بذور                |
| shoot        | برعم / نبتة         |
| bean plant   | نبات الفول          |
| lotus flower | زهرة اللوتس         |
| orange tree  | شجرة برتقال         |
| acacia       | شجر السنط           |
| rose         | وردة                |
| rainwater    | مياه الأمطار        |
| polluted air | هواء ملوث           |
| reed         | نبات القصب / الجريد |
| sunflower    | زهرة عباد الشمس     |
| habitat      | موطن - بيئة         |

## Phonics

/sl/

sleep

slice

slippers

/sw/

sweep

switch

swan

## Language

### 1 Superlative adjectives

the + short adj. + est

- My city is **the nicest** place to live in.

the most + long adj.

- I think a rose is **the most** beautiful flower.

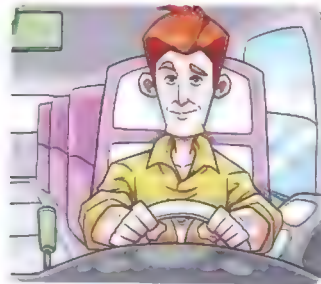


### 2 The suffix "-ful" = "full of"

- We use the suffix "-ful" at the end of many adjectives.

care → careful

- He's a **careful** driver.



# Test 5 on Unit 3

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are many ..... habitats.  
a. tree                      b. flower                      c. plant                      d. animal
2. .... grow food for us to eat.  
a. Vets                      b. Farmers                      c. Doctors                      d. Teachers
3. Farmers plant bean plants and ..... trees.  
a. banana                      b. orange                      c. lemon                      d. guava
4. Lotus flower and ..... grow near rivers and lakes.  
a. reed                      b. rose                      c. daisy                      d. sunflower

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. There is not much rain in the ..... habitat.  
a. agricultural      b. desert      c. river      d. lake
2. .... grow under the soil.  
a. Leaves      b. Roots      c. Flowers      d. Shoots
3. Farmers work in ..... habitat.  
a. desert      b. lake      c. agricultural      d. river
4. The land is very ....., it needs a lot of water.  
a. wet      b. dry      c. good      d. easy

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

soil - water - fruits - farmer - seeds

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the <sup>[1]</sup> ..... and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and <sup>[2]</sup> ..... it every day. The roots grow under the <sup>[3]</sup> ..... The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato <sup>[4]</sup> .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My brother Mazen is interested in flowers. He is doing research about the life cycle of a sunflower. The sunflower is a big, yellow flower. First, we plant the sunflower seed in soil and water it. Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above



the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller. After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun. Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1. This text is about "The life cycle of the .....".  
a. tomato                      b. rice                      c. sunflower                      d. rose
- 2. The seed ..... and it starts to grow roots under the soil.  
a. drops                      b. dies                      c. falls                      d. germinates

**B. Answer the following questions.**

- 3. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....
- 4. What happens at the end of the life cycle of the sunflower ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- 1. Who is the ..... [fast] boy in the class ? - Khaled.
- 2. This boy is ..... [help]. He helps everyone.
- 3. I think the lion is the ..... [more] dangerous animal.
- 4. A daisy is taller ..... [then] a lotus flower.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

which plant is the tallest  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Agricultural habitat**

**Guiding elements :**

- Where do farmers work ?      - Which plants grow in the agricultural habitat ?  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

# Test 6 on Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. We put a seed in the .....  
a. pot                      b. oven                      c. cup                      d. soil
2. The seed needs ..... to grow.  
a. bag                      b. water                      c. book                      d. roots
3. The seed grows roots ..... the soil.  
a. under                      b. above                      c. between                      d. next
4. The full plant grows ..... and flowers.  
a. roots                      b. shoots                      c. leaves                      d. seeds

[الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٣]

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. My father doesn't like the ..... of the city. [الإسماعيلية - توجيه اللغة الانجليزية ٢٠٢٤]  
a. happiness                      b. quietness                      c. noise                      d. beauty
2. A daisy is a/an ..... . [بنى سويف - الفشن ٢٠٢٤]  
a. tree                      b. flower                      c. animal                      d. car
3. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to make paper. [الجيزة - العبور ٢٠٢٤]  
a. animals                      b. sand                      c. papyrus                      d. seeds
4. The sunflower dies and drops its ..... . [الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤]  
a. seeds                      b. soil                      c. roots                      d. paper

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

water - seeds - green - happy - roots

My friend Selim likes farms and plants. He likes the [1] ..... color of the leaves. He likes to use the [2] ..... to grow new plants. He waters the plants every day. The [3] ..... grow under the soil. My friend becomes very [4] ..... when the plants grow flowers. [سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣]

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Amal lives in a village near the river. Farmers grow many fruits and vegetables there for us to eat. They grow vegetables like onions, tomatoes and rice. Farmers grow fruits like apples and oranges, too. There are a lot of plants near the river. Plants near the river need a lot of water.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word "near" means ..... to.  
a. far                      b. close                      c. behind                      d. about
2. Farmers need ..... to grow plants and vegetables.  
a. food                      b. onions                      c. water                      d. villages

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....

4. What do farmers grow ?  
.....

[بورسعيد - شمال ٢٠٢٣]

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. The cheetah is the ..... [fast] animal. [الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤]
2. The rose is the ..... [more] beautiful flower. [الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٤]
3. The sunflower is the ..... [big] flower. [بني سويف - الواسطي ٢٠٢٤]
4. Crocodiles are more dangerous ..... [of] fish. [قنا - قفط ٢٠٢٤]

**6 Punctuate the following.**

papyrus is an Egyptian plant

[البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣]

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**The life cycle of a sunflower**

**Guiding elements :** soil - seed

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[القاهرة - عين شمس ٢٠٢٣]



### Choose the correct answer.

- Adam's grandparents wanted to have a .....  
a. house    b. garden    c. farm
- They used ..... to water the seeds.  
a. Nile water    b. rainwater    c. floods
- They are very ..... as they have a good life.  
a. tired    b. busy    c. happy

### Choose the correct answer.

- A snake is the ..... animal.  
a. scarier    b. scariest    c. scary    d. as scary
- The sunflower dies and drops its .....  
a. roots    b. seeds    c. soil    d. shoot
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. flowers    b. seeds    c. reeds    d. paper
- Farmers grow ..... like oranges and lemons.  
a. fruits    b. colors    c. subjects    d. candies
- I think English is the ..... subject.  
a. easier    b. easily    c. easiest    d. easy

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- grow - a lot - Farmers - food - of.  
.....
- need - grow - Plants - water - to.  
.....
- bag - heaviest - I - the - have.  
.....
- do - Where - you - live ?  
.....
- the most - flower - What - beautiful - is ?  
.....

### Listen and choose the correct answer.

- Farmers look after the .....  
(trees - fish - babies)
- They ..... plants like bean plants.  
(buy - grow - change)
- They sell some oranges to the .....  
(hospital - supermarket - garden)

### Read and complete the dialogue.

plants - agricultural - bean - habitat

Room : In which (1) ..... do you live ?

Nada : I live in a/an (2) ..... habitat.

Room : Which (3) ..... grow in it ?

Nada : There are (4) ..... plants and orange trees.

### Read and answer the following questions.

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the polluted air and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land. They planted trees and the flowers. At the end, they are very happy and they have a good life.

### Answer the following questions.

- Where did Adam's grandparents live ?  
.....
- What did Adam's grandparents buy ?  
.....

## I

## Vocabulary

### Unit 1

|            |           |            |              |             |            |
|------------|-----------|------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| bananas    | موز       | potatoes   | بطاطس        | special     | خاص / مميز |
| chicken    | دجاج      | onions     | بصل          | raise       | يربي       |
| grapes     | عنب       | tomatoes   | طماطم        | competition | مسابقة     |
| rice       | أرز       | vegetables | خضروات       | gardener    | بستاني     |
| milk       | حليب      | breakfast  | وجبة الإفطار | emperor     | إمبراطور   |
| watermelon | بطيخ      | lunch      | وجبة الغداء  | palace      | قصر        |
| sugarcane  | قصب السكر | dinner     | وجبة العشاء  | honest      | أمين       |

### Unit 2

|            |            |            |            |           |             |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| spider     | عنكبوت     | beak       | منقار      | flat feet | أقدام مسطحة |
| fennec fox | ثعلب الفنك | bear       | دب         | strong    | قوى         |
| camel      | جمل        | dangerous  | خطير       | amazing   | رائع        |
| crocodile  | تمساح      | rhinoceros | غزال الريم | perfect   | مثالي       |
| snake      | ثعبان      | horse      | حصان       | noisy     | مزعج        |
| fur        | فراء       | pelican    | بجعة       | scared    | خائف        |

### Unit 3

|        |             |              |                     |              |              |
|--------|-------------|--------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------|
| soil   | تربة زراعية | daisy        | زهرة الأقحوان       | rose         | وردة         |
| shoot  | برعم / نبتة | sunflower    | زهرة عباد الشمس     | bean plant   | نبات الفول   |
| roots  | جذور        | desert       | صحراء               | habitat      | موطن         |
| leaf   | ورقة شجر    | balcony      | شرفة                | rainwater    | مياه الأمطار |
| seeds  | بذور        | tamarisk     | شجرة الطرفاء        | agricultural | زراعي        |
| flower | زهرة        | reed         | نبات القصب / الجريد | river        | نهر          |
| acacia | شجرة السنط  | lotus flower | زهرة اللوتس         | lake         | بحيرة        |

## Unit 1

## Conjunctions (but &amp; and)

- "but" to show contrast between ideas. نستخدم "but" للتعبير عن التناقض بين الأفكار.
- I love playing video games, but I only play them on Saturdays.
- "and" to add two ideas together. نستخدم "and" لربط فكرتين.
- I play football and basketball.

## The prefix "re—"

- The prefix "re" = again
- I repainted my room. = I painted my room again.

## Unit 2

## Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين [شخصين / شيئين]

## A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

[short adj. صفة قصيرة + er] + than



A mouse is smaller than an elephant.



## B. Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

more + long adj. [صفة طويلة] + than .....



Crocodiles are more dangerous than fish.



## Unit 3

## Superlative صيغة التفضيل

## A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

the + short adj. + est



The cheetah is the fastest animal.

## B. Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

the most + long adj.



The lion is the most dangerous animal.



# Test

## on Units 1, 2 & 3

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I love .....  
a. plants                      b. animals                      c. places                      d. clothes
2. Crocodiles are huge and .....  
a. scary                      b. noisy                      c. lazy                      d. ugly
3. Farmers like ..... because they are helpful.  
a. insects                      b. crocodiles                      c. snakes                      d. spiders
4. Spiders eat .....  
a. monkeys                      b. fish                      c. insects                      d. whales

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A farmer ..... after the trees.  
a. looks                      b. reads                      c. helps                      d. writes
2. Birds have one .....  
a. wing                      b. feather                      c. beak                      d. leg
3. He uses a ..... because he can't walk.  
a. shoot                      b. tree                      c. wheelchair                      d. beak
4. Camels are ..... animals. They can carry heavy things.  
a. weak                      b. strong                      c. bad                      d. tall

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

plant – farmers – fruits – important – potatoes

Many foods come from Egypt. Egypt is famous for growing rice and cotton. Egyptian (1) ..... produce vegetables like onions, (2) ..... and tomatoes. They also grow (3) ..... like mangoes, bananas and watermelons. Farmers are very (4) ..... Farmers in Egypt raise animals, too.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Camels are amazing ! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. They can live without water for a long time. Camels have special ways to close their nose and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. They have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about " ..... ".  
a. Crocodiles                      b. Bears                      c. Spiders                      d. Camels
2. The underlined word " delicious " means .....  
a. useless                      b. helpful                      c. hungry                      d. tasty

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is special about camels ?  
.....
4. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I love burgers, ..... [or] I only eat one a week.
2. I speak English ..... [but] French.
3. The crocodile is ..... [big] than the snake.
4. The elephant is the ..... [fat] animal.

6 Punctuate the following.

the bear is a big animal  
.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Rhim gazelles"

Guiding elements :

- Where do they live ?
- What do they look like ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# THEME

# 2

## Myself and others





# Where do you live ?

آين تعيش ؟

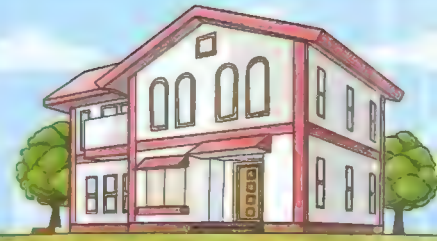
## Aims of Unit Four : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.  
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن مختلف المنازل والأماكن في مدينة.
- practice making sentences with prepositions.  
- أتدرب على تكوين جمل باستخدام حروف الجر.
- read and listen to a short story.  
- أقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/.  
- أتعلم عن وأقول كلمات بأصوات /f/ و /v/.
- write a short article about your village or city.  
- أكتب مقال قصير عن قريتك أو مدينتك.
- research and make a poster.  
- أبحث واصنع ملصق.





## I

## Vocabulary

## ► Key vocabulary



kitchen  
مطبخ



balcony  
شُرْفَة [بلكونة]



bathroom  
دورة مياه



living room  
حجرة معيشة



bedroom  
حجرة نوم



At home في المنزل



dining room  
حجرة الطعام

## ► Types of houses أنواع المنازل



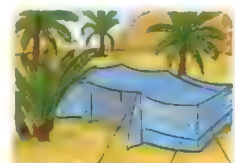
apartment  
شقة سكنية



houseboat  
منزل عائِم



house  
منزل



tent  
خيمة

## ► Extra vocabulary

|          |        |         |                     |           |      |
|----------|--------|---------|---------------------|-----------|------|
| building | مبنى   | unusual | غير عادي / استثنائي | whole     | كل   |
| quietly  | بهدهوء | room    | حجرة                | fantastic | رائع |
| street   | شارع   | cloth   | قماش                |           |      |

Did you know ? Canada has some very unusual houses. Some houses look like a cube. Other houses are made of ice.

دولة كندا بها منازل غير عادية جدًا. البعض منها تشبه المكعب والبعض الآخر مصنوع من الثلج.



## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular       |           | Irregular      |      |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|------|
| Present       | Past      | Present        | Past |
| relax يسترخي  | relaxed   | sit يجلس       | sat  |
| organize ينظم | organized | do يفعل / يؤدي | did  |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- for me بالنسبة لي
- That sounds good ! هذا يبدو جيدًا !
- move to ينتقل إلى
- [be] made of cloth عصنوع من القماش
- live on a houseboat يعيش في منزل عائم
- Let's do it ! هيا نفعلها !

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic            | Guiding words     | Sentences  |
|------------------|-------------------|--|
| Talía's home     | apartment         | Talia lives in an apartment.                                     |
|                  | bedroom           | Talia's favorite room is her bedroom.                            |
|                  | relax             | Talia can relax and do her homework in her bedroom.              |
|                  | living room       | Talia's mom's favorite room is the living room with the balcony. |
|                  | balcony           | Talia's mom can see the whole street from the balcony.           |
| Different houses | houseboat - water | We live on a houseboat on water.                                 |
|                  | desert - tent     | In the desert, people live in a tent.                            |
|                  | apartment         | I live in a big apartment with a balcony.                        |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

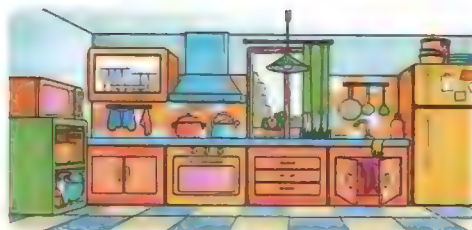
### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We cook food in the ..... .  
a. bedroom      b. bathroom      c. living room      d. kitchen
- The whole family sit together in the ..... to have their lunch.  
a. bedroom      b. dining room      c. bathroom      d. balcony
- I live with my family in a/an ..... . It's on water.  
a. houseboat      b. school      c. office      d. tent

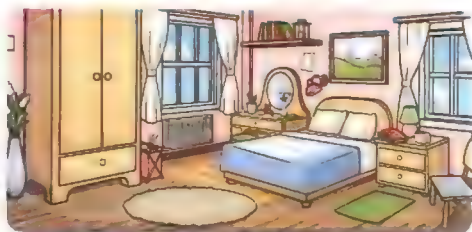


**2** Look, read and complete.

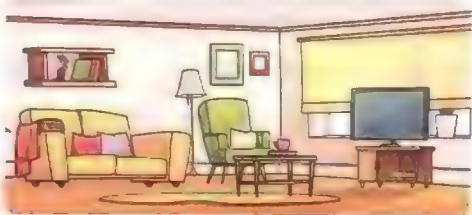
**1** I cook food in the .....



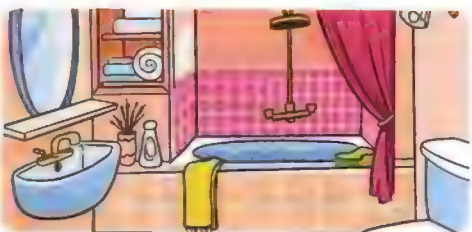
**2** I sleep here in the .....



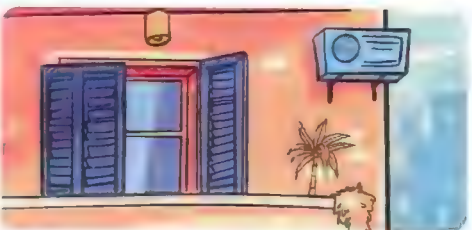
**3** I talk to my family and watch television in the .....



**4** I take a shower in the .....



**5** I love to sit in the .....  
I can see the people in the street.



**6** I eat dinner with my family in the .....



## II

## Listening and Reading



★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Where are Mom and Talia ?

أين توجد الأم وتاليا ؟



Look at our lovely new apartment !

انظري إلى شقتنا الجديدة الجميلة !

It's fantastic !

إنها رائعة !



Which is your favorite room ?

أي غرفة مفضلة لديك ؟

For me it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.

بالنسبة لي غرفة نومي. يمكنني الاسترخاء وأداء واجبي المنزلي بهدوء.



My favorite is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street ! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen ?

المفضل لي هي غرفة المعيشة مع الشرفة. يمكنني أن أرى الشارع بأكمله ! هل يمكنك مساعدتي في تنظيم المطبخ يا تاليا ؟

That sounds good, let's do it!

هذا يبدو جيدًا، فلنفعل ذلك !



Determine the meaning of words.

حدد معنى الكلمات.

Learn

1. The underlined word "fantastic" means .....

a. amazing

b. bad

c. heavy

d. boring

Practice

2. The underlined word "lovely" means .....

a. bad

b. beautiful

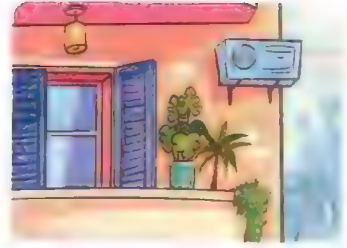
c. ugly

d. sad

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

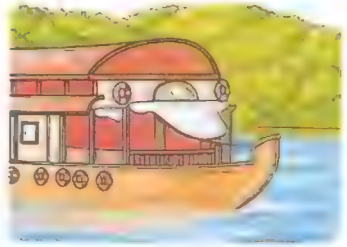
1 My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.

انتقلت عمتي/خالتي إلى شقة جديدة مع عائلتها. إنهم سعداء جدًا لأن لديهم شرفة كبيرة.



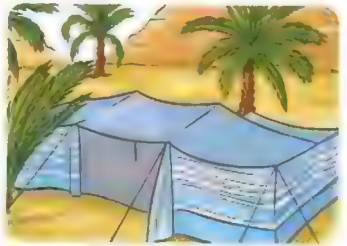
2 My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water.

صديقتي وعائلتها يعيشون في منزل عائِم. إنه صغير، لكنها تحب العيش على الماء.



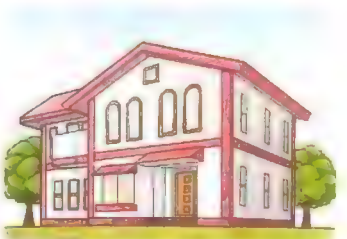
3 In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth.

في الصحراء، يسكن بعض الناس في خيمة. هذا المنزل مصنوع من القماش.



4 I love living in a house because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

أحب العيش في منزل لأنه مبني كبير. أجدادي يعيشون معنا. يمكنني اللعب في الخارج مع أخي وأختي.



### III Language functions

► Describing your home وصف المنزل الخاص بك



- I live in a/an **house** .
- It is in a lovely street.
- There are [ **two** ] bedrooms.
- There is a kitchen.
- My favorite room is the **[living room]** .
- I can **[watch TV]** in the **[living room]** .



# General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I live in an apartment with my .....  
a. friends      b. teachers      c. family      d. classmates
- I can relax and do my homework in my .....  
a. living room      b. bedroom      c. kitchen      d. balcony
- I can see the whole street from the .....  
a. kitchen      b. bedroom      c. bathroom      d. balcony
- I watch TV in the .....  
a. balcony      b. kitchen      c. bedroom      d. living room

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A** rooms - bedroom - brothers - desert - living

My parents live in a big house. It has many [1] ..... There are two beds in my [2] ..... I watch TV in the [3] ..... room. I love playing with my [4] ..... in the garden. (سوهاج - البلينا ٢٠٢٤)

**B** building - family - street - houseboat - fantastic

I'm Omar. I have a big [1] ..... who live in different places. My aunt lives on a [2] ..... because she loves living on water. My uncle loves living in a house because it is a big [3] ..... My grandparents live in an apartment. They have a big balcony, so they love the living room with the balcony because they can see the whole [4] .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My friend loves to live on water. He lives on a/an .....  
a. houseboat      b. apartment      c. tent      d. balcony
- I have a big balcony in my new .....  
a. tent      b. apartment      c. cave      d. nest
- The tent is made of .....  
a. cloth      b. wood      c. glass      d. grass
- I sleep in the .....  
a. kitchen      b. bedroom      c. living room      d. dining room

• **Read the text and answer the questions.**

Hello! My name is Emad. I want to tell you about myself. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. It's lovely with a big balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother in the living room. I help my mother organize the kitchen. I play football on Fridays with my friend.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. The underlined word "organize" means .....  
a. cross                      b. carry                      c. tidy                      d. move
2. Emad plays games with his .....  
a. brother                      b. sister                      c. cousin                      d. friend

**B. Answer the following questions .**

3. What's Emad's favorite room ?  
.....
4. When does Emad play football ?  
.....

• **5 Punctuate the following.**

what's your favorite room  
.....

• **6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Your home**

**Guiding elements :**

- Where do you live ?
- Which is your favorite room ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key vocabulary



## Extra vocabulary

|       |              |     |       |        |      |      |      |
|-------|--------------|-----|-------|--------|------|------|------|
| couch | أريكة / كنبه | map | خريطة | museum | متحف | sick | مريض |
|-------|--------------|-----|-------|--------|------|------|------|

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic          | Guiding words  | Sentences                                 |
|----------------|----------------|---|
| Zein's village | live - village | Zein lives in a village next to the Nile. |
|                | house - family | Zein lives in a house with his family.    |
|                | trees - behind | There are tall trees behind Zein's house. |





## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I buy chips from the .....  
a. post office      b. supermarket      c. hospital      d. office
- I learn math at .....  
a. school      b. office      c. hospital      d. post office
- I am in ..... because I am sick.  
a. village      b. school      c. supermarket      d. hospital
- They went to the ..... to buy new clothes.  
a. office      b. supermarket      c. school      d. shopping mall
- We have a comfortable ..... to sit on in the living room.  
a. map      b. village      c. couch      d. bed

## II

## Reading

★ Listen, read and learn. استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

My name's Zein. I live in a village next to the Nile.  
I live in a house with my family.  
Our house is not the biggest in the village.  
It is between a yellow house and a brown house.  
There are tall trees behind the house.

اسمى زين. أعيش في قرية بجوار النيل. أعيش في منزل مع عائلتي.  
منزلنا ليس الأكبر في القرية. إنه بين منزل أصفر اللون ومنزل بني اللون.  
يوجد أشجار طويلة خلف المنزل.



**Demonstrate understanding of specific details.**

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

**Learn**

1. Zein lives in a / an ..... next to the Nile.

a. city      b. town      c. village      d. oasis

**Practice**

2. Zein lives with his .....

a. family      b. friends      c. cousins      d. aunts

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.



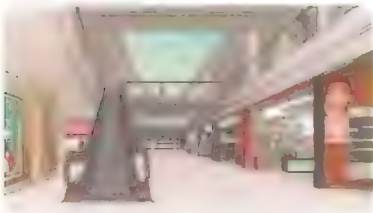
- 1 The supermarket :**  
is a place where we buy food.  
المتجر (السوبر ماركت) هو المكان الذي نشتري منه الطعام.



- 2 The post office :**  
is a place where we send letters.  
مكتب البريد هو المكان الذي نرسل عبره الخطابات.



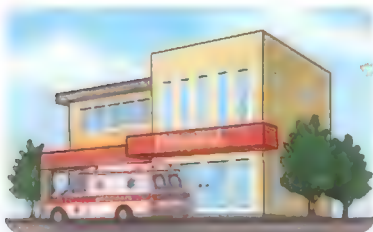
- 3 The school :**  
is a place where I learn.  
المدرسة هي المكان الذي أتعلم فيه.



- 4 The shopping mall :**  
is a place where I buy clothes and shoes.  
مركز التسوق هو المكان الذي اشتري منه الملابس والأحذية.



- 5 The office :**  
is a place where my mom and dad work.  
المكتب هو المكان الذي يعمل فيه أمي وأبي.



- 6 The hospital :**  
is a place where we go when we are sick.  
المستشفى هي المكان الذي نذهب إليه عندما نكون مرضى.

### III Language Focus

#### 1 Prepositions of place. ا. حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.

► We use prepositions of place to say where something is.

- نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنذكر مكان شيء ما.



behind خلف



in front of أمام



on على



in في

#### Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



between بين



under تحت



next to بجانب



above أعلى

#### 2 To ask about places. ٢. للسؤال عن الأماكن.

Where + is + place ?

أين + المكان..... ؟



Where is your house ?

أين منزلك ؟



My house is between two tall trees.

منزلي بين شجرتين طويلتين.







### Pop Quiz on Language Focus

**1** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. .... **[How]** is my book ? - On the table.
2. I like sitting ..... **[above]** the couch.
3. The cat is ..... **[on]** front of the tree.
4. The school is next ..... **[of]** the post office.
5. The children are sitting ..... **[above]** the tree in the shade.
6. There is a chair ..... **[in]** to the table.
7. My car is ..... **[in]** the bike and the bus.
8. Where ..... **[are]** the shopping mall ?
9. There's a bank in ..... **[next]** of my house.
10. There is a new shop ..... **[under]** the hotel. It's on the second floor.
11. The hospital is ..... **[behind]** the bank and the museum.
12. The book is ..... **[in]** the table. (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
13. The kitchen is next ..... **[of]** the living room. (القاهرة - المرح ٢٠٢٤)
14. The shopping mall is in front ..... **[on]** the bank. (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)
15. The roots grow ..... **[behind]** the soil.

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- تدريب تلقائي**
- هدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية
1. The kids are playing ..... the park.  
a. above                                      b. in  
c. next                                         d. under
  2. The tent is ..... to the car.  
a. above                                      b. in    c. next                                      d. under
  3. The trees are ..... to the apartments.  
a. under                                      b. next                                      c. in front                                  d. on
  4. The shopping mall is ..... the supermarket and the bank.  
a. between                                  b. under                                    c. above                                    d. on
  5. The shoot grows ..... the soil.  
a. next                                        b. in front of                              c. between                                  d. above

**تدریب تلقائى**

**يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية**



# General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Hani lives in a small .....  
a. city      b. park      c. village      d. zoo
- Hani's school is next to the .....  
a. bank      b. park      c. post office      d. zoo
- Behind the post office, there is a .....  
a. garage      b. bank      c. factory      d. park
- Hani plays ..... in the park with his friends.  
a. tennis      b. football      c. chess      d. volleyball

[البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٤]

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

clothes - swimming - shopping mall - learn - big

My name is Hala. I live in Cairo. There is a [1] ..... in my street. I buy [2] ..... and shoes from that shopping mall. The shopping mall is very [3] ..... It's next to my school where I [4] .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The ..... is a place where we buy food.  
a. post office      b. supermarket      c. school      d. hospital
- My parents ..... in an office.  
a. sell      b. buy      c. live      d. work
- We send letters in the .....  
a. post office      b. office      c. school      d. hospital
- He was sick, so he went to .....  
a. office      b. school      c. hospital      d. supermarket

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Fady. I'm very happy because today I will visit my uncle. My uncle lives in a village next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. The house is between a green house and a yellow house.

The village isn't big, but there are a lot of different places in it; a school, a hospital, a post office and a supermarket.

The children in the village can learn in the school. When people get sick, they can go to the hospital. People in the village buy their food from the supermarket. My cousins love their village because it's very quiet and there aren't a lot of cars there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "quiet" is the opposite of .....  
a. calm                      b. fresh                      c. healthy                      d. noisy
2. This text is about "Fady's .....".  
a. tent                      b. Nile                      c. village                      d. city

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do Fady's cousins love their village ?  
.....
4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.  
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

A

1. .... [How] is your school ? - It's next to my house.
2. The car is in ..... [next] of the bus.
3. The cat is ..... [under] two trees.
4. My father sits ..... [between] the chair.

B

1. The dog is ..... [in] the bed and the table.
2. I put my books ..... [on] the school bag.
3. Where ..... [are] the boy ?
4. The supermarket is next ..... [on] the school.

6 Punctuate the following.

where do you live  
.....

- 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your village"

Guiding elements :

- trees                      - quiet

.....

.....

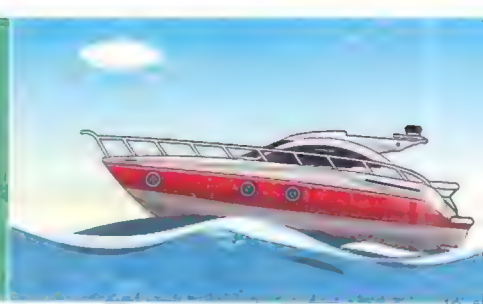
.....

.....

.....



- ▶ Giving directions
- ▶ Story : Living on a boat
- ▶ Pronunciation



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary



tourist boat

قارب سياحي

tourists

سياح

## • Extra vocabulary

suddenly

فجأة

Chinese اللغة الصينية

interesting

شيق

child

طفل

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular |             |         | Irregular |       |       |
|---------|-------------|---------|-----------|-------|-------|
| Present |             | Past    | Present   |       | Past  |
| turn    | يتجه        | turned  | come      | يأتي  | came  |
| smile   | يتسّم       | smiled  | fall      | يسقط  | fell  |
| shout   | يصرخ - يصيح | shouted | meet      | يقابل | met   |
| save    | ينقذ        | saved   | speak     | يتحدث | spoke |
| decide  | يقرر        | decided | swim      | يسبح  | swam  |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| • work on tourist boats<br>يعمل على القوارب السياحية               | • from all over the world<br>من كل أنحاء العالم |
| • travel up and down the Nile<br>ينتقل في نهر النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا | • Excuse me!<br>معذرة!                          |
| • fell into<br>سقط في  | • See you soon !<br>أراك قريبًا!                |
|  | • on a boat<br>على متن القارب                   |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic            | Guiding words     | Sentences                                |
|------------------|-------------------|--|
| Living on a boat | live - boat       | Sherif lives on a boat in the summer.    |
|                  | parents - tourist | His parents work on a tourist boat.      |
|                  | meet - people     | He meets people from all over the world. |
|                  | child - river     | A small child fell into the river.       |
|                  | save              | Sherif's dad saved the child.            |
|                  | learn - swim      | Sherif decided to learn to swim.         |

## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Excuse me, where's the post office ?

معذرةً، أين مكتب البريد ؟



Go straight ahead. Turn right. Take the second left. It's on the corner.

سير بشكل مستقيم. اتجه يمينًا. خذ المنعطف الثاني يسارًا. إنه عند الزاوية.



Thank you !

شكرًا لك !

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

## Dina is going to visit her friend Fareeda.

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some **directions**<sup>(1)</sup>.

From the **corner**<sup>(2)</sup> of South Street with Lateef Street, go **straight ahead**<sup>(3)</sup>.

Take the **second right**<sup>(4)</sup> to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon!

Fareeda



- مرحبًا دينا! أنا سعيدة جدًا لأنك ستأتي إلى منزلي اليوم. إليك بعض الاتجاهات. انطلقى إلى الأمام مباشرة من تقاطع الشارع الجنوبي مع شارع لطيف. اتخذى المنعطف الثاني إلى شارع عبد الوهاب. اذهبي إلى الأمام مباشرة. انعطفى يسارًا عند السوبر ماركت. منزلي بين السوبر ماركت والمدرسة. أراك قريبًا! فريدة

- (1) اتجاهات
- (2) زاوية - تقاطع شارعين
- (3) سر بشكل مستقيم
- (4) المنعطف الثاني

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

## How did Sherif's dad help the small child ?

كيف ساعد والد شريف الطفل الصغير ؟

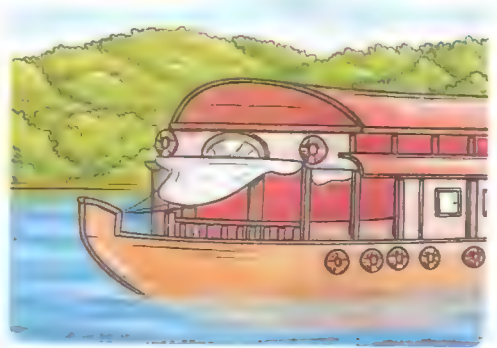


### The beginning

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on **tourist boats**<sup>(1)</sup> so he goes with them. They **travel**<sup>(2)</sup> up and down the Nile.

He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world.

He speaks English and Chinese with the **tourists**<sup>(3)</sup>.



- (1) قوارب سياحية
- (2) يسافر
- (3) سياح



## The middle

One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. **Suddenly**<sup>(4)</sup> a small child **fell**<sup>(5)</sup> into the river! The child **shouted**<sup>(6)</sup> 'Please help me !'

Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and **saved**<sup>(7)</sup> the child ! The child smiled and said, 'Thank you so much!'

[4] فجأة

[5] سقط

[6] صاح / صرخ

[7] انقذ

[8] قرر

## The end

Sherif was very happy, but he also **decided**<sup>(8)</sup> to learn to swim.

**Demonstrate understanding of specific details.**

حدد فهمك للتفاصيل.

**Learn**

1. Sherif lives on a ..... in the summer.

a. ferry

b. canoe

c. boat

d. ship

**Practice**

2. Sherif speaks English and Chinese with the .....

a. family

b. tourists

c. friends

d. teachers

يعيش صديقي شريف على قارب في فصل الصيف. يعمل والديه على متن قوارب سياحية لذلك يذهب معهم. يسافرون ذهابًا وإيابًا في نهر النيل. هو يحب الصيف كثيرًا. يرى الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة ويلتقي بأشخاص من جميع أنحاء العالم. هو يتحدث الإنجليزية والصينية مع السياح. ذات يوم توقف القارب. ورأى شريف بعض الأطفال تلعب، وفجأة سقط طفل صغير في النهر! الطفل صرخ "رجاءًا ساعدوني!" نادى شريف والده. رأى والد شريف الطفل وقفز في النهر. سبح وأنقذ الطفل! ابتسم الطفل وقال "شكرًا جزيلاً!" كان شريف سعيدًا جدًا، لكنه قرر أيضًا تعلم السباحة.

## III Pronunciation



**1 The letter "f" makes the / f / sound. [Voiceless]**



foot قدم



face وجه



fan مروحة



fish سمكة

### Pronunciation tips :

1. Touch your neck with your finger.

2. Say "fish". Your neck doesn't move.

- نصائح عند النطق :

١. المس رقبتك بأصابعك.

٢. قل "fish". رقبتك لا تتحرك [حنجرتك لا تهتز].

## 2 The letter "v" makes the / v / sound. [Voiced]



van  
شاحنة صغيرة



living room  
حجرة معيشة



vegetables  
خضروات

### Pronunciation tips :

1. Touch your neck with your finger.

2. Say "van". Your neck vibrates during its pronunciation.

- نصائح عند النطق :

١. المس رقبتك بأصبعك.

٢. انطق "van" سوف تهتز رقبتك [حنجرتك] أثناء النطق.

## Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

### 1 Listen and write the missing sound.

نصوص الاستماع  
في نهاية الكتاب

1.



li \_ ing room

2.



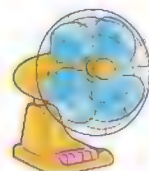
\_ oot

3.



\_ egetables

4.



\_ an

### 2 Look, unscramble and write.

1.



n v a

2.



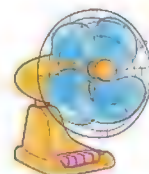
h s f i

3.



c f a e

4.



n a f

### 3 Read and circle the odd sound out.

1. van - vegetables - fan - vase

2. vest - foot - living room - violin

3. face - visitor - fish - foot

# General Exercises | on Lesson 3

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Amira went to the park last ..... with her family.  
a. Sunday      b. Monday      c. Friday      d. Tuesday
- They went to the park by .....  
a. car      b. taxi      c. bus      d. train
- Amira played with her little .....  
a. cousin      b. friend      c. sister      d. brother
- They went home at ..... pm.  
a. four      b. six      c. eight      d. ten

[البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤]

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A

school - left - where - straight - directions

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some

[1] ..... From the corner of South Street and Lateef Street, go

[2] ..... ahead. Take the second right. My house is on the [3] .....

It's between the supermarket and the [4] .....

B

meets - tourists - stores - boats - travels

Ahmed likes the summer very much. His parents work on tourist

[1] ..... He [2] ..... up and down the Nile with them. He sees

many interesting places. He [3] ..... people from all over the world.

He speaks English and Chinese with the [4] .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- ..... right. The park is on the left.  
a. Turn      b. Take      c. Talk      d. Learn
- I play football in the .....  
a. hospital      b. post office      c. park      d. supermarket



3. Go ..... ahead then turn right. [البحيرة - حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٤]

a. right                      b. left                      c. straight                      d. near

4. My teacher was angry because I ..... late.

a. came                      b. turned                      c. bought                      d. sold

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Nabil lives in a house near the Nile. One day, Nabil and his brother Emad were watching the boats from the balcony. Nabil saw a small child fell into the river from a boat. The child shouted, "please, help me !" Nabil called his dad. Nabil's dad ran and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child. The child thanked Nabil and his dad.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The child fell into the .....

a. river                      b. ocean                      c. ground                      d. lake

2. The child thanked .....

a. Nabil                      b. Emad                      c. Nabil's father                      d. a & c

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where's Nabil's house ?

.....

4. Why did Nabil's dad jump into the river ? [الإسماعيلية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية ٢٠٢٤]

.....

5 Punctuate the following.

excuse me, where's the supermarket

.....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Living on a boat"

Guiding elements :

- summer                      - travel

.....

.....

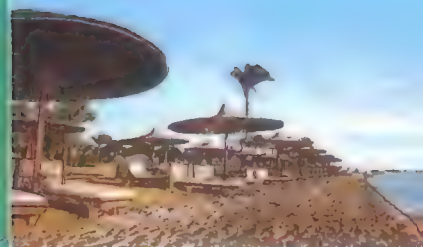
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

|                   |                       |          |                   |         |             |
|-------------------|-----------------------|----------|-------------------|---------|-------------|
| the Sahara Desert | الصحراء الكبرى        | Hurghada | مدينة الغردقة     | safaris | رحلات سفاري |
| Sahl Hasheesh     | سهل حشيش (في الغردقة) | bazaar   | بازار (سوق تجاري) | kind    | طيب / عطوف  |

• Extra vocabulary

|        |           |  |
|--------|-----------|--|
| worker | عامل      |  |
| near   | بالقرب من |  |
| bold   | خط عريض   |  |
| fresh  | طازج      |  |

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                        |                       |                 |                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| • in the east of Egypt | في شرق مصر            | • on the map    | على الخريطة       |
| • on the Red Sea       | على ساحل البحر الأحمر | • go on safaris | يذهب لرحلات سفاري |

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic                  | Guiding words       | Sentences  |
|------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Hurghada               | the Red Sea         | Hurghada is on the Red Sea.                          |
|                        | beach - interesting | There is a beach and interesting things to do there. |
|                        | safaris             | Tourists can go on safaris.                          |
|                        | bazaars             | It has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.     |
| The supermarket worker | supermarket         | Mona works at the supermarket.                       |
|                        | check - food        | She checks the food is fresh.                        |
|                        | kind - happy        | She is very kind and happy.                          |

## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

### Hurghada-My town<sup>[1]</sup>

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the **east**<sup>[2]</sup> of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here.

In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of **interesting**<sup>[3]</sup> things to do. There is the **Sahara Desert**<sup>[4]</sup> where lots of **tourists**<sup>[5]</sup> go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting **bazaars**<sup>[6]</sup>.



Mariam

[1] مدينة صغيرة

[2] شرق

[3] شيق

[4] الصحراء الكبرى

[5] سائحين

[6] أسواق تجارية [بازارات]



Hurghada beach



Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt



Sahara Desert

مرحبًا، أنا مريم. أعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة. تقع الغردقة في شرق مصر على البحر الأحمر. وهي مدينة كبيرة يعيش بها حوالي ١٩٠ ألف شخص. يوجد بها شاطئ و الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها. هناك الصحراء الكبرى حيث يذهب الكثير من السائحين في رحلات السفاري. لدينا سهل حشيش في جنوب الغردقة الذي يوجد به بعض المنازل الجميلة والبازارات المثيرة للاهتمام.

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

### The people who help us : the supermarket worker

الأشخاص الذين يساعدوننا : عامل السوبر ماركت

This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food.

Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

هذه موني. تعمل في المتجر القريب من منزلي. أراها أنا وعائلتي كل أسبوع عندما نشترى الطعام. موني تتحقق من أن الطعام طازج. هي تساعدنا عندما لا يمكننا العثور على شيء ما. هي لطيفة جدًا وسعيدة.





# General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Reham lives in .....  
a. Cairo                      b. Suez                      c. Hurghada                      d. Giza
- Hurghada has some ..... houses.  
a. ugly                      b. beautiful                      c. poor                      d. bad
- Hurghada has interesting .....  
a. parks                      b. gardens                      c. bazaars                      d. hospitals
- Lots of tourists go on ..... in the Sahara Desert.  
a. mountains                      b. seas                      c. boats                      d. safaris

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

find – fresh – food – kind – sells

Sohila works at the supermarket near my house. I see her every week when I buy [1] ..... She checks the food is [2] ..... She helps me when I can't [3] ..... something. She is [4] ..... and happy.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ola. I live in a city called Hurghada with my family. Hurghada is a city in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. That's why many people from around the world come to Hurghada. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The opposite of the underlined word "beautiful" is ".....".  
a. honest                      b. ugly                      c. interesting                      d. nice
- Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt.  
a. north                      b. south                      c. east                      d. west

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why is Hurghada an interesting city ?

4. Where is Sahl Hasheesh ?

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I bought a nice present for my mom from a ..... in Hurghada.

- a. school      b. hospital      c. post office      d. bazaar

2. You can go on ..... in the Sahara Desert.

- a. running      b. diving      c. swimming      d. safaris

3. Soha is ..... She helps everyone in her class.

- a. bad      b. kind      c. noisy      d. ugly

4. The supermarket ..... helps us when we can't find something.

- a. worker      b. farmer      c. driver      d. doctor

**5 Punctuate the following.**

1. i live in a city

2. how many people live in Hurghada

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Hurghada"**

**Guiding elements :**

- beach      - Sahl Hasheesh

# Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

## Demonstrate understanding of specific details



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.



التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في فهم تفاصيل محددة في النص.



مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا وتكون الإجابة موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

### Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

#### Read and learn how to answer :

I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada.

تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا وتستخرج الإجابة مباشرة من النص.

- Mariam lives in .....  
a. Cairo   b. Aswan   c. Hurghada   d. Suez
- Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt on the Red Sea.  
a. south   b. west   c. east   d. north
- Tourists go on ..... in the Sahara Desert.  
a. riding   b. shopping   c. swimming   d. safaris

### Step 2

اقرأ وطم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

#### Read and answer the questions :

My name's Zein. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

- Zein lives in a .....  
a. village   b. desert   c. city   d. town
- Zein lives in a/an .....  
a. apartment   b. tent   c. house   d. houseboat
- There are tall trees ..... the house.  
a. on   b. next to   c. behind   d. in



# 2

## Correction Notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

### Review

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Where is + مكان مفرد ..... ?   | للسؤال عن مكان نستخدم أداة الاستفهام [Where]                |
| in front of - behind - next to - on -<br>in - between - above - under  | حروف الجر الخاص بالمكان                                     |
| Turn right / left. - Go straight ahead.<br>Take the second left/right. | نبدأ بـ [مصدر الفعل inf.] لإعطاء اتجاهات للوصول إلى مكان ما |

### Learn

| Sentence  | Correction | Reason                              |
|---|------------|-------------------------------------|
| ① ..... [What] is the hospital ? - On the corner. | Where      | نستخدم [Where] للسؤال عن المكان     |
| ② ..... [Taking] the second right.                | Take       | نستخدم المصدر لإعطاء اتجاهات الوصول |
| ③ The kitchen is ..... [behind] to the bathroom.  | next       | نستخدم [next] لوجود [to]            |
| ④ The TV is ..... [on] the chair and the couch.   | between    | لوجود مكانين                        |

### Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة. Write the reason.

|  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| ① ..... [Who] is the museum? - Turn right.   | Where | ..... |
| ② ..... [Turning] left. It's on the corner.  | Turn  | ..... |
| ③ The tree is in ..... [next] of the house.  | front | ..... |
| ④ ..... [Goes] straight ahead and turn left. | Go    | ..... |

◀ اكتب التصحيح. Write the correction.

|  |       |                              |
|--|-------|------------------------------|
| ① My house is ..... [above] the tall house and the tree. | ..... | المنزل بين مكانين            |
| ② The tent is next ..... [of] the car.                   | ..... | لوجود next                   |
| ③ ..... [When] is the library ? - Turn right !           | ..... | سؤال عن مكان                 |
| ④ Where is the classroom ? - ..... [Turns] left.         | ..... | نستخدم المصدر لإعطاء اتجاهات |

# 3

## Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

### الجملة الخبرية

- 1 can - I - see - street - the whole.
- 2 sounds - That - good.
- 3 in - live - I - apartment - an.
- 4 next to - is - The tent - the car.
- 5 in - lives - Sherif - city - a.
- 6 loves - He - very - summer - the - much.
- 7 beautiful - has - Hurghada - houses.
- 8 very - was - He - happy.
- 9 sees - He - interesting - many - places.

| 1    | 2       | 3           |
|------|---------|-------------|
| فاعل | فعل     | باقي الجملة |
| I    | love    | my house.   |
|      | can see |             |
|      |         |             |
|      |         |             |
|      | is      |             |
|      |         |             |
|      |         |             |
|      |         |             |
|      |         |             |

### الجملة الأمرية

- 1 at - Look - new - our - apartment.
- 2 straight - Go - ahead.
- 3 right - Take - second - the.

| 1     | 2          | 3           |
|-------|------------|-------------|
| Don't | مصدر الفعل | باقي الجملة |
| Don't | turn       | right.      |
|       |            |             |
|       |            |             |
|       |            |             |

### الجملة الاستفهامية

- 1 can - Where - buy - you - clothes ?
- 2 help - you - Can - me ?
- 3 does - Which house - live - he - in ?
- 4 is - Where - museum - the ?

| 1            | 2         | 3    | 4   | 5           |
|--------------|-----------|------|-----|-------------|
| كلمة استفهام | فعل مساعد | فاعل | فعل | باقي الجملة |
| Where        | can       | we   | buy | food ?      |
|              |           |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     |             |
|              |           |      |     | in ?        |
|              |           |      |     |             |

# 4

## Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة].

### 1 Your favorite room

My favorite room is the living room with the balcony<sup>[1]</sup>. I love the view from the balcony<sup>[2]</sup>. I can see the whole street<sup>[3]</sup>. I talk to my family and watch television in the living room<sup>[4]</sup>. For my sister, her bedroom is her favorite room<sup>[5]</sup>. She can relax and do her homework quietly<sup>[6]</sup>.

### 2 Your house

I live in a house with my family<sup>[7]</sup>. It's very big<sup>[8]</sup>. There are three bedrooms in our house<sup>[9]</sup>. There are two bathrooms<sup>[10]</sup>. There is a big kitchen where my mom cooks food<sup>[11]</sup>. There is a garden where I play with my brother and sister<sup>[12]</sup>.

### 3 Hurghada

I live in a city called Hurghada<sup>[13]</sup>. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea<sup>[14]</sup>. It's a big city<sup>[15]</sup>. There's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do<sup>[16]</sup>. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris<sup>[17]</sup>. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars<sup>[18]</sup>.

### 4 Places in your village

I live in a village<sup>[19]</sup>. There are many nice places in my city<sup>[20]</sup>. There is a supermarket where I can buy food to eat<sup>[21]</sup>. My school is near my house<sup>[22]</sup>. It's a place where I learn<sup>[23]</sup>. There is a hospital where I go when I am sick<sup>[24]</sup>.



# Review on Unit 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة فى ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

|             |            |               |                   |
|-------------|------------|---------------|-------------------|
| kitchen     | مطبخ       | houseboat     | منزل عائم         |
| balcony     | شرفة       | shopping mall | مركز تسوق         |
| bathroom    | دورة مياه  | supermarket   | سوبر ماركت        |
| bedroom     | حجرة نوم   | post office   | مكتب بريد         |
| living room | حجرة معيشة | bazaar        | بازار [سوق تجارى] |
| dining room | حجرة طعام  | safaris       | رحلات سفارى       |
| apartment   | شقة سكنية  | tourist       | سائح              |
| house       | منزل       | tent          | خيمة              |

## Phonics

/f/

fan

fish

foot

/v/

van

vegetables

living room

## Language

### 1 Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



in front of أمام



on على



behind خلف



in فى



above أعلى



under تحت



between بين



next to بجانب

### 2 Giving Directions

- Turn right.
- Turn left.
- Go straight ahead.

إعطاء الاتجاهات

استدر يمينًا.

استدر يسارًا.

سر بشكل مستقيم.

# Test 7 on Unit 4

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• نصوص الاستماع  
في نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Shorouk works at the ..... near her house.  
a. supermarket    b. bank    c. hospital    d. school
- My family and I see her every .....  
a. month    b. week    c. day    d. year
- Shorouk checks that the food is .....  
a. fresh    b. healthy    c. unhealthy    d. bad
- Shorouk is very kind and .....  
a. lazy    b. helpful    c. clever    d. careful

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I learn English at .....  
a. hospital    b. office    c. supermarket    d. school
- My friend lives on water. He lives on a .....  
a. rock    b. tent    c. houseboat    d. school
- In the desert, people live in .....  
a. tents    b. apartments    c. houseboats    d. nests
- I love living in a ..... because it's a big building.  
a. tent    b. house    c. room    d. boat

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

bazaars – town – safaris – east – animals

I'm Judy. I live with my family in Safaga. It's in the [1] ..... of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a small [2] ..... In Safaga, there's a beach and there are a lot of interesting things to do. Many tourists visit Safaga and go on [3] ..... They can swim in the sea. There are many [4] ..... and many hotels there.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Amr. I'm ten years old. I love living in a house because it is big. My house is lovely. There is a nice balcony so I can see the whole street. In my house, there are three bedrooms and a living room. Our kitchen is nice.

My sister usually helps my mom organize it. I have dinner with my family in the dining room. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister. On the weekend, we go to the park. I like to play with my friends there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. The underlined word "nice" means ".....".  
a. fast                      b. expensive                      c. kind                      d. beautiful
- 2. Amr loves his house because it is .....  
a. new                      b. old                      c. bad                      d. big

B. Answer the following questions.

- 3. Where does Amr go on the weekend ?  
.....
- 4. Why does Amr like the balcony ?  
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

- 1. There is a tree ..... [under] to my house.
- 2. The shopping mall is ..... [of] the supermarket and the bank.
- 3. The couch is in ..... [next] of the television.
- 4. .... [When] is your cat ? - It's under the chair.

6 Punctuate the following.

i play games with my friends on friday.  
.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your town

Guiding elements :

- next to                      - school
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....



# Test 8 on Unit 4

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali likes going to the .....  
a. lake                      b. sea                      c. forest                      d. city
2. Ali lives with his .....  
a. uncle                      b. parents                      c. cousins                      d. aunt
3. Ali's parents work on a tourist .....  
a. boat                      b. tent                      c. house                      d. apartment
4. Ali's parents travel up and down the .....  
a. country                      b. Nile                      c. lake                      d. ocean

[البحيرة - إدكو ٢٠٢٤]

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I can sit and watch TV in the .....  
a. bathroom                      b. balcony                      c. kitchen                      d. living room
2. The ..... is made of cloth.  
a. apartment                      b. tent                      c. house                      d. houseboat
3. People who come to visit Egypt are .....  
a. tourists                      b. parents                      c. children                      d. farmers
4. The ..... in Hurghada are beautiful. We can swim and play there.  
a. schools                      b. offices                      c. beaches                      d. bazaars

[بنى سويف - توجيه اللغة ٢٠٢٤]

[الفيوم - إسطا ٢٠٢٤]

[دمياط - دمياط ٢٠٢٤]

[المنوفية - تلا ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hospital - shopping mall - letters - clothes - learn

There are different places in my town. We buy food at the supermarket. We send [1] ..... at the post office. I [2] ..... at school. I buy clothes and shoes at the [3] ..... My mom and dad work in an office. We go to [4] ..... when we are sick.

[البحيرة - دمنهور ٢٠٢٤]

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Noura moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big and near Noura's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Noura's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony in the living room. Noura can see the street from the balcony.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about "Noura's .....".  
a. house                      b. city                      c. country                      d. apartment
2. Noura can watch TV in the .....  
a. kitchen                      b. bedroom                      c. living room                      d. balcony

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What is Noura's favorite room ?  
.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....

[البحيرة - أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣]

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. The shopping mall is ..... [in] the corner. [القاهرة - المرح ٢٠٢٤]
2. .... [Who] is the hospital ? - Next to the school. [بنى سويف - سمسطا ٢٠٢٤]
3. The hospital is next ..... [in] the school. [قنا - قفط ٢٠٢٤]
4. The toys are ..... [next] the bed and the table. [المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤]

**6 Punctuate the following.**

jana is a kind supermarket worker

[المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٣]

- **7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Your favorite room"**

**Guiding elements :**

- apartment                      - balcony

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[بنى سويف - الفشن ٢٠٢٣]

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. I live in a ..... next to the Nile.  
[ town - city - village ]
2. My house is not the ..... in the village.  
[ smallest - biggest - tallest ]
3. My house is between a yellow house and a ..... house.  
[ red - brown - blue ]

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue.

Thank- Yes - Where - next

Mona : Can I ask you some questions ?

Ahmed : [1] ....., of course.

Mona : [2] ..... is the hospital ?

Ahmed : It's [3] ..... to the park.

Mona : [4] ..... you.

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٤)

### 3 Read and answer the following questions.

My name is Omar. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. I play video games in the living room. I also love my bedroom because I can relax and do my homework quietly. There is a balcony. I can see the whole street.

My uncle works in the desert so he lives in a tent. My friend Adel and his family live in a houseboat. It's small, but he loves living on water.

### A. Answer the following questions.

1. Where does Adel live ?
2. What's Omar's favorite room ?

### B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Omar's uncle works in the .....  
a. sea b. farm c. desert
4. Omar lives in a/an .....  
a. house b. tent c. apartment
5. Omar can relax quietly in his .....  
a. house b. bedroom c. living room

### 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I take a shower in the .....  
a. dining room b. kitchen  
c. bathroom d. living room
2. I live ..... a small town.  
a. on b. in c. next d. above
3. People send their ..... in the post office.  
a. clothes b. letters c. drinks d. food
4. The school is in front ..... the post office.  
a. on b. of c. behind d. off
5. We can ..... on the bed in our bedroom.  
a. relax b. play c. eat d. sell

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. Hurghada - lives - Ahmed - in.
2. living room - favorite - the - My - is - room.
3. boats - My parents - on - tourist - work.
4. next - park - The hospital - the - to - is.
5. is - post - Where - office - the ?



## UNIT

## 5

Where do  
you work ?

أين تعمل ؟

**Aims of Unit Five :** الأهداف العامة للوحدة الخامسة :

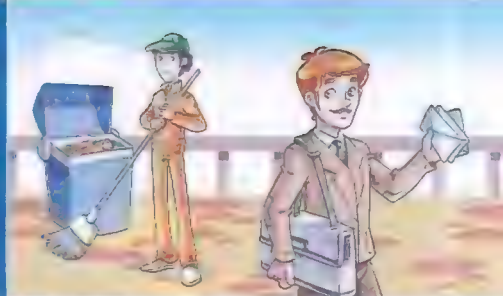
**In this unit I will ...**

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, and write about workers in my community.  
- أستمع، أقرأ، وأكتب عن العاملين في مجتمعي.
- learn about electricity.  
- أتعلم عن الكهرباء.
- practice using this, that, these, those.  
- أتدرب على استخدام this, that, these, those.
- practice word stress.  
- أتدرب على نطق الكلمات المشددة.
- think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.  
- أفكر وأكتب عن الإيجابيات والسلبيات للوظائف المختلفة.
- make a report about workers in my community.  
- أقوم بعمل تقرير عن العاملين في مجتمعي.



- ▶ Listening and reading
- ▶ I love my job



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|                     |                        |                              |              |
|---------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|--------------|
| electrician كهربائي | plumber سباك           | trash = garbage قمامة        | messy فوضوى  |
| mechanic ميكانيكى   | bus driver سائق أتوبيس | mail carrier ساعي البريد     | faucet صنوبر |
| pipe ماسورة         | parcel طرد             | garbage collector جامع قمامة |              |

## • Extra vocabulary

|                 |                 |               |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| wet رطب / مبلل  | driving القيادة | problem مشكلة |
| young صغير السن | job وظيفة       | difficult صعب |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular    |        | Irregular                |          |
|------------|--------|--------------------------|----------|
| Present    | Past   | Present                  | Past     |
| fix يصلح   | fixed  | take out يخرج / يتخلص من | took out |
| wait ينتظر | waited | forget ينسى              | forgot   |
| hope يأمل  | hoped  | drive يقود               | drove    |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| What about ... ? ماذا عن ... ؟ | have to يجب أن             |
| much better at افضل كثيراً في  | What happened ? ماذا حدث ؟ |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

## ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My car doesn't work. I will go to the ..... to fix it.  
a. gardener      b. plumber      c. mechanic      d. cleaner
- The ..... drives the children to their schools.  
a. bus driver      b. mail carrier      c. garbage collector      d. electrician
- The streets get ..... because of the rain.  
a. sunny      b. wet      c. dry      d. hot

## Did you know ?

- A broken faucet dripping once per second can waste more than 13,000 liters of water in a year.

يمكن للصنبور المعطل الذى يقطر مرة واحدة فى الثانية أن يهدر أكثر من ١٣,٠٠٠ لتر من الماء فى السنة.

- Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

تنتج مدينة القاهرة حوالى ٢٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ طن من القمامة كل عام. يعمل جامعو القمامة باجتهاد لجمع كل ذلك.



## II

## Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

• What is Dad's job ? ما وظيفة الأب ؟



Dad, do you like your job ?

أبي، هل تحب عملك ؟

Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and faucets.



نعم، أحب وظيفتي كسباك. أحيانًا يكون المكان مبلل وفوضويًا لأنه يجب على إصلاح المواسير والصنابير.



Did you want to do a different job when you were young ?

هل أردت القيام بعمل مختلف عندما كنت صغيرًا ؟

Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

نعم، أردت أن أصبح سائق حافلة أو ميكانيكي.



So what happened ?

وماذا حدث ؟

Well, I don't really like driving! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!



حسنًا، أنا لا أحب القيادة حقًا! كنت أفضل بكثير في إصلاح المواسير والصنابير أكثر من إصلاح السيارات!



What about you, Youssef ? Do you like being an electrician ?

وماذا عنك يا يوسف ؟ هل تحب كونك كهربائيًا ؟

Yes, I love making things work!

نعم، أحب أن أجعل الأشياء تعمل!



Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel ....

أوه انظروا، ها هو ساعي البريد! أتمنى أن يكون لديه الطرد الخاص بي...

And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash!

Wait please ..... وهناك جامع القمامة! أوه، لقد نسيت إخراج القمامة! انتظر من فضلك...



Describe the relationship between ideas.

وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. What's the job of the Dad ?

- He is a plumber.

Practice

2. What does Youssef love doing ?

.....



# General Exercises | on Lesson 1

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Maged's father is a .....  
a. mail carrier      b. cleaner      c. plumber      d. teacher
- When Maged's father was young, he wanted to be a/an .....  
a. bus driver      b. electrician      c. farmer      d. engineer
- Maged's father was much better at fixing ..... and faucets than cars.  
a. phones      b. buses      c. televisions      d. pipes
- Maged's father ..... his job.  
a. hates      b. loves      c. dislikes      d. collects

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- If you have a problem with pipes in your house, you need a/an .....  
a. electrician      b. mail carrier      c. bus driver      d. plumber
- A mail carrier has a ..... for my dad.  
a. parcel      b. car      c. pipe      d. faucet
- A ..... works hard to collect garbage.  
a. garbage collector      b. plumber      c. vet      d. teacher
- The room is ....., we need to tidy it.  
a. lovely      b. interesting      c. nice      d. messy

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

work - driving - trash - fixing - electrician

Ali has two brothers Amr and Adel. Amr and Adel are hard workers. Amr is an [1] ..... He loves making things [2] ..... Adel is a mechanic. He likes [3] ..... cars and buses. Ali wants to be a bus driver because he likes [4] .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

All jobs are important. There are many workers in our community. A mail carrier has parcels for us. A garbage collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets.

A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work together to help people and make their life easier.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about " ..... " .  
a. Jobs                      b. Clothes                      c. Food                      d. Plants
2. The underlined word "trash" in the text means .....  
a. letter                      b. faucet                      c. pipe                      d. garbage

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the bus driver do ?  
.....
4. Who collects the trash ?  
.....

**5 Punctuate the following.**  
do you like being an electrician  
.....

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

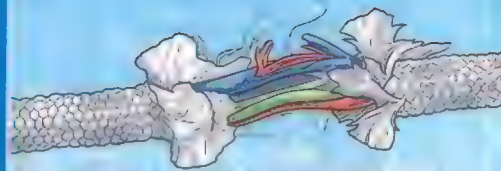
مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Different jobs**

**Guiding elements :**

- What does the plumber do ?
  - What does the mail carrier do ?
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

- Is it near or far ?
- Language Focus
- Electricity



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|           |             |                |               |             |        |
|-----------|-------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|--------|
| lightning | ظاهرة البرق | electric shock | صدمة كهربائية | storm       | عاصفة  |
| socket    | مقبس كهرباء | plug           | قابس [فيشة]   | electricity | كهرباء |

## • Extra vocabulary

|             |            |        |                 |          |       |
|-------------|------------|--------|-----------------|----------|-------|
| electrical  | كهربى      | safely | بطريقة آمنة     | burn     | يحرق  |
| repair shop | ورشة إصلاح | flash  | وميض [نور خاطف] | tools    | أدوات |
| letter      | خطاب       | speed  | سرعة            | dripping | تنقيط |
| energy      | طاقة       | huge   | ضخم             | light    | ضوء   |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular  |       |            | Irregular |          |        |
|----------|-------|------------|-----------|----------|--------|
| Present  |       | Past       | Present   |          | Past   |
| study    | يدرس  | studied    | become    | يصبح     | became |
| control  | يتحكم | controlled | put       | يضع      | put    |
| touch    | يلمس  | touched    | get       | يحصل على | got    |
| travel   | ينتقل | traveled   | take      | يأخذ     | took   |
| deliver  | يوصل  | delivered  |           |          |        |
| practice | يتدرب | practiced  |           |          |        |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                       |                      |                    |                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| get an electric shock | يتعرض لصدمة كهربائية | close to           | قريبة من / تعادل |
| make sure             | يتأكد من             | know how to + inf. | يعرف كيف .....   |
| amount of             | كمية من              |                    |                  |

• Note : ► We add "ly" to an adjective to make an adverb.

لاحظ: نضيف "ly" للصفة لتكون ظرف.

safe أمان → safely بطريقة آمنة



## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic           | Guiding words   | Sentences   |
|-----------------|-----------------|---|
| The electricity | travel          | Electricity travels very fast.                            |
|                 | dangerous       | Electricity is very dangerous.                            |
|                 | shock - control | If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. |
|                 | burn            | Electricity can burn us.                                  |
|                 | touch - wet     | Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.           |
|                 | socket - plugs  | Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.         |
|                 | make sure - dry | Always make sure your hands are dry.                      |

• **Note** : We use "Always" and "Never" to give instructions.

**لنحظ** : نستخدم كلمة "دائمًا" و"أبداً" في إعطاء التعليمات ويتبعها مصدر الفعل.

• Always study hard. (✓)

• Never eat unhealthy food. (x)



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Don't touch the hot pot. It can ..... you.  
a. travel                      b. study                      c. burn                      d. put
- I like to watch the ..... of lightning in the sky.  
a. smell                      b. flash                      c. sound                      d. water
- The sun gives us ..... during the day.  
a. gas                      b. oil                      c. water                      d. light
- Make sure your hands are dry before you ..... anything electrical.  
a. control                      b. burn                      c. travel                      d. touch
- If we get an electric ....., we can't control our bodies.  
a. shock                      b. books                      c. ground                      d. advice
- The electrician knows how to work safely with .....  
a. animals                      b. plants                      c. electricity                      d. books

## II Listening and Reading

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

### Amira the electrician

الكهربائية أميرة



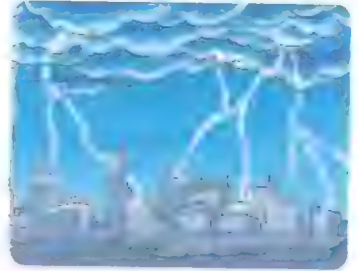
This is Amira, she's an **electrician**<sup>[1]</sup>. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with **electricity**<sup>[2]</sup>.

هذه أميرة، تعمل كفني كهرباء. درست وتدرت لمدة ثلاث سنوات قبل أن تصبح فني كهرباء، هي تعلم كيف تتعامل بشكل آمن مع الكهرباء.

**Interviewer:** Tell us something interesting about electricity. المحاور: أخبرنا بشيء مثير عن الكهرباء.

**Amira** : Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a **storm**<sup>[3]</sup> we sometimes see a **flash**<sup>[4]</sup> of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm!

أميرة: هل تعلم أن الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة شديدة، قريبة من سرعة الضوء. أثناء حدوث عاصفة أحياناً نرى وميض من البرق. هناك كمية هائلة من الطاقة في العاصفة الكهربائية!



**Interviewer:** Is electricity dangerous? المحاور: هل الكهرباء خطيرة؟

**Amira** : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an **electric shock**<sup>[5]</sup>, we can't control our bodies. It can also **burn**<sup>[6]</sup> us.

أميرة: نعم، خطيرة جداً. إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربية، لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا. تلك الصدمة يمكن أن تحرقنا.

[1] فني كهرباء

[2] كهرباء

[3] عاصفة

[4] وميض

[5] صدمة كهربية

[6] تحرق

**Interviewer:** How can we use electricity safely? المحاور: كيف يمكننا استخدام الكهرباء بأمان؟

**Amira** : Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

أميرة: لا تلمس أي شيء كهربائي بأيدي مبللة. لا تضع أي شيء في المقبس، فقط استخدم القابس.

Describe the relationship between ideas.

وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. What did Amira do to become an electrician?  
- She studied and practiced for three years.

Practice

2. Why is electricity dangerous?

.....

## Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

Usage : We use This, That, These, Those, to say how close an object is to the speaker.  
تستخدم ضمائر الإشارة [This, That, These, Those] لتوضح مدى قرب الشيء من المتحدث.

| Near إشارة للقريب<br><b>This</b>   | Far إشارة للبعيد<br><b>That</b>  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>Singular nouns and uncountable nouns</b> مع الأسماء المفردة والأسماء غير المعدودة</p> <p>تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد قريب.</p> <p>► <b>this book</b></p>  <p>ex : <b>This</b> bus driver is taking me to school.</p>  | <p>تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد بعيد.</p> <p>► <b>that book</b></p>  <p>ex : <b>That</b> is the water dripping from the faucet.</p>  |
| These  | Those  |
| <p><b>Plural nouns</b> مع الأسماء الجمع</p> <p>تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.</p> <p>► <b>these books</b></p>  <p>ex : <b>These</b> mechanics work in the repair shop.</p>   | <p>تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.</p> <p>► <b>those books</b></p>  <p>ex : <b>Those</b> children are going to school.</p>      |





## Pop Quiz on Language Focus

### 1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. My father bought those ..... [toy] for me.
2. .... [Are] this his house ?
3. Those ..... [plumber] fix the pipes.
4. This ..... [are] the mail carrier.
5. That ..... [are] your pen.
6. These ..... [mechanic] work in the repair shop.
7. These ..... [is] the plumber's tools.
8. That ..... [are] the socket.
9. This ..... [are] my favorite book.
10. .... [This] bird over there is beautiful.
11. These are the ..... [faucet] in our bathroom.
12. Look at ..... [these] birds in the sky.
13. Those ..... [driver] are driving the new buses.

[البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤]

[القاهرة - المعادي ٢٠٢٤]

### 2 Read and choose the correct demonstrative pronoun.

1. [This - These] car is very expensive.
2. [Those - That] mountains are very high.
3. [This - These] pens are blue.
4. Can you paint [this - these] room ?
5. [That - Those] shoes are very big.
6. [These - This] map will help us.
7. My father bought [those - that] toys for me.

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - the children's - These - bags.

.....

2. tools - the electrician's - Are - those ?

.....

3. book - is - This - my.

.....

# General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- ..... is very dangerous.  
a. Water      b. Electricity      c. Pollution      d. Sunlight
- If we get an electric shock, we can't ..... our bodies.  
a. control      b. travel      c. touch      d. see
- Electricity travels very .....  
a. slow      b. fast      c. heavy      d. light
- There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical.....  
a. storm      b. rain      c. sun      d. cloud

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The mechanic works in a ..... to fix cars.  
a. hospital      b. shop      c. repair shop      d. school
- Never touch anything electrical with ..... hands.  
a. wet      b. dry      c. clever      d. open
- Never put anything into a....., only use plugs.  
a. bottle      b. box      c. bag      d. socket
- Electricity can be..... It can burn us.  
a. easy      b. dangerous      c. safe      d. delicious

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

practiced – wet – speed – electricity – dry

I'm Mona. I'm an electrician . I studied and [1] ..... for three years before I became an electrician. I know how to work safely with [2] ..... Electricity travels very fast, close to the [3] ..... of light. Electricity is very dangerous. Make sure your hands are [4] ..... before you touch anything electrical.

## 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- That..... [are] the school bus.
- These children ..... [is] watching TV.
- This ..... [cars] is very fast.
- This story ..... [are] interesting.

• **5 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My dad is an electrician. He helps people use lights, watch TV and use computers. Electricity is important. We use it to light our houses. But electricity can harm us, too.

My dad knows how to work safely with electricity. He never touches electrical things with wet hands. He never puts anything in a socket. Electricity is very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. Electricity can also burn us.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1. The text is about "A/An .....".  
a. farmer                      b. driver                      c. electrician                      d. mail carrier
- 2. The underlined word "harm" means .....  
a. clean                      b. hurt                      c. refresh                      d. care

**B. Answer the following questions.**

- 3. Why is electricity important in our house ?  
.....
- 4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.  
.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

why is electricity dangerous  
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Electricity"

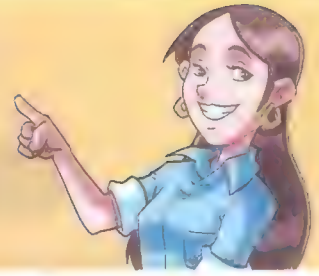
Guiding elements :

- wet hands
- electric shock

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



- ▶ Three cousins
- ▶ Pronunciation
- ▶ CLIL : Math



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|              |                |            |                       |
|--------------|----------------|------------|-----------------------|
| screwdriver  | مِفْكَ البراغي | blocks     | مكعبات                |
| patient      | صبور           | curious    | فضولي - محب الاستطلاع |
| tape measure | شريط القياس    | adult      | بالغ                  |
| architect    | مهندس معماري   | experiment | يجرب / تجربة          |

## • Extra vocabulary

|        |            |        |            |            |             |
|--------|------------|--------|------------|------------|-------------|
| little | صغير السن  | fan    | مروحة      | explain    | يشرح / يفسر |
| radio  | جهاز راديو | top    | أعلى / قمة | cell phone | هاتف محمول  |
| help   | مساعدة     | safety | أمان       | change     | يغير - يعدل |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                   |                   |                |            |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|------------|
| • call each other | يتصل ببعضهم البعض | • all the time | طوال الوقت |
| • when I'm older  | عندما أكبر        | • get angry at | يغضب من    |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

## ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My dad is always patient . He never gets .....  
a. angry      b. ugly      c. sad      d. happy
- If you didn't understand anything, you could ask your teacher to ..... it.  
a. change      b. explain      c. make      d. call
- He used his ..... to open the old fan and fix it.  
a. bag      b. blocks      c. tape measure      d. screwdriver
- Let's use a ..... to know how tall the door is.  
a. block      b. tape measure      c. radio      d. screwdriver
- I want to be a/an ..... to design green building.  
a. architect      b. teacher      c. electrician      d. vet

## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

### Three cousins أبناء العم الثلاث

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different. When Lara was a child, she loved to **experiment**<sup>(1)</sup>. She was very **curious**<sup>(2)</sup>. She always carried a **screwdriver**<sup>(3)</sup> and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was How does it work ? She learned about **safety**<sup>(4)</sup> with electricity.

When Talia was a baby, she played with **blocks**<sup>(5)</sup>. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a **tape measure**<sup>(6)</sup> and a pencil.

Amir was always very **patient**<sup>(7)</sup> and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can **get angry**<sup>(8)</sup> at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.

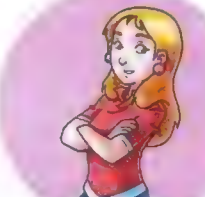
Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all **adults**<sup>(9)</sup>, but they still call each other when they need some help.

#### Pop Quiz

أجبوا على أسئلة  
فتح المصراع



Lara



Talia



Amir

- (1) تختبر / تجرب
- (2) محب للاستطلاع
- (3) مفك البراغي
- (4) الأمان
- (5) مكعبات
- (6) شريط قياس
- (7) صبور
- (8) يغضب
- (9) أشخاص بالغين

#### Make logical inferences.

ضع استنتاجات منطقية.

#### Learn

1. What do you think Talia and Amir do today?

- I think Talia is an architect and Amir is a teacher.

#### Practice

2. What do you think Lara does today ?

لارا ، تاليا وأمير أبناء عم، لكنهم مختلفين جدًا. عندما كانت لارا طفلة، كانت تحب أن تجرب وكانت محبة للاستطلاع. دائمًا كانت تحمل مفك البراغي وتفتح أجهزة الراديو القديمة، الهواتف المحمولة وأي شيء كهرباء. كان سؤالها المفضل. كيف يعمل؟ تعلمت كيف تتعامل بأمان مع الكهرباء. عندما كانت تاليا طفلة رضيعة، كانت تلعب بالمكعبات. كانت تضع مكعب فوق الآخر. عندما أصبحت أكبر سنًا، بدأت في صنع أشياء. لقد صنعت منزلًا صغيرًا للكلب الخاص بها وسرير لدمية أختها. كانت تحمل دائمًا شريط قياس وقلم رصاص.

دائمًا كان أمير صبور جدًا وكان يحب مساعدة الناس. في بعض الأحيان، يغضب الأخوة الكبار من إخواتهم الصغار، لكن أمير لم يغضب أبدًا. كان يلعب، يساعد ويشرح أشياء طوال الوقت.

اليوم، لارا، تاليا وأمير جميعهم أشخاص بالغون لكنهم لا يزالون يتصلون ببعضهم البعض عندما يحتاجون إلى بعض المساعدة.

### III

## Pronunciation

### 1 A syllable

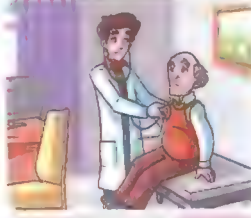
► is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

مقطع لفظي : هو جزء من كلمة يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

#### Two-syllable words



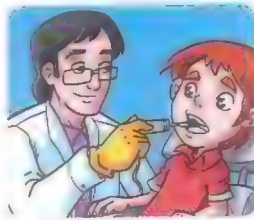
plumb er



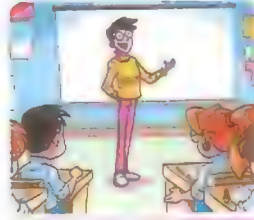
doc tor



driv er



den tist



teach er

#### Three-syllable words



me chan ic

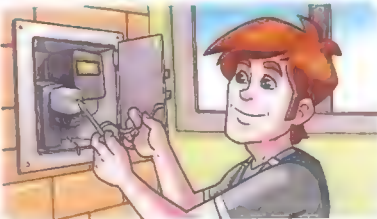


col lec tor

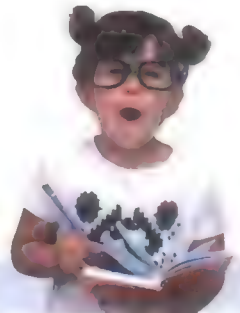


ar chi tect

#### Four-syllable words



e lec tri cian





## 2 A stressed syllable

► is a stressed part of a word or phrase. It is said more strongly than the rest of it.  
المقطع المشدد : هو جزء من كلمة يتم نطقه بشكل أقوى من باقي أجزاء الكلمة.

► Which syllable is stressed ?

- أي مقطع يكون مشدد ؟

plumber the first syllable

mechanic the second syllable

doctor the first syllable

dentist the first syllable

teacher the first syllable

driver the first syllable

electrician the third syllable



### Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

نصوص الاستماع في  
نهاية الكتاب

► Listen and circle the words which have the correct stress syllables.

- |             |          |       |
|-------------|----------|-------|
| 1. plumber  | plumber  | ..... |
| 2. teacher  | teacher  | ..... |
| 3. mechanic | mechanic | ..... |
| 4. driver   | driver   | ..... |
| 5. doctor   | doctor   | ..... |

## ★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

A mathematician works with numbers and math problems.

- عالم الرياضيات يعمل مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.

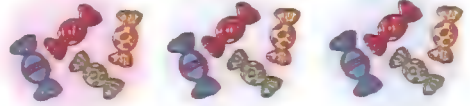
### القسمة Division

- To share things equally, you can divide. لمشاركة الأشياء بالتساوي، يمكنك التقسيم.
- 12 sweets are divided among 3 children. How many sweets does each child get ? ١٢ قطعة حلوى تقسم على ٣ أطفال. كم عدد قطع الحلوى التي سيحصل عليها كل طفل ؟

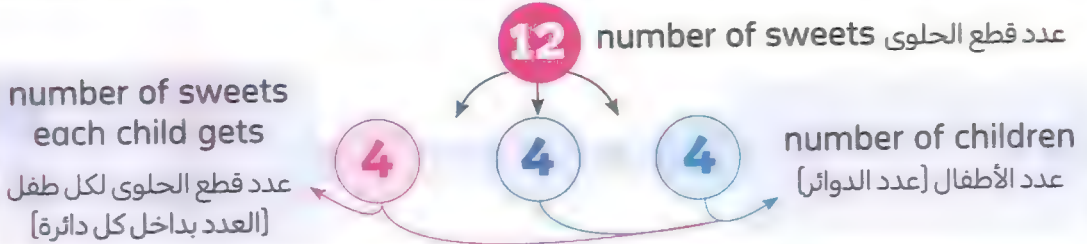
Separate 12 sweets into 3 equal groups (number of children).

قسم الـ ١٢ قطعة حلوى إلى ٣ مجموعات متساوية (عدد الأطفال).

The division sentence :  $12 \div 3 = 4$



Each child gets 4 sweets. كل طفل سيحصل على ٤ قطع حلويات.



• Note :  $\div$  is a division symbol called divided by.  $\div$  هي علامة القسمة بمعنى مقسوم على.

## ★ Look and learn. انظر وتعلم.

**So,** What we do when we have missing numbers.

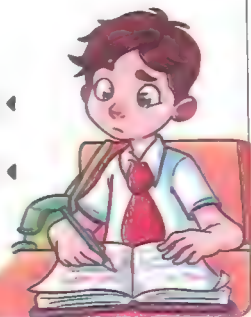
◀ ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل عندما لا نعرف رقم في المعادلة الحسابية.

$$20 \div ?? = 2 \quad \Rightarrow \quad 20 \div 2 = 10$$

**So,** the missing number is 10. إذا فالرقم المفقود في المعادلة هو رقم [١٠].

Here's the equation :  $20 \div 10 = 2$

المعادلة الكاملة هي :





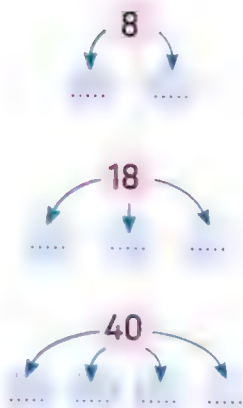
## Pop Quiz on Math

### 1 Divide.

1.  $8 \div 2 = \dots\dots\dots$

2.  $18 \div 3 = \dots\dots\dots$

3.  $40 \div 4 = \dots\dots\dots$



### 2 Write the missing numbers.

1.  $100 \div \dots\dots\dots = 2$

2.  $20 \div 5 = \dots\dots\dots$

3.  $100 \div 25 = \dots\dots\dots$

4.  $9 \div \dots\dots\dots = 3$

5.  $100 \div \dots\dots\dots = 5$

6.  $10 \div 2 = \dots\dots\dots$



### 3 Read, think and solve the problems.

1. The band played for 15 minutes.  
Each song was 3 minutes long.  
How many songs did the band play?  
The equation :  
 $\dots\dots\dots \div \dots\dots\dots = \dots\dots\dots$



2. There are two hundred children in Grade 4.  
Today, they are going on a school trip.  
Each school bus carries 50 children.  
How many buses do they need?  
The equation :  
 $\dots\dots\dots \div \dots\dots\dots = \dots\dots\dots$





# General Exercises | on Lesson 3

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Mohamed was always very .....  
a. patient      b. noisy      c. angry      d. messy
- Big brothers sometimes can get ..... at their little brothers.  
a. sad      b. lazy      c. calm      d. angry
- Mohamed ..... things all the time.  
a. asked      b. explained      c. slept      d. ran
- Mohamed is a/an ..... now.  
a. vet      b. engineer      c. teacher      d. doctor

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A**      tape - older - put - house - job

When Dina was a baby, she played with blocks. She [1] ..... one block on top of another. When she was [2] ....., she started making things. She made a little [3] ..... for her dog. She always carried a [4] ..... measure and a pencil.

**B**      electrician - screwdriver - electricity - safety - wet

When Hamza was a child, he was very curious. He always carried a [1] ..... to open old radios, cell phones and anything that had [2] ..... He learned about [3] ..... with electricity. Now, Hamza is an [4] ..... and he loves his job very much.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- She loved to experiment. She was very .....  
a. sad      b. angry      c. curious      d. lazy
- Fatima carried a ..... to open old radios and fix them.  
a. socket      b. screwdriver      c. tape measure      d. pencil
- Children like playing with ..... They put one on top of another.  
a. blocks      b. plugs      c. sockets      d. fans
- You should be ..... Don't be angry easily.  
a. lazy      b. sad      c. patient      d. mad

[بني سويف / ناصر ٢٠٢٤]

• **4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Noha and Amir are my cousins. They are different. Noha is an electrician. When Noha was a child, she loved to experiment. Noha was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones and anything that had electricity. She learned about safety with electricity. My cousin Amir is a teacher. He is always patient. When Amir was young, he liked helping people. Amir never gets angry with his students. He always explains things for his students.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Noha learned about ..... with electricity.  
a. blocks                      b. safety                      c. playing                      d. painting
2. The underlined word "angry" is the opposite of .....  
a. curious                      b. calm                      c. lazy                      d. little

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....
4. What did Amir like when he was young ?  
.....

• **5 Punctuate the following.**

what do you like to do  
.....

• **6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**A job you want to do**

**Guiding elements :**

- electrician
  - safety
- .....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|      |                 |      |               |         |     |         |         |
|------|-----------------|------|---------------|---------|-----|---------|---------|
| pros | إيجابيات - مزاي | cons | سلبيات - عيوب | weather | طقس | outside | بالخارج |
|------|-----------------|------|---------------|---------|-----|---------|---------|

## • Extra vocabulary

|        |      |                      |              |                 |            |
|--------|------|----------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|
| heavy  | ثقل  | everybody / everyone |              | كل شخص [الجميع] |            |
| points | نقاط | mail bag             | حقيبة البريد | report          | تقرير      |
| worker | عامل | lights               | مصابيح       | cleaner         | عامل نظافة |

## • Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular      |           | Irregular      |         |
|--------------|-----------|----------------|---------|
| Present      | Past      | Present        | Past    |
| walk يسير    | walked    | tell يخبر      | told    |
| connect يوصل | connected | wake up يستيقظ | woke up |
|              |           | bring يجلب     | brought |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| • On the one hand, ..... من ناحية،        | • get a lot of exercise يتدرب كثيرًا |
| • On the other hand, ..... من ناحية أخرى، | • all day طوال اليوم                 |
| • think about يفكر في                     | • connect electricity يوصل الكهرباء  |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic         | Guiding words   | Sentences   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| Mail carriers | outside         | Mail carriers are outside all day.                    |
|               | walk - exercise | Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. |
|               | like - mail     | Everybody likes getting mail.                         |
|               | bag - heavy     | The mail bag is very heavy.                           |
|               | wake up - early | They wake up very early.                              |



## II

## Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع وأقرأ.

### The good and bad things about a mail carrier's job

الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة في وظيفة ساعي البريد

My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're **talking**<sup>[1]</sup> about the good and bad things about different **jobs**<sup>[2]</sup>. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the **pros**<sup>[3]</sup> and **cons**<sup>[4]</sup>.



### Pros and cons of being a mail carrier

What's it like to be a **mail carrier**<sup>[5]</sup>? There are some good and bad points about the job. On the one hand, mail carriers are **outside**<sup>[6]</sup> all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the **weather**<sup>[7]</sup> is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.



On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very **heavy**<sup>[8]</sup>. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

(1) يتحدث

(2) وظائف

(3) إيجابيات

(4) سلبيات

(5) ساعي البريد

(6) بالخارج

(7) طقس

(8) ثقيل

**Demonstrate understanding of specific details.**

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

**Learn**

1. Mail carriers ..... all day and get a lot of exercise.

a. get

b. walk

c. start

d. wake

**Practice**

2. The mail bag is very .....

a. thin

b. fat

c. easy

d. heavy

اسمى شريفة. في الفصل هذا الأسبوع، نتحدث عن الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة حول الوظائف المختلفة. خالتي تعمل ساعية بريد في أمريكا. تحدثت إليها عن وظيفتها، وقد أخبرتني بعض الإيجابيات والسلبيات.

إيجابيات وسلبيات العمل في وظيفة ساعي البريد

كيف يبدو الأمر عندما تكون ساعي بريد؟ يوجد بعض النقاط الجيدة والسيئة حول الوظيفة. من ناحية، ساعي البريد موجود في الخارج طوال اليوم. هذا رائع عندما يكون الطقس جيد ولكن ليس ممتعاً عندما يكون الطقس حاراً جداً أو بارداً جداً. يسير ساعي البريد طوال اليوم ويمارس الكثير من التمارين. الجميع يحبون تلقي رسائل البريد لذلك كل شخص يحب مقابلة ساعي البريد.

من ناحية أخرى يوجد أشياء ليست جيدة يجب التفكير فيها. العمل في وظيفة ساعي بريد ليست وظيفة سهلة. حقيبة رسائل البريد ثقيلة جداً. شيء سيء آخر هو أنهم يستيقظون مبكراً جداً. خالتي تبدأ العمل في تمام الساعة 6 صباحاً.

### III Writing Skill

Writing about the pros and cons of different jobs.

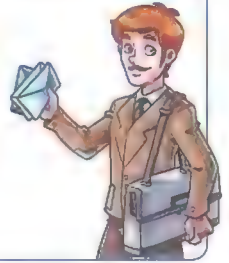
★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

#### Pros and cons of mail carrier's job

##### Pros

إيجابيات

1. Mail carriers walk all day.
2. Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.
3. Mail carriers are outside and it's great when the weather is good.



##### Cons

سلبيات

1. Mail carriers are outside all day and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or very cold.
2. The mail bag is very heavy.
3. Mail carriers wake up very early.



#### Pop Quiz on Writing skills

► Look, think about the pros and cons of being a garbage collector and write.

| Pros                                      | Cons           |
|---|----------------|
| Garbage collectors get a lot of exercise. | .....          |
| .....                                     | It's not easy. |
| .....                                     | .....          |
| .....                                     | .....          |



★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

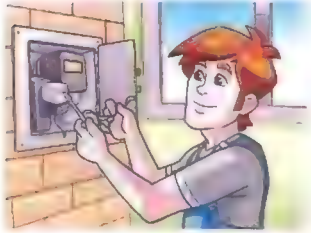
## People who help us

Workers who made our school



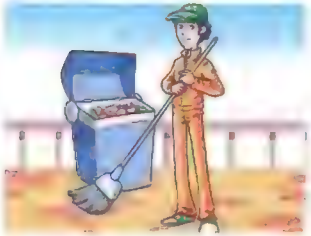
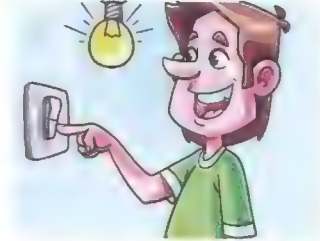
### The plumbers

connect the pipes so that we have water.



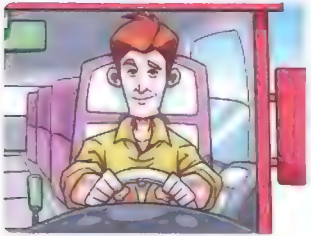
### The electricians

connect electricity so that we can use lights.



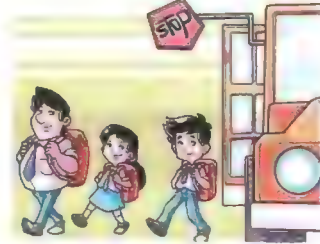
### The cleaners

keep the school clean.



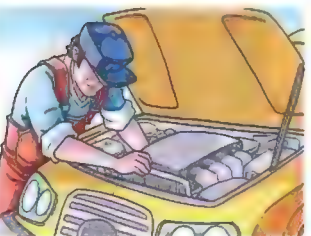
### The bus drivers

bring the children to school.



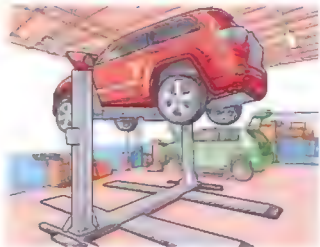
### The garbage collectors

take away our garbage.



### The mechanics

fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.





# General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- All the ..... are very important.  
a. fruits                      b. drinks                      c. food                      d. jobs
- The ..... keep the school clean.  
a. cleaners                      b. engineers                      c. teachers                      d. students
- The electricians connect .....  
a. books                      b. electricity                      c. faucets                      d. pipes
- The mechanics fix the school .....  
a. pipes                      b. faucets                      c. buses                      d. radios

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The electricians connect ..... , so that we can use lights.  
a. bus                      b. bag                      c. garbage                      d. electricity
- The garbage collectors take away our .....  
a. garbage                      b. pipes                      c. water                      d. food
- The plumbers ..... the pipes, so that we have water.  
a. connect                      b. walk                      c. wake                      d. drip
- Being a mail carrier is not a/an ..... job. He works hard.  
a. difficult                      b. easy                      c. hard                      d. early

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

drivers - mechanics - fix - collectors - help

All jobs are important. There are many workers that (1) ..... us. The bus (2) ..... bring the children to school. The (3) ..... fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school. The garbage (4) ..... take away our garbage. All the workers should work together to help people and make their life easier.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. Also the mail bag is very heavy. They are very tired when they come back home.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about " the job of the ..... ".  
a. plumber      b. mail carrier      c. cleaner      d. electrician
2. Carrying a ..... bag is one of the cons of being a mail carrier.  
a. small      b. heavy      c. colorful      d. dark

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How do the mail carriers feel when they came back home ?  
.....
4. Where are the mail carriers all day ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. This is my new ..... [bikes].
2. Those ..... [is] the brave firefighters.
3. This ..... [letters] is mine.
4. Who lives in ..... [those] house ?

**6 Punctuate the following.**

the cleaners keep the school clean  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job**

**Guiding elements :**

| Pros                  | Cons                  |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| get a lot of exercise | the mail bag is heavy |
| walk all the day      | wake up very early    |

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Describe the relationship between two people, events , ideas or pieces of information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في وصف علاقة بين شخصين، حدثين، فكرتين أو معلومتين في النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد حل هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا أكثر من مرة للتمكن من فهم الترابط الموجود بين الأفكار والمعلومات بالنص.

### Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

#### Read and learn how to answer :

The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage. The mechanics fix the buses that bring the children to school.

تقرأ النص جيدًا وتقوم الترابط بين الأشخاص والأحداث والمعلومات الواردة.

1. How do the mechanics help the bus drivers ?

The mechanics fix the buses.

2. Who brings the children to school ?

The bus driver brings the children to school.

3. Who helps us have water ?

The plumber helps us have water.

### Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

#### Read and answer the questions :

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She always carried a screwdriver to open old radios and cell phones. When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. Her sister thanked her.

1. Why did Lara carry a screwdriver ?

2. What did Talia make for her dog ?

3. Why did Talia's sister thank her ?



# 2

## Correction Notes

### • الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء

### ◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

#### Review

|                        |                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| This [is] → مفرد قريب  | تستخدم للإشارة إلى مفرد قريب |
| That [is] → مفرد بعيد  | تستخدم للإشارة إلى مفرد بعيد |
| These [are] → جمع قريب | تستخدم للإشارة إلى جمع قريب  |
| Those [are] → جمع بعيد | تستخدم للإشارة إلى جمع بعيد  |

#### Learn

| Sentence  | Correction | Reason                         |
|---|------------|--------------------------------|
| ① ..... [These] is my school.                     | This       | نستخدم [This] للإشارة إلى مفرد |
| ② ..... [That] mechanics work in the repair shop. | Those      | نستخدم [Those] للإشارة إلى جمع |
| ③ These ..... [is] the plumber's tools.           | are        | نستخدم [are] مع [These]        |
| ④ These ..... [driver] are driving the new buses. | drivers    | نستخدم [جمع] مع [These]        |

#### Practice

#### ◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة. Write the reason.

|                                       |         |       |
|---------------------------------------|---------|-------|
| ① ..... [That] clouds are beautiful.  | Those   | ..... |
| ② ..... [Those] boy is my friend.     | That    | ..... |
| ③ This ..... [are] my blue bag.       | is      | ..... |
| ④ Those are beautiful ..... [flower]. | flowers | ..... |

#### ◀ اكتب التصحيح. Write the correction.

|   |       |                                       |
|---|-------|---------------------------------------|
| ① Those are my ..... [book].                      | ..... | نستخدم [Those] للإشارة إلى [جمع]      |
| ② ..... [These] is the mechanic who fixes my car. | ..... | نستخدم [This] للإشارة إلى مفرد القريب |
| ③ ..... [That] children are watching TV.          | ..... | نستخدم [Those] للإشارة إلى جمع البعيد |
| ④ This ..... [are] my cat.                        | ..... | نستخدم [is] مع [This] للإشارة للمفرد  |

# 3

## Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

### الجملة الخبرية ١

|   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 | love - <b>I</b> - plumber - a - being.              |
| 2 | love - <b>I</b> - making - work - things.           |
| 3 | taking - is - <b>This bus</b> - me - school - to.   |
| 4 | a - mail - is - <b>This</b> - carrier.              |
| 5 | is - electrician - <b>She</b> - an.                 |
| 6 | played - <b>She</b> - blocks - with.                |
| 7 | of - get - <b>Mail carriers</b> - a lot - exercise. |
| 8 | plumber - connects - <b>The</b> - pipes.            |

| 1        | 2           | 3               |
|----------|-------------|-----------------|
| فاعل     | فعل         | باقي الجملة     |
| <b>I</b> | <b>like</b> | <b>driving.</b> |
|          | love        |                 |
|          | is taking   |                 |
|          |             |                 |
|          |             |                 |
|          |             |                 |
|          |             |                 |
|          |             |                 |

### الجملة الأمرية ٢

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | put - <b>Never</b> - into - anything - a socket. |
| 2 | us - <b>Tell</b> - interesting - something.      |
| 3 | sure - <b>Make</b> - your - are - hands - dry.   |

| 1            | 2            | 3                           |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| Never        | مصدر الفعل   | باقي الجملة                 |
| <b>Never</b> | <b>touch</b> | <b>anything electrical.</b> |
|              |              |                             |
|              |              |                             |
|              |              |                             |

### الجملة الاستفهامية ٣

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | your - <b>Do</b> - like - you - job ?          |
| 2 | job - is - <b>What</b> - your ?                |
| 3 | can - <b>How fast</b> - travel - electricity ? |
| 4 | do - <b>What job</b> - want - you - to do ?    |

| 1            | 2         | 3         | 4          | 5                   |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|------------|---------------------|
| كلمة استفهام | فعل مساعد | فاعل      | فعل        | باقي الجملة         |
| <b>Why</b>   | <b>do</b> | <b>we</b> | <b>use</b> | <b>electricity?</b> |
|              |           |           |            |                     |
|              |           |           |            |                     |
|              |           |           |            |                     |
|              |           |           |            |                     |

# 4

## Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.  
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة].

### 1 How workers help us every day

The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water<sup>[1]</sup>. The bus drivers bring the children to school<sup>[2]</sup>. The mail carriers are delivering letters<sup>[3]</sup>. The garbage collectors take away our trash<sup>[4]</sup>. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights<sup>[5]</sup>. All these jobs are very important.<sup>[6]</sup>

### 2 A mail carrier's job

Mail carriers deliver letters<sup>[7]</sup>. They are outside all day<sup>[8]</sup>. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise<sup>[9]</sup>. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job<sup>[10]</sup>. The mail bag is very heavy<sup>[11]</sup>. They wake up very early<sup>[12]</sup>.

### 3 Your favorite job

My favorite job is an electrician<sup>[13]</sup>. When I was a child, I loved to experiment<sup>[14]</sup>. I always carried a screwdriver<sup>[15]</sup>. I opened old radios and cell phones<sup>[16]</sup>. I opened anything that had electricity<sup>[17]</sup>. I learned about safety with electricity<sup>[18]</sup>.

### 4 Electricity

It is not easy to become an electrician<sup>[19]</sup>. Electricity is very dangerous<sup>[20]</sup>. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies<sup>[21]</sup>. It can also burn us<sup>[22]</sup>. We shouldn't touch anything electrical with wet hands<sup>[23]</sup>. Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light<sup>[24]</sup>.



# Review on Unit 5

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الخامسة في ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

|                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| bus driver        | سائق حافلة    |
| electrician       | كهربائي       |
| plumber           | سباك          |
| mail carrier      | ساعي بريد     |
| mechanic          | ميكانيكي      |
| garbage collector | جامع قمامة    |
| architect         | مهندس معماري  |
| lightning         | ظاهرة البرق   |
| socket            | مقبس الكهرباء |
| plug              | قابس [قبشة]   |
| tape measure      | شريط قياس     |
| blocks            | مكعبات        |
| pipe              | ماسورة        |
| screwdriver       | مفك براغي     |
| parcel            | طرد           |

## Phonics

### • Two-syllable words

- plumb **er**
- teach **er**
- doc **tor**

### • Three-syllable words

- me **chan** ic
- ar **chi** test
- col **lec** tor

### • Four-syllable words

- e **lec** tri **cian**

## Language

### Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

Near إشارة للقريب

Far إشارة للبعيد

**This**

**That**

**Singular nouns and uncountable nouns**

مع الأسماء المفردة والأسماء غير المعدودة

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد قريب.

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد بعيد.

**This bus driver**  
is taking me to school. →



**That is the water**  
dripping from faucet. →



**These**

**Those**

**Plural nouns** مع الأسماء الجمع

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.

**These mechanics**  
work in a repair shop. →



**Those children**  
are going to school. →



# Test 9 on Unit 5

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When Talia was young, she played with .....  
a. dolls                      b. blocks                      c. toys                      d. balls
2. Talia made a little ..... for her little dog.  
a. bed                      b. chair                      c. house                      d. room
3. Now, Talia is a/an .....  
a. electrician                      b. nurse                      c. teacher                      d. architect
4. Talia always carries a .....  
a. screwdriver                      b. tape measure                      c. pencil case                      d. glass

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A mail carrier ..... your letters.  
a. connects                      b. drives                      c. delivers                      d. puts
2. The ..... connected electricity to our house.  
a. doctor                      b. electrician                      c. teacher                      d. dentist
3. I use my ..... to call my friends.  
a. blocks                      b. cell phone                      c. socket                      d. faucet
4. Lara's father uses a ..... to fix electrical things.  
a. screwdriver                      b. pencil case                      c. block                      d. doll

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

exercise - early - easy - mail carriers - mail bag

Being a mail carrier has pros and cons. On the one hand, [1]..... are outside all day. They walk all day and get a lot of [2]..... . On the other hand, the [3]..... is very heavy. Another bad thing is that they wake up very [4]..... .

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people around us work hard to help us. Together, we help each other. For example, a plumber connects the pipes and faucets so we have water.





# Test 10 on Unit 5

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A bus driver takes the children to .....  
a. park      b. school      c. hotel      d. hospital
- A mechanic fixes the .....  
a. cars      b. trains      c. buses      d. tables
- A ..... fixes faucets.  
a. vet      b. doctor      c. plumber      d. bus driver
- A garbage collector takes away the .....  
a. books      b. garbage      c. plants      d. money

[الجيزة - كراسة ٢٠٢٤]

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Never touch anything electrical with ..... hands.  
a. two      b. wet      c. clean      d. dry
- The cleaners keep the school .....  
a. dirty      b. clean      c. ugly      d. bad
- A plumber fixes pipes and .....  
a. cars      b. plugs      c. televisions      d. faucets
- Electricity travels very .....  
a. fast      b. slow      c. hot      d. long

[القاهرة - المعادي ٢٠٢٤]

[الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤]

[السويس - شمال ٢٠٢٤]

[القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pipes - lights - garbage - jobs - electrician

There are many jobs that are very important for our lives. A [1] ..... collector takes away all garbage. An [2] ..... connects electricity so we can use lights. A plumber connects the [3] ....., so we can have water. We like all [4] ..... very much.

[سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣]

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Dalia is a beautiful girl. She has one sister. When Dalia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was

older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Dalia when you want to change something in your house.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about ".....".

- a. Dalia's sister      b. Dalia      c. Dolls      d. Electricians

2. Dalia always carried a .....

- a. doll      b. dog      c. tape measure      d. pen

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What did Dalia do when she was older ?

4. When can you call Dalia ?

[القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٤]

**5** Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. These pens \_\_\_\_\_ (is) blue.

(المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)

2. Those ..... [is] tall trees.

[دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤]

3. This ..... [are] my car.

(القاهرة - الزاوية ٢٠٢٤)

4. \_\_\_\_\_ [Is] these your books ?

(المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤)

**6** Punctuate the following.

## why do we use electricity

[الإسكندرية - العجم، ٢٠٢٣]

• **7** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

## "Your father's job"

### Guiding elements :

- connect                      - electricity

(الجيزة - كوداسة ٢٠٢٣)

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. A ..... fixes the pipes and faucets.  
[plumber – mechanic – mail carrier]
2. A/An ..... connects the electricity.  
[electrician – plumber – vet]
3. They do ..... work for us. [ugly – bad – important]

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue.

do – favorite – fixes – mechanic

Noha : Hello, Kareema. What's your (1) ..... job ?

Kareema : Hello, Noha. My favorite job is a (2) .....

Noha : What does a mechanic (3) ..... ?

Kareema : A mechanic (4) ..... the cars and buses.

### 3 Read and answer the following questions :

Ali is a clever electrician. He was very curious when he was a child. He used to open old phones, television and machines. He is interested in knowing how things work. He studied for four years to work safely with electricity. He tells people what to do if they get an electric shock.

#### A. Answer the following questions.

1. What is Ali interested in ? .....
2. Why did Ali study electricity for four years ? .....

#### B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Ali was a very ..... child.  
a. lazy      b. bad      c. tired      d. curious

## Test for Al-Azhar students

## On unit

# 5

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

4. He knew how to .....  
a. play tennis      b. use electricity safely  
c. watch TV      d. play football
  5. Ali is a/an .....  
a. mechanic      b. electrician      c. plumber      d. driver
- 4 Choose the correct answer.**
1. A ..... takes away our garbage to keep our street clean.  
a. plumber      b. garbage collector  
c. bus driver      d. vet
  2. This screwdriver ..... the electrician's tool.  
a. are      b. is      c. were      d. am
  3. .... is the mechanic who fixed my car.  
a. These      b. They      c. That      d. Than
  4. Electricity is very ..... It can burn us.  
a. safe      b. quiet      c. dangerous      d. lazy
  5. The mail carrier ..... the letters.  
a. writes      b. delivers      c. talks      d. connects

### 5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

1. measure – This – his – is – tape.  
.....
2. is – the – Which – most – job – interesting ?  
.....
3. pipes – fixes – The plumber – faucets – and.  
.....
4. he – love – Does – job – his ?  
.....
5. travels – fast – Electricity – very.  
.....



# UNIT

# 6

What do  
you do ?

ماذا تعمل ؟

**Aims of Unit Six :** الأهداف العامة للوحدة السادسة :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- read and learn about more jobs.  
- أقرأ وأتعلم عن المزيد من الوظائف.
- explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.  
- أستكشف ما هي الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
- know about prime numbers.  
- أتعلم عن الأرقام الأولية.
- distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.  
- أميز وأنطق الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.
- learn about words with the prefix [dis-].  
- أتعلم عن الكلمات التي بها البادئة [dis-].
- write about a job you want to do.  
- أكتب عن وظيفة تريد أن تعمل بها.



## What do you do ?



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key vocabulary

|           |              |           |           |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| fisherman | صياد سمك     | fishing   | صيد السمك |
| guide     | مرشد سياحي   | tourism   | السياحة   |
| farmer    | فلاح / فزارع | farming   | الزراعة   |
| librarian | أمين مكتبة   | education | التعليم   |
| industry  | صناعة        |           |           |

## Extra vocabulary

|                |             |             |            |           |              |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|------------|-----------|--------------|
| tourist        | سائح        | restaurant  | مطعم       | factory   | مصنع         |
| history        | تاريخ       | net         | شبكة       | hotel     | فندق         |
| transportation | وسائل النقل | country     | دولة / بلد | library   | مكتبة        |
| boat           | قارب        | information | معلومات    | nutrients | عناصر غذائية |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular

## Present

pick يقطف / يلتقط  
explain يفسر

## Past

picked  
explained

## Irregular

## Present

catch يصطاد  
sell يبيع

## Past

caught  
sold

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|            |          |              |                       |
|------------|----------|--------------|-----------------------|
| go out     | يخرج     | connected to | مرتبط بـ...           |
| come back  | يعود     | lots of      | الكثير من             |
| on the sea | في البحر | work in      | يعمل في [مكان / مجال] |

**An industry** : is a business that produces a specific type of thing or gives a special kind of service.

**الصناعة** : هي الأعمال التجارية التي تنتج نوعًا معينًا من الأشياء أو تقدم نوعًا خاصًا من الخدمة.

Did you know ?

In 2019, about 13 million tourists came to Egypt.

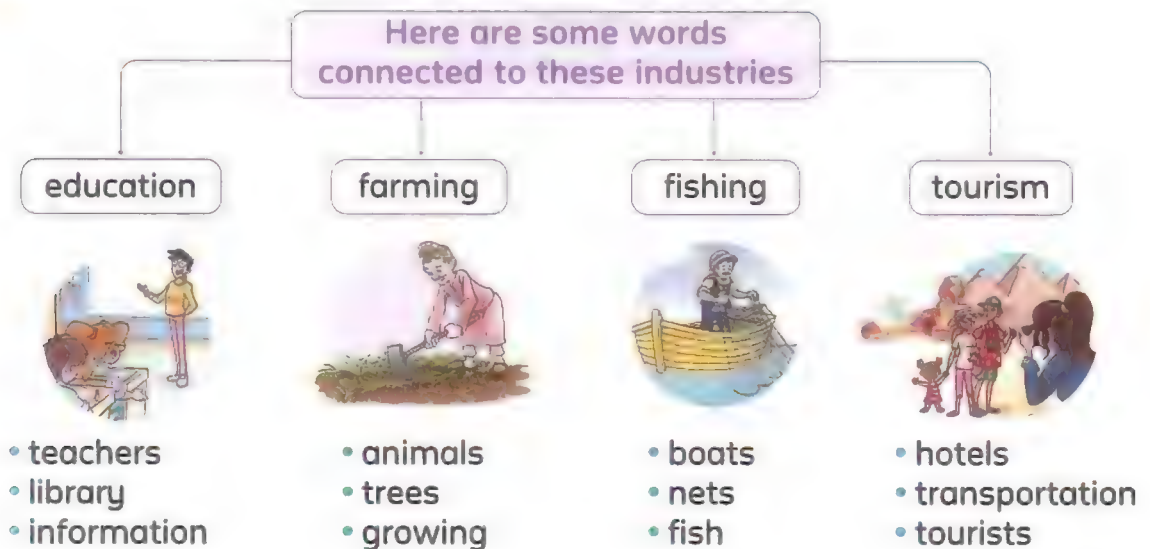
في عام ٢٠١٩، جاء حوالي ١٣ مليون سائح إلى مصر.

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic       | Guiding words          | Sentences  |
|-------------|------------------------|--|
| A fisherman | fisherman - wake up    | A fisherman wakes up very early every day.                   |
|             | boat - catch           | He goes out on a boat and catches fish.                      |
|             | sell - market          | He sells fish in the market.                                 |
| A farmer    | grow                   | A farmer grows food.   |
|             | look after - water     | He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients. |
|             | pick                   | He picks the fruit.  |
|             | sell - factories       | He sells the fruit to the factories and the supermarkets.    |
| A guide     | tourism                | A guide works in the tourism industry.                       |
|             | explain - history      | He explains the history.                                     |
|             | tourists - information | He tells the tourists lots of interesting information.       |
| A librarian | library                | A librarian works in a school library.                       |
|             | look after - books     | He looks after all the books.                                |
|             | find - information     | He helps children find the information they need.            |

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.





## II

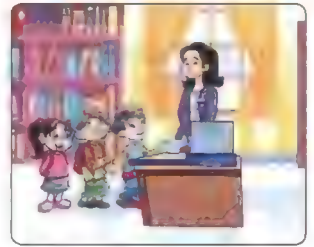
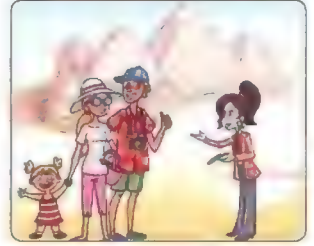
## Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

### What jobs do these people do ?

ما هي الوظائف التي يفعلها هؤلاء الأشخاص ؟

1. I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day, and I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.
2. I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.
3. I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.
4. I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.



1. أنا صياد. أستيقظ مبكراً جداً كل يوم، وأخرج بقاربي واصطاد الأسماك. ثم بعد الظهر أعود وأبيع أسماكاً في السوق. أسماكاً تذهب إلى المطاعم والمنازل حول العالم.
2. أنا فلاح. أزرع البرتقال. أعني بالأشجار وأعطيها الماء والعناصر الغذائية طوال العام. ثم أطفئ الفاكهة. أرسل الكثير من الفاكهة للمصنع لصنع عصير البرتقال. أبيع أيضاً بعض البرتقال الخاص بي للسوبر ماركت.
3. أنا مرشد سياحي. أعمل في مجال السياحة. يأتي الناس إلى بلدي ووظيفتي أن أشرح التاريخ وأخبر السياح بالكثير من المعلومات المثيرة عن الأماكن التي يزورونها.
4. أنا أمينة مكتبة. أعمل في مكتبة مدرسية. وظيفتي هي الاعتناء بكل الكتب. أشتري الكثير من الكتب الجديدة وأساعد الأطفال في العثور على المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.

# General Exercises | on Lesson 1

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I'm a .....  
a. guide                      b. vet                      c. fisherman                      d. farmer
2. I go out on my .....  
a. boat                      b. car                      c. train                      d. plane
3. I catch .....  
a. sharks                      b. fish                      c. whales                      d. plants
4. I sell my fish in the .....  
a. school                      b. hotel                      c. street                      d. market

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

A

1. A/An ..... works on the sea.  
a. librarian                      b. guide                      c. engineer                      d. fisherman
2. A ..... helps us find information in the library.  
a. farmer                      b. fisherman                      c. guide                      d. librarian
3. I explain the history to the tourists. I work in the ..... industry.  
a. education                      b. fishing                      c. farming                      d. tourism
4. A/An ..... is a business that gives a special kind of service.  
a. industry                      b. table                      c. book                      d. sea

B

1. Hotels and ..... are connected to tourism industry.  
a. transportation                      b. boats                      c. library                      d. nets
2. Fishermen ..... thousands of fish in the sea.  
a. grow                      b. paint                      c. catch                      d. lose
3. Boats and nets are connected to the ..... industry.  
a. education                      b. farming                      c. fishing                      d. tourism
4. Many ..... came to Egypt to visit the Pyramids.  
a. factories                      b. nets                      c. boats                      d. tourists

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

water - fruit - market - school - looks after

I think the most difficult job is being a farmer. A farmer works very hard. He grows vegetables and (1) ..... All year, he (2) ..... the trees and plants. He gives them (3) ..... and nutrients. Then, he picks the fruit and vegetables. He sells them at the (4) ..... Then we buy the fruit and vegetables from the market.

[أسبوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Mai. My father is a fisherman. He works in the fishing industry. He wakes up very early and goes out on his boat to catch fish. Then in the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish. My uncle is a farmer. He works in the farming industry. He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients. My brother is a librarian. He works in a school library. He looks after all the books.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is about ".....".  
a. Transportation      b. Fruits      c. Water      d. Jobs
- The underlined phrase "wakes up" means .....  
a. gets up      b. makes up      c. goes up      d. gives up

B. Answer the following questions.

- Where does the librarian work ?  
.....
- What does a farmer do ?  
.....

5 Punctuate the following.

it's my job to explain the history

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Tourism industry"

Guiding elements :

- guides                                      - history

.....

.....

.....





## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

|           |        |               |            |
|-----------|--------|---------------|------------|
| renewable | متجددة | non-renewable | غير متجددة |
|-----------|--------|---------------|------------|

## • Extra vocabulary

|             |                 |               |                |
|-------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| wood        | خشب             | sources       | مصادر          |
| gas         | غاز             | energy source | مصادر الطاقة   |
| coal        | فحم             | oil           | بترو           |
| right       | على صواب / صحيح | solar energy  | الطاقة الشمسية |
| wind energy | طاقة الرياح     | wave energy   | طاقة الأمواج   |

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                        |              |          |      |
|------------------------|--------------|----------|------|
| grow bigger and bigger | يزداد حجمًا  | cut down | يقطع |
| look out of            | ينظر من خلال | run out  | ينفذ |

## • Study these Definition ادرس هذه التعريفات

**Renewable** قابل للتجديد

- It can grow again or never run out.

يمكن أن تنمو مرة أخرى أو لا تنفذ أبدًا.

**Non-renewable** غير قابل للتجديد

- It can run out and never grow again.

يمكن أن تنفذ و لا تنمو مجددًا.

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic           | Guiding words   | Sentences                                     |
|-----------------|-----------------|---|
| Two mango trees | mango tree      | Sara and Malak had two beautiful mango trees. |
|                 | cut down - wood | Malak cut down her tree and sold the wood.    |
|                 | grow - bigger   | Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger.     |
|                 | give - more     | Sara's mango tree gave her more mangoes.      |
|                 | no mangoes      | Malak had no mangoes and no more wood.        |

★ اقرأ وتعرف على "مصادر الطاقة". Read and identify the "Energy sources".

### Renewable متجددة

wind energy طاقة الرياح  
wave energy طاقة الأمواج  
solar energy الطاقة الشمسية

### Non-renewable غير متجددة

coal فحم  
gas غاز  
oil بترول

## II Reading

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

### Two mango trees

شجرتان المانجو

#### Fun Quiz

اجيب على الاسئلة  
انطق اجابهم  
وتصويح الامتحان

#### The beginning

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

#### The middle

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money<sup>[1]</sup>. Let's cut down<sup>[2]</sup> my tree. I can sell<sup>[3]</sup> the wood<sup>[4]</sup>." She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy. Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave<sup>[5]</sup> Sara more mangoes.



#### The end

Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood. "Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed<sup>[6]</sup>, and it will grow into a big tree."

(1) أموال

(2) يقطع

(3) يبيع

(4) خشب

(5) أعطى

(6) بذرة

#### Determine the meaning of words.

وضح معنى الكلمات.

#### Learn

1. The opposite of the underlined word "sell" is .....  
a. take      b. see      c. buy      d. fly

#### Practice

2. The word "beautiful" in the text means .....  
a. ugly      b. nice      c. lazy      d. boring

سارة وملك أختان. كل أخت لديها شجرة مانجو جميلة بجانب بيتها. كل عام، كان الأخوات يأكلن المانجو الجميل. ويلعب أطفالهم تحت الأشجار. قالت ملك ذات يوم، "لست بحاجة إلى مانجو. أحتاج للمال. هيا نقطع شجرتي. يمكنني بيع الخشب". قطعت ملك الشجرة وباعت الخشب. كانت ملك سعيدة. في العام التالي، نمت شجرة المانجو الخاصة بسارة بشكل أكبر وأكبر. أعطت سارة المزيد من المانجو. نظرت ملك من النافذة. لم يكن هناك شجرة مانجو. لم يكن لديها مانجو ولا مزيد من الخشب. قالت سارة: "لا تقلقي". "ارعى بذرة المانجو هذه وسوف تنمو لتصبح شجرة كبيرة".

# General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Esraa needed .....  
a. food                      b. books                      c. money                      d. trees
- Esraa cut down her ..... tree.  
a. mango                      b. guava                      c. banana                      d. lemon
- She sold the .....  
a. fish                      b. clothes                      c. paper                      d. wood
- She was .....  
a. sad                      b. happy                      c. angry                      d. tired

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- He is ..... down trees to sell the wood.  
a. washing                      b. looking                      c. cutting                      d. running
- Sun, wind and ..... are renewable energy sources.  
a. wave                      b. coal                      c. gas                      d. oil
- Carpenters need ..... to make chairs.  
a. wind                      b. coal                      c. oil                      d. wood
- Renewable sources never .....  
a. walk                      b. run out                      c. cut down                      d. grow

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wave - oil - cut - run - Renewable

There are two forms of energy sources. Some sources are renewable.

- [1] ..... sources can grow again and never run out. Wind energy and [2] ..... energy are renewable sources. There are also non-renewable sources. Non-renewable sources can [3] ..... out and never grow again. Coal, gas and [4] ..... are non-renewable sources.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sara and Noha are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. They saw children playing under the trees. One day, Noha needed money so she cut down her tree. Noha



sold the wood to get money. After a year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes. Noha was sad. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1. Noha was sad because she had no .....  
a. money                      b. children                      c. mangoes                      d. sisters
- 2. The underlined word "beautiful" means .....  
a. bad                      b. lovely                      c. ugly                      d. noisy

**B. Answer the following questions.**

- 3. Why did Noha cut down her tree ?  
.....
- 4. What happened to Sara's tree after a year ?  
.....

**5 Punctuate the following.**  
we make electricity from energy sources

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Energy sources"**

**Guiding elements :**

- renewable                      - wind energy

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- Story : Fresh fish van
- Pronunciation
- CLIL : Math



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

|          |                   |              |      |
|----------|-------------------|--------------|------|
| fresh    | طازج              | disappointed | محبط |
| fish van | شاحنة بيع الأسماك | engine       | محرك |

• Extra vocabulary

|          |           |           |              |
|----------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| sound    | صوت [شيء] | surprised | مندعش        |
| problem  | مشكلة     | lovely    | جميل - محبوب |
| mechanic | ميكانيكي  | village   | قرية         |

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular |       |         | Irregular |       |        |
|---------|-------|---------|-----------|-------|--------|
| Present |       | Past    | Present   |       | Past   |
| shout   | ينادي | shouted | hear      | يسمع  | heard  |
| want    | يريد  | wanted  | teach     | يُدرس | taught |
| fix     | يصلح  | fixed   | drive     | يقود  | drove  |

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

|                    |             |           |           |
|--------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| around the village | حول القرية  | have fun  | يستمتع    |
| start his van      | يشغل شاحنته | all about | كل شيء عن |

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic          | Guiding words          | Sentences                              |
|----------------|------------------------|--|
| Fresh fish van | fisherman - fresh fish | A fisherman sells fresh fish.          |
|                | start - van            | He couldn't start his van.             |
|                | mom - fix              | Mom could fix the van.                 |
|                | give - fresh fish      | The fisherman gave Mom ten fresh fish. |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A ..... fixes cars.  
a. fisherman      b. mechanic      c. farmer      d. plumber
2. This car has a new .....  
a. music      b. engine      c. faucet      d. pipe
3. The bus driver..... his bus around the city.  
a. draws      b. drives      c. throws      d. writes

## II

## Reading

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقراً.

### Fresh fish van

شاحنة أسماك طازجة

#### The beginning

There's an old fisherman<sup>[1]</sup> in my village<sup>[2]</sup>. He drives around the village in an old van<sup>[3]</sup>. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish."

#### The middle

One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed<sup>[4]</sup>.

My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.

Mom's dad [my grandpa] was a mechanic<sup>[5]</sup>. He taught<sup>[6]</sup> her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine<sup>[7]</sup>. "It is a very simple problem<sup>[8]</sup>. I can fix<sup>[9]</sup> it," said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised.



- (1) صياد سمك
- (2) قرية
- (3) شاحنة
- (4) مُحبط
- (5) ميكانيكي
- (6) علّم
- (7) محرك
- (8) مشكلة بسيطة
- (9) يصلح

#### The end

Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

Describe the relationship between ideas.

وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. Why was the fisherman disappointed ?  
- Because he couldn't start his van.

Practice

2. Who helped the fisherman fix his van ?  
.....

يوجد صياد عجوز في قريتي. يقود حول القرية بشاحنة قديمة. يحب عمله. ويستمتع به. ينادي قائلاً: "سمك! سمك طازج! تعال واحصل على سمك طازج جميل." في يومًا ما، كان أمام منزلي. لم يستطع تشغيل شاحنته. كان حزينًا ومحبط. أمي رأت الرجل. كان الجو حارًا في الشمس. أرادت المساعدة. كان والد أمي [جدي] ميكانيكيًا. علمها كل شيء عن السيارات. نظرت إلى محرك الشاحنة القديمة. قالت أمي: "إنها مشكلة بسيطة للغاية. أستطيع إصلاحها." كان الصياد العجوز مندهشًا. ثم سمعنا صوت المحرك. تم إصلاح شاحنته! قال الصياد: "شكرا لك". لقد أعطى أمي عشرة أسماك طازجة.



### III

### Pronunciation

#### Short vowel sounds

The letter "u" makes the sound / ʌ / .

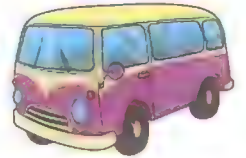
ex.: fun    مرح



SUN شمس

The letter "a" makes the sound / æ / .

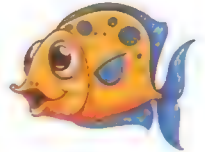
ex.: sad    حزين    man    رجل    dad    أب    can    يستطيع    van



شاحنة صغيرة

The letter "i" makes the sound / ɪ / .

ex.: fix    يصلح    village    قرية



fish  
سمكة

The letter "e" makes the sound / e / .

ex.: fresh    طازج    engine    محرك    help    يساعد



ten  
رقم عشرة



#### Pop Quiz on pronunciation

► Look and write the missing sound.

1.



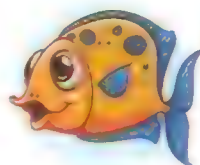
s \_ n

2.



v \_ n

3.



f \_ sh

4.



t \_ n

# IV

## Language

### The prefix "dis-"

The prefix "dis-" means "not" البادئة "dis-" تعني "ليس"

disagree = not agree

dislike = not like

He dislikes ice cream.

هو لا يحب الآيس كريم.

### ★ Read and learn.

|             |   |           |                    |             |   |          |               |
|-------------|---|-----------|--------------------|-------------|---|----------|---------------|
| obey يطيع   | → | disobey   | يرفض الطاعة / يعصى | agree يوافق | → | disagree | يرفض          |
| appear يظهر | → | disappear | يختفى              | like يحب    | → | dislike  | لا يحب / يكره |



### Pop Quiz on Language

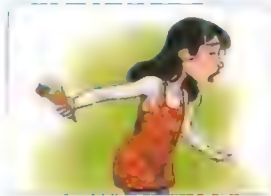
► Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1.



The boy is .....  
[appointed]. He didn't  
pass the test.

2.



She .....  
[likes] ice cream.

3.



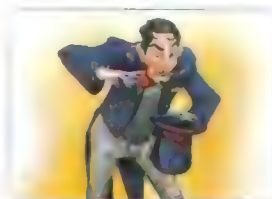
She .....  
[agree] with her  
friend's opinion .

4.



I'm sorry because I  
..... [obeyed] my mom.

5.



The rabbit .....  
[appeared] from the hat.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

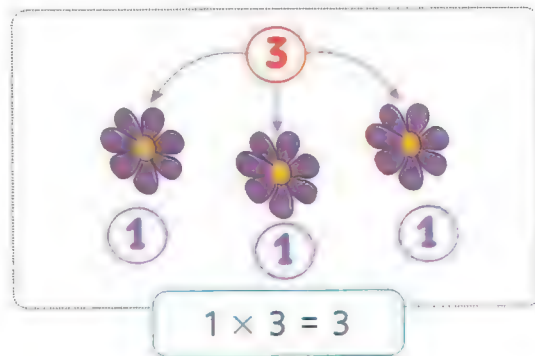
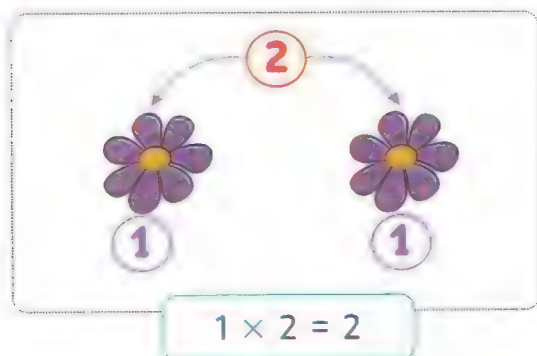
## Prime numbers

A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1.

الرقم الأول هو رقم يمكنك قسمته على نفسه فقط وعلى رقم واحد.

Ex : 2 , 3 , 5 ... etc

★ Look and learn. انظر وتعلم.



• The smallest prime numbers are : 2 , 3 , 5 , 7 , 11 , 13 ... etc.



## Pop Quiz on Math

1 Circle the prime numbers.

10      12      3      89      43  
5      9      37      4      13

2 Read and circle.

1. Which number is not a prime number ?

2      6      5

2. Which number is a prime number ?

7      8      9

3 Read and tick [✓] if the number is a "prime number".

a. 4 ☐

b. 28 ☐

c. 11 ☐

d. 29 ☐

e. 7 ☐

f. 10 ☐



# General Exercises | on Lesson 3

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- There's an old ..... in my village.  
a. vet                      b. farmer                      c. fisherman                      d. teacher
- He is called Mr .....  
a. Hassan                      b. Hazem                      c. Hatem                      d. Hani
- He ..... his job.  
a. hates                      b. likes                      c. dislikes                      d. looks
- He always has ..... fish.  
a. fresh                      b. big                      c. small                      d. cheap

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

engine – sad – fresh – van – disliked

There was an old fisherman in our village. He drove an old [1] .....  
One day, he couldn't start his van. He was [2] ..... My dad saw the  
man, it was very hot. He wanted to help. He fixed the [3] ..... The  
fisherman was happy and gave my dad ten [4] ..... fish.

[الغريبة - شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The mechanic can ..... the engine.  
a. break                      b. fix                      c. get                      d. come
- We ..... the sound of the engine.  
a. grew                      b. heard                      c. drove                      d. ate
- He was ..... when the boy could catch a big fish.  
a. disappointed                      b. surprised                      c. unhealthy                      d. sad
- Let's go to the beach and have .....  
a. fun                      b. sound                      c. time                      d. wind

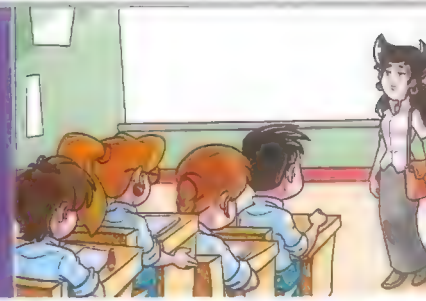
## 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The cat ..... [appeared]. I can't see it.
- The girl is ..... [appointed], she didn't pass the exam.
- I feel sad because I don't ..... [disobey] my mother.
- I like his ideas, so I always ..... [disagree] with him.

## 5 Punctuate the following.

my father taught me how to catch fish

.....



I

Vocabulary

|              |               |           |                   |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|-------------------|
| patient      | صبور          | put back  | يعيد - يرجع [شيء] |
| ready to     | مستعد لـ      | carefully | بحرص              |
| show respect | يظهر الاحترام | different | مختلف             |
| surprising   | مفاجئ - مدهش  | the best  | الأفضل            |
| shelf        | رف            | get off   | ينزل              |

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular        |            | Irregular             |        |
|----------------|------------|-----------------------|--------|
| Present        | Past       | Present               | Past   |
| encourage يشجع | encouraged | throw يلقى            | threw  |
| change يغير    | changed    | teach يُدرّس / يُعلّم | taught |
| respect يحترم  | respected  |                       |        |

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

| Word الكلمة | Definition التعريف  |
|-------------|---|
| respect     | when you are polite and kind عندما تكون مهذب ولطيف              |
| patient     | someone who doesn't get angry easily بالشخص الذي لا يغضب بسهولة |

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic    | Guiding words   | Sentences                                   |
|----------|-----------------|---|
| Teachers | encourage       | Teachers need to encourage their students.  |
|          | patient         | They need to be very patient.               |
|          | work - hours    | They work for many hours every day.         |
|          | hard - exciting | It's hard work, but it's exciting.          |
|          | change - lives  | A teacher can change their students' lives. |

## II Listening and Reading

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

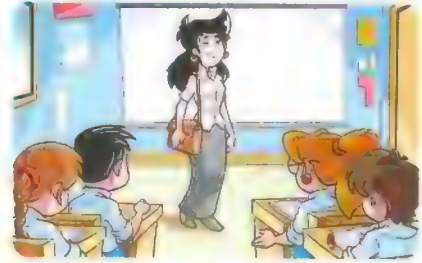
What are the good and bad things about being a teacher ?

When people ask me, "What do you want to do ?" I answer : " I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world."

For a **teacher**<sup>(1)</sup>, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' **lives**<sup>(2)</sup>

so teachers need to be very **patient**<sup>(3)</sup>. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to **encourage**<sup>(4)</sup> their **students**<sup>(5)</sup>. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.



- (1) معلم / معلمة  
(2) حيوات  
(3) صبور  
(4) يشجع  
(5) طلاب

Describe the relationship between ideas.

وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. What do teachers need to be ?  
- They need to be very patient.

Practice

2. Is being a teacher hard work ?

عندما يسألني الناس : "ماذا تحب أن تعمل ؟" تكون إجابتي : "أود أن أكون معلم." بالنسبة لي أنها أفضل وظيفة في العالم. بالنسبة للمعلم، كل يوم مختلف. يسأل الطلاب دائمًا أسئلة مفاجئة. يمكن للمعلم أن يغير حياة طلابه لذا يحتاج المعلمون إلى التحلي بالصبر الشديد. يعمل المعلمون لساعات عديدة كل يوم. إنه عمل شاق، لكنه مثير. يحتاج المعلمون إلى التفكير بسرعة. إنهم بحاجة إلى تشجيع طلابهم. المعلم الجيد جاهز دائمًا ليتعلم. يقوم المعلمون بالتدريس لطلابهم، ولكن الطلاب يقومون أيضًا بتعليم معلمهم. كل فرد في الفصل يعرف أشياء مختلفة.

## III Language Functions

| Questions  | Answers  |
|--|--|
| What do you want to be ? ماذا تريد أن تكون ؟                               | I want to be a teacher. أريد أن أصبح معلمًا.   |
| What should a good teacher do ? ماذا يجب أن يفعل المعلم الجيد ؟            | A good teacher is always ready to learn. المعلم الجيد دائمًا يكون مستعد للتعلم.            |
| Is being a teacher an important job ? Why ? هل وظيفة المعلم مهمة ؟ لماذا ؟ | Yes, because they can change their students' lives. نعم، لأنهم يمكن أن يغيروا حياة الطلاب. |



★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

## Showing respect إظهار الاحترام



I respect the cleaner.  
I don't throw trash.  
أحترم عامل النظافة.  
لا ألقى القمامة [على الأرض].



I respect the teacher.  
I listen to him carefully.  
أحترم المعلم.  
أستمع إليه بحرص.

How to show  
respect  
كيف تظهر الاحترام



I respect the bus driver. I say  
thank you when I get off the  
bus.  
أحترم سائق الحافلة. أقول له شكراً  
عندما أنزل من الحافلة.



I respect the librarian. I  
put my books back on the  
shelf.  
أنا أحترم أمين المكتبة. أعيد كتي على  
الرف.

# General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Donia wants to be a .....  
a. doctor      b. dentist      c. cleaner      d. teacher
- Teaching is very ..... work.  
a. hard      b. easy      c. bad      d. good
- A good teacher is always ready to .....  
a. play      b. sleep      c. learn      d. ask
- Teachers teach their .....  
a. students      b. friends      c. parents      d. animals

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions, so teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. A teacher can change their students' lives.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- This text is about ".....".  
a. Librarians      b. Fishermen      c. Nurses      d. Teachers
- The underlined word "easy" is the opposite of .....  
a. quick      b. slow      c. safe      d. difficult

### B. Answer the following questions.

- What can a teacher change ?  
.....
- Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

A

- We ..... respect to our teachers.  
a. show      b. listen      c. thank      d. play
- I respect the ..... I say thank you when I get off the bus.  
a. librarian      b. bus driver      c. teacher      d. cleaner

3. In the library, I put my books back on the .....  
 a. shelf                      b. bed                      c. chair                      d. basket
4. I put the ..... in the trash can.  
 a. books                      b. plants                      c. trash                      d. animals

## B

1. When you are polite and kind with people, this means you ..... them.  
 a. respect                      b. raise                      c. collect                      d. control
2. The ..... keeps the streets clean.  
 a. vet                      b. mechanic                      c. engineer                      d. cleaner
3. My parents ..... me to enter the competition to win a medal.  
 a. throw                      b. work                      c. encourage                      d. read
4. My brother is very ..... He doesn't get angry easily.  
 a. patient                      b. sad                      c. lazy                      d. messy

### • 4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

teacher - respect - bus driver - listen - trash

I'm Fatma. I show respect to the people around me. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw [1]..... in the street. When I'm at school, I respect my [2]..... I [3]..... to him carefully. I also [4]..... the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf when I'm in the library.

### • 5 Punctuate the following.

what do you want to be

.....

### • 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Teachers"

Guiding elements :

- patient                      - hard job

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

## Identify the general idea of the text

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة [الرئيسية / العامة] بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

### Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

#### Read and learn how to answer :

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. A good teacher is always ready to learn. They need to encourage their students. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives so they need to be very patient.

[The teachers] بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أن النص يدور حول

- The text is about .....
- Or: The main / general idea of the text is about .....
- Or: The text talks about .....
- Or: What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. engineers   b. teachers   c. farmers   d. vets

### Step 2

اقرأ و قم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

#### Read and answer the questions :

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

- The text is about "A ....." .

a. teacher   b. guide  
c. fisherman   d. farmer

# 2

## Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

### الجملة الخبرية

- 1 wake - **I** - very - up - early.
- 2 look - **I** - the - after - trees.
- 3 library - **I** - in - a school - work.
- 4 need - don't - **I** - mangoes.
- 5 job - likes - **He** - his.
- 6 didn't - **He** - the test - pass.
- 7 need - think - **Teachers** - to - quickly.
- 8 electrician - want - an - **I** - to be.

| 1    | 2          | 3            |
|------|------------|--------------|
| فاعل | فعل        | باقي الجملة  |
| I    | am         | a fisherman. |
|      |            |              |
|      |            |              |
|      | don't need |              |
|      |            |              |
|      |            |              |
|      |            |              |
|      |            |              |

### الجملة الأمرية

- 1 this - **Plant** - seed - mango.
- 2 throw - **Don't** - trash.
- 3 to - **Listen** - teacher - carefully - your.

| 1     | 2          | 3              |
|-------|------------|----------------|
| Don't | مصدر الفعل | باقي الجملة    |
| Don't | plant      | down the tree. |
|       |            |                |
|       |            |                |
|       |            |                |

### الجملة الاستفهامية

- 1 does - **Why** - she - the tree - cut down ?
- 2 do - want - **Why** - you - to - be - a teacher ?
- 3 you - **What** - do - want - do - to ?
- 4 works - **Who** - a - in - school ?

| 1                      | 2    | 3   | 4   | 5           |
|------------------------|------|-----|-----|-------------|
| فعل مساعد كلمة استفهام | فاعل | فعل | فعل | باقي السؤال |
| What                   | she  | He  | do  | cut down    |
|                        |      |     |     |             |
|                        |      |     |     |             |
|                        |      |     |     | to do ?     |
|                        |      |     |     |             |

# 3

## Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.  
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٩ جملة].

### 1 A farmer

My dad is a farmer<sup>[1]</sup>. He grows oranges<sup>[2]</sup>. He looks after the trees<sup>[3]</sup>.  
He gives them water and nutrients<sup>[4]</sup>. He picks the fruit<sup>[5]</sup>. He sends a lot  
of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice<sup>[6]</sup>.

### 2 A fisherman

Fishermen wake up very early every day<sup>[7]</sup>. They go out on boats to  
catch fish<sup>[8]</sup>. They sell their fish in the market<sup>[9]</sup>. It's not an easy job<sup>[10]</sup>.  
It sometimes takes a long time to catch fish<sup>[11]</sup>. Fishermen need to be  
patient<sup>[12]</sup>.

### 3 The guide

I want to be a guide<sup>[13]</sup>. The guide works in tourism industry<sup>[14]</sup>.  
He explains the history to the tourists<sup>[15]</sup>. He tells lots of interesting  
information about the places they visit<sup>[16]</sup>. The guide works outside<sup>[17]</sup>. This  
is an interesting job<sup>[18]</sup>.

### 4 A librarian

My mother is a librarian<sup>[19]</sup>. She works in a school library and looks  
after all the books<sup>[20]</sup>. She buys lots of new books<sup>[21]</sup>. She helps children  
find the information they need<sup>[22]</sup>. She likes her job<sup>[23]</sup>.

### 5 A teacher

Being a teacher is not easy<sup>[24]</sup>. For a teacher every day is different<sup>[25]</sup>.  
Students always ask surprising questions<sup>[26]</sup>. Teachers can change their  
students' lives<sup>[27]</sup>. Teachers need to be very patient<sup>[28]</sup>. They work for  
many hours every day<sup>[29]</sup>.



# Review on Unit 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة السادسة فى ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

|               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| fisherman     | صياد       |
| guide         | مرشد سياحى |
| librarian     | أمين مكتبة |
| farmer        | فلاح       |
| education     | تعليم      |
| farming       | الزراعة    |
| tourism       | سياحة      |
| teacher       | معلم       |
| cut down      | يقطع       |
| restaurant    | مطعم       |
| renewable     | متجدد      |
| non-renewable | غير متجدد  |
| wood          | خشب        |
| fresh         | طازج       |

## Phonics

### Short vowels

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| a → /æ/ |         |
| sad     | man     |
| i → /I/ |         |
| fix     | village |
| e → /e/ |         |
| fresh   | engine  |
| u → /ʌ/ |         |
| fun     | sun     |

## Language

### The prefix "dis-"

البادئة "dis"

The prefix "dis-" means "not" البادئة "dis-" تعنى "ليس"

disagree = not agree

dislike = not like

He dislikes ice cream.

هو لا يحب الآيس كريم.

|        |      |   |           |                    |   |       |       |   |          |        |
|--------|------|---|-----------|--------------------|---|-------|-------|---|----------|--------|
| obey   | يطيع | → | disobey   | يرفض الطاعة / يعصى | → | agree | يوافق | → | disagree | يرفض   |
| appear | يظهر | → | disappear | يختفى              | → | like  | يحب   | → | dislike  | لا يحب |

# Test 11 on Unit 6

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My uncle is good at looking after the .....  
a. animals      b. plants      c. electricity      d. books
- My uncle grows .....  
a. oranges      b. rice      c. figs      d. mangoes
- All the year, he looks after the .....  
a. birds      b. children      c. trees      d. flowers
- He sends the fruit to the .....  
a. home      b. market      c. factory      d. school

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- ..... is a renewable energy source.  
a. Oil      b. Coal      c. Wind energy      d. Gas
- Teachers and librarians are connected to ..... industry.  
a. farming      b. fishing      c. tourism      d. education
- We like our ..... We meet them every day at school.  
a. teachers      b. mechanics      c. vets      d. doctors
- I have my lunch in a nice ..... with my friends.  
a. factory      b. library      c. restaurant      d. market

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

electricity - books - information - job - library

I'm Marwa. I'm a librarian. I like books very much. I work in a school

[1] ..... It's my job to look after all the [2] ..... I buy lots of new books and I help children find the [3] ..... they need. It is an interesting [4] ..... for me. I like it.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruits like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. When they grew up, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees because they are important for our lives.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The main idea in the text is about ".....".
  - Growing trees
  - Weather
  - Keeping animals
  - Playing tennis
- Hisham and Amr grow many kinds of ..... .
  - vegetables
  - fruits
  - rice
  - dessert

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why did Amr want to cut down the trees ?
- .....
4. What did Hisham advise Amr to do ?
- .....

[پورسعيد - شمال پورسعيد ۲۰۲۴]

**5** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My son is a good boy. He always ..... [disobeys] me.
2. My book ..... [appeared]. I can't find it.
3. She ..... [dislikes] orange juice. She always drinks it.
4. They are ..... [appointed]. They couldn't win the match.

**6** Punctuate the following.

is being a teacher an important job

• **7** Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN** [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

## "A fisherman"

### Guiding elements :

- factory                      - sell

(القاهرة - وسط البلد ٢٠٢٤)



# Test 12 on Unit 6

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I work in a school .....  
a. hospital      b. library      c. post office      d. park
- I look after all the .....  
a. cats      b. dogs      c. books      d. shorts
- I help the children find the ..... they need.  
a. information      b. football      c. pens      d. cars
- I like my .....  
a. car      b. job      c. book      d. home

[سوهاج - دار السلام ٢٠٢٤]

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I want to be a ..... to catch fish every day.  
a. teacher      b. doctor      c. fisherman      d. farmer  
[المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤]
- Someone who doesn't get angry easily is .....  
a. beautiful      b. careful      c. renewable      d. patient  
[المنوفية - تلا ٢٠٢٤]
- The ..... helps in the library.  
a. plumber      b. guide      c. librarian      d. vet  
[بني سويف - الواسطي ٢٠٢٤]
- Farmers sell oranges at the .....  
a. desert      b. park      c. market      d. schools  
[القاهرة - حدائق القبة ٢٠٢٤]

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

patient - students - learn - teach - class

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their (1) .....  
A good teacher is always ready to (2) ..... Teachers teach their  
students, but students also (3) ..... their teachers. Everyone in the  
(4) ..... knows different things.

[الأقصر ٢٠٢٣]

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Hussein. My uncle is a fisherman. He has a boat. Every morning, he goes to the Nile to catch fish. In the afternoon, my uncle goes home with a lot of fish. He sells some fish at the market. He cooks some fish and eats

his lunch. My uncle likes his job because it's fun. I want to be a fisherman when I grow up.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text tells us about ".....".

- a. A fisherman    b. A boat    c. Fish    d. A market

2. The underlined word "sells" is the opposite of .....

- a. buys    b. sends    c. catches    d. goes

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4. Why does Hussein's uncle like his job ?

.....

[دمياط - كفر سعد ٢٠٢٣]

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. I'm sad because I .....(obeyed) my mom. [الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٤]

2. The mice .....(appeared). I can't find them. [الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر ٢٠٢٤]

3. I feel .....(appointed). My cell phone is broken. [الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٤]

4. My sister .....(likes) the pizza. She doesn't like it at all.

[الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤]

**6 Punctuate the following.**

what do you want to do

[البحيرة ٢٠٢٣]

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"The farmer"**

**Guiding elements :**

- factory                      - look after

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

[دمياط ٢٠٢٣]

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. I am a/an ..... [teacher - engineer - librarian]
2. I buy lots of new ..... [books - paper - clothes]
3. I ..... children find the information they need.  
[help - teach - ask]

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue.

job - teacher - want - lives

Ahmed : What do you (1) ..... to be ?

Hamed : I want to be a (2) .....

Ahmed : Is being a teacher an important (3) .....

Hamed : Yes, a teacher can change their students'  
(4) .....

### 3 Read and answer the following questions.

Do you want to be a teacher ? Why ? I think teaching is the best job in the world. A good teacher is very patient, helpful and kind. The teachers need to think quickly and encourage their students. They never get angry. They should listen to their students. When we become adults, we remember a special teacher.

#### A. Answer the following questions.

1. Who should a teacher listen to ?  
.....
2. What do the teachers need to do ?  
.....

#### B. Choose the correct answer.

3. A good teacher is always very .....  
a. patient      b. old      c. tall

## Test for Al-Azhar students

### On unit

6

نصوص  
الاستماع  
في نهاية  
الكتاب

4. Teachers need to ..... quickly.  
a. explain      b. walk      c. think
5. Teachers never get .....  
a. cold      b. calm      c. angry

#### 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. A ..... works in the tourism industry.  
a. guide      b. fisherman      c. librarian      d. vet
2. She ..... ice cream. She never eats it.  
a. don't like      b. dislikes      c. likes      d. like
3. I don't throw litter because I respect the .....  
a. guide      b. cleaner      c. dentist      d. electrician
4. Fishermen use ..... to catch fish.  
a. hotels      b. trees      c. nets      d. pens
5. The sun ..... behind the clouds.  
a. disappeared      b. appeared      c. reappeared      d. unappeared

#### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. in - industry - The guide - works - the tourism.  
.....
2. Solar - is - energy - renewable.  
.....
3. fixed - engine - car - She - the.  
.....
4. to - guide - I - a - want - be.  
.....
5. the most - job - What - interesting - is ?  
.....



# General Revision

on Units 4, 5 & 6

## I Vocabulary

### Unit 4

|             |               |           |           |               |             |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|-------------|
| kitchen     | مطبخ          | apartment | شقة سكنية | shopping mall | مركز تسوق   |
| bedroom     | حجرة نوم      | office    | مكتب عمل  | post office   | مكتب بريد   |
| living room | حجرة معيشة    | houseboat | منزل عائم | van           | شاحنة       |
| hospital    | مستشفى        | tent      | خيمة      | safaris       | رحلات سفاري |
| balcony     | بلكونة / شرفة | relax     | يسترخي    | bazaar        | بازار       |
| supermarket | سوبرماركت     | village   | قرية      | tourist       | سائح        |

### Unit 5

|                   |             |              |            |             |              |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| bus driver        | سائق حافلة  | plug         | قابس كهربى | repair shop | ورشة إصلاح   |
| garbage collector |             | electrician  | كهربائى    | lightning   | البرق        |
|                   | جامع قمامة  | tape measure | شريط قياس  | speed       | سرعة         |
| mail carrier      | ساعى البريد | socket       | مقبس       | teacher     | معلم         |
| cleaner           | عامل نظافة  | blocks       | مكعبات     | architect   | مهندس معمارى |
| mechanic          | ميكانيكى    | screwdriver  | مفك براغى  | parcel      | طرد          |

### Unit 6

|           |            |           |       |              |              |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-------|--------------|--------------|
| tourism   | السياحة    | fisherman | صياد  | engine       | محرك         |
| farmer    | فلاح       | cut down  | يقطع  | disappointed | محبط         |
| teacher   | معلم       | fish      | سمك   | lovely       | جميل / محبوب |
| education | التعليم    | fresh     | طازج  | shout        | يصرخ / يصيح  |
| guide     | مرشد سياحى | sound     | صوت   | patient      | صبور         |
| librarian | أمين مكتبة | surprised | مندهش | encourage    | يشجع         |

## II

## Language Focus

### Unit 4

#### Prepositions of place



in front of أمام



on على



behind خلف



in في



above أعلى



under تحت



between بين



next to بجانب

### Unit 5

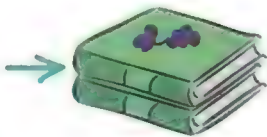
#### Demonstrative Pronouns

##### Near

- **This** هذا / هذه [للمفرد القريب]  
This is my pen.

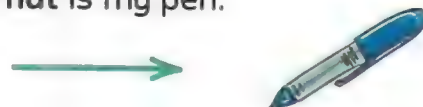


- **These** هؤلاء [للمجمع القريب]  
These are my books.



##### Far

- **That** ذلك / تلك [للمفرد البعيد]  
That is my pen.



- **Those** أولئك [للمجمع البعيد]  
Those are my books.



### Unit 6

#### The prefix "dis-" "البادئة -dis"

The prefix "dis-" means "not" البادئة "dis-" تعني "ليس/لا"

- obey → disobey
- agree → disagree
- appear → disappear
- like → dislike

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The fennec fox lives in the ..... of North Africa.  
a. forests      b. deserts      c. wetland      d. grassland
- It's smaller than other .....  
a. birds      b. pandas      c. foxes      d. lizards
- It eats ....., lizards and small mice.  
a. insects      b. spiders      c. penguins      d. lions
- The fennec fox loses heat from its .....  
a. hands      b. heads      c. legs      d. ears

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The bear has sharp ..... to catch fish.  
a. beaks      b. ears      c. claws      d. feathers
- The crocodile is huge and .....  
a. tall      b. scary      c. cute      d. small
- We ..... chickens in Egypt.  
a. raise      b. walk      c. train      d. think
- The ..... is a person who is like a king.  
a. teacher      b. farmer      c. vet      d. emperor

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fox - leaves - big - camel - Desert

At school, we learned about animals. Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara [1] ..... . They eat grass, [2] ..... and plants. Also we learned about the fennec [3] ..... . It is small, but it has [4] ..... ears.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The elephant is a big animal. It has a long nose and big ears. Elephants need to live in very large areas because they eat and drink so much. They eat grass and leaves. They have four legs. We can see elephants in the zoo or watch them on TV. The elephant is bigger than the mouse. Dogs are thinner than elephants.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about ".....".

- a. Elephants                      b. Grass                      c. Dogs                      d. Zoos

2. Elephants live in .....

- a. sea                      b. oceans                      c. large areas                      d. small areas

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What do elephants eat ?

.....

4. Which animal is bigger, the elephant or the dog ?

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. He ..... [painted] his room. This means he painted it again.

2. Dooa is very clever ..... [but] she studies her lessons very well.

3. Crocodiles are ..... [dangerous] than the hippos.

4. Camels are ..... [slow] than horses.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

spiders are very helpful

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاوب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Camels"

Guiding elements :

- without water

- strong

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Zein lives in a village next to the .....  
a. Nile                      b. lake                      c. city                      d. hotel
- Zein lives with his .....  
a. friends                      b. family                      c. cousins                      d. uncles
- Zein's house is between a ..... house and a brown house.  
a. red                      b. black                      c. white                      d. yellow
- There are tall ..... behind the house.  
a. hotels                      b. schools                      c. trees                      d. buildings

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I can see the whole street from the .....  
a. living room                      b. bathroom                      c. balcony                      d. kitchen
- We can take a shower in the .....  
a. bedroom                      b. kitchen                      c. bathroom                      d. living room
- You can put the ..... in the soil to grow new plants.  
a. clothes                      b. seeds                      c. habitats                      d. sweets
- The air is ..... because of the factories and cars.  
a. polluted                      b. clean                      c. healthy                      d. helpful

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

meet - tourists - stores - travel - interesting

Rana and Nour are two sisters. They like the summer very much. Their parents work on tourist boats in summer. They [1] ..... up and down the Nile with them. They see many [2] ..... places. They [3] ..... people from all over the world. Their dad speaks English and French with the [4] .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do.

There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about "....." .  
a. Hurghada                      b. Luxor                      c. Aswan                      d. Alexandria
2. Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt.  
a. north                      b. south                      c. east                      d. west

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....
4. Where is Sahl Hasheesh ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. Excuse me, ..... [when] is the post office ? - Turn right !
2. The library is the ..... [quiet] place to study in.
3. Which fruit is the ..... [more] expensive at the supermarket ?
4. The hospital is next ..... [of] the school.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i live in a village next to the Nile

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Your apartment"**

**Guiding elements :**

- living room                      - balcony
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....





# Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع  
الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



## Unit 1

### Lesson 1 :

Mazen and his mom are hungry. His mom decided to make some special food for them to eat. She cooked rice and chicken. The food looks delicious. She also made special banana juice. Mazen is very happy.

### Lesson 2 :

I'm Judy. I do a lot of sports at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake.

### Lesson 3 :

Yang was my friend from China. Yang was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He liked to plant flowers. He had a very beautiful garden full of flowers.

### Lessons 4 & 5 :

Damietta is one of the governorates of Egypt. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. Farmers grow wheat, lemons, grapes, potatoes and tomatoes. In Damietta, farmers raise cows, goats and sheep, too.

### Test 1 on Unit 1 :

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. It is good for growing crops. Farmers grow rice, potatoes and wheat. Fishermen catch thousands of fish. In Damietta, there are goats, cows and sheep, too.

### Test 2 on Unit 1 :

Farmers are good for our country. They produce many things. They can grow onions and carrots. They raise chickens. There is healthy food in Egypt.

### Test for Al-Azhar Students :

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seeds in the soil and gave them water. But nothing happened because the seeds were dead.



## Unit 2

### Lesson 1 :

Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous animals. Crocodiles are scary animals that live in water and on land. Snakes are animals with long bodies and no legs. Snakes are helpful because they eat mice and rats. Both snakes and crocodiles do a very important job.

### Lesson 2 :

Camels are beautiful, strong animals. They help us carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes.

### Lesson 3 :

### "Pop Quiz on Pronunciation"

#### 1. Listen and write the missing sound.

- |            |         |         |
|------------|---------|---------|
| 1. bear    | 2. peas | 3. pear |
| 4. pelican | 5. pin  | 6. bird |

### Lesson 3 :

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are hungry. They saw a juicy fish. The pelican wants to take it. The bear is

surprised and angry. The pelican looks scared because the bear is bigger and stronger.

### Lessons 4 & 5 :

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun.

### Test 3 on Unit 2 :

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It's 20 centimeters tall. The fennec fox weighs around 1 kilogram. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

### Test 4 on Unit 2 :

The crocodile is huge and scary. Spiders are very helpful. Snakes are very dangerous. Snakes eat insects, birds and lizards.

### Test for Al-Azhar Students :

Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live in the desert.

## Unit 3

### Lesson 1 :

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

### Lesson 2 :

I'm Eman. I live in a village near the river. Farmers grow many fruits and vegetables there for us to eat. They grow potatoes, tomatoes and rice. Farmers grow apples and oranges, too.

There are a lot of plants near the river. Plants near the river need a lot of water.

### Lesson 3 :

I'm Waleed. I live on a farm with mom and dad. We plant millions of seeds. We use the Nile to water the seeds. We grow many fruits like oranges and lemons.

### Lessons 4 & 5 :

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

### Test 5 on Unit 3 :

There are many plant habitats. In agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat. They plant bean plants and orange trees. There are plants that grow near rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed. They need a lot of water to grow.

### Test 6 on Unit 3 :

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water to grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

### Test for Al-Azhar Students :

Farmers work in an agricultural habitat. They look after the trees. They grow plants like bean plants and orange trees. They sell some oranges to the supermarket. People need these plants to eat.

### Test on Units 1,2 & 3 :

I love animals. Crocodiles are huge and scary. Crocodiles control the number of small animals. Farmers like spiders because they are very helpful. They eat insects.



## Unit 4

### Lesson 1 :

I live in an apartment with my family. I like my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I love my apartment.

### Lesson 2 :

Hani lives in a small village. His school is next to the post office. Behind the post office, there is a park. Hani plays football in the park with his friends.

### Lesson 3 :

#### "Pop Quiz on pronunciation"

• Listen and write the missing sound.

- |                |         |
|----------------|---------|
| 1. living room | 2. foot |
| 3. vegetables  | 4. fan  |

### Lesson 3 :

Amira went to the park last Sunday with her family. They went to the park by car. Amira played with her little brother. They went home at eight pm.

### Lessons 4&5 :

I'm Reham. I live in Hurghada. Hurghada has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. There is the Sahara Desert in Hurghada. Lots of tourists go on safaris there.

### Test 7 on Unit 4 :

Shorouk works at the supermarket near her house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. She checks that the food is fresh. She helps me when I can't find something. She is very kind and helpful.

### Test 8 on Unit 4 :

Ali is my friend. He likes going to the sea. In summer, Ali lives on a boat

with his parents. His parents work on a tourist boat. Ali always goes with them. Ali's parents travel up and down the Nile.

### Test for Al-Azhar Students :

I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. My house is not the biggest in the village. It's between a yellow house and a brown house.

## Unit 5

### Lesson 1 :

I'm Maged. My father is a plumber. When my father was young, he wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic. He was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars, so he decided to be a plumber. He loves his job and thinks that being a plumber is the most interesting job.

### Lesson 2 :

Electricity can be very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us. Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm.

### Lesson 3 :

#### "Pop Quiz on pronunciation"

Listen and circle the words which have the correct stress syllables.

- |            |            |             |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. plumber | 2. teacher | 3. mechanic |
| 4. driver  | 5. doctor  |             |

### Lesson 3 :

Mohamed was always very patient and liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Mohamed was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time. Now, Mohamed is a teacher and he loves his job.



### Lessons 4&5 :

All the jobs are very important. The cleaners keep the school clean. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights. The mechanics fix the school buses.

### Test 9 on Unit 5 :

When Talia was young, she played with blocks. She made a little house for her little dog. Now, she's an architect. She always carries a tape measure.

### Test 10 on Unit 5 :

A bus driver takes the children to school. A mechanic fixes the buses. A plumber fixes the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away the garbage.

### Test for Al-Azhar Students :

A plumber fixes the pipes and faucets. An electrician connects the electricity. They do important work for us.



### Lesson 1 :

I am a fisherman. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market.

### Lesson 2 :

Esraa needed money. She cut down her mango tree. She sold the wood. She was happy. Now, there is no mango tree and no more wood.

### Lesson 3 :

There's an old fisherman in my village. He is called Mr Hazem. He likes his job. We buy fish from him. He always has fresh fish.

### Lessons 4 & 5 :

I'm Donia. I want to be a teacher. Teaching is very hard work. I think a good teacher is the one who encourages students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

### Test 11 on Unit 6 :

My uncle is good at looking after the plants. My uncle grows oranges. All the year, he looks after the trees. Then in October, he sends the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

### Test 12 on Unit 6 :

I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. I look after all the books. I help the children find the information they need. I like my job.

### Test for Al-Azhar Students :

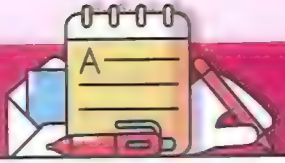
I am a librarian. I work in a school library. I look after all the books. I buy lots of new books. I help children find the information they need.

### October Test :

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It's 20 centimeters tall. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

### November Test :

My name's Zein. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



## Answers of Topics

إجابات الموضوعات



### Unit 1

#### General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

##### "Food in Egypt"

Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow a lot of food for us to eat. They grow rice. They grow vegetables and fruits. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

#### General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

##### "Healthy food"

I like healthy food. I like fruits and vegetables. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. I don't like unhealthy food. I don't eat candy.

#### General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

##### "Damietta governorate"

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes and guavas. Fishermen can catch a lot of fish in the sea. Domiat cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta.

#### Test 1 on Unit 1 :

##### "Being healthy"

To be healthy, I drink plenty of water. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. I do a lot of exercise. I also play basketball. I like walking. I don't eat a lot of candy.

#### Test 2 on Unit 1 :

##### "Egyptian farmers"

Egyptian farmers are very important. They grow many crops like rice. They grow fruit and vegetables for us to eat. They also keep animals. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat. It's a very important job.



### Unit 2

#### General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

##### "Crocodiles and snakes"

Crocodiles and snakes are very dangerous. But they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

#### General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

##### "Horses"

Horses are strong animals. They can live in the desert. They have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses are my favorite animals.

#### General Exercises on Lesson 3 :

##### "Bears"

I like animals. My favorite animal is the bear. Bears eat fish. They use paws and claws to catch fish. My sister doesn't like bears. She thinks they are scary.

#### General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

##### "Rhim gazelles"

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow -white coats which protect them from the sun. They don't need to drink a lot of water.

#### Test 3 on Unit 2 :

##### "Camels"

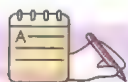
Camels are strong animals. They help us to carry things. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. They can live without water for a long time.



## Test 4 on Unit 2 :

### "The fennec fox"

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It has big ears. It can hear insects. It has thick fur to be warm at night.



## **Unit 3**

### General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

#### "How to grow tomatoes"

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. This is called germination. We water the plant every day. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

### General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

#### "The desert habitat"

There isn't much rain in the desert. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water. It's very hot in the desert. We can find tamarisk and acacia plant in the desert habitat.

### General Exercises on Lesson 3 :

#### "Life on a farm"

I live on a farm with my family. We use plants to make the land green. We bring animals to the land. We use rainwater to water the seeds. I like the farm because it's quiet and beautiful. There are a lot of fruits and vegetables on the farm. I can also play with animals on the farm.

### General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

#### "The life cycle of a tomato"

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You water it. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

After that, the shoot grows above soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

## Test 5 on Unit 3 :

### "Agricultural habitat"

Farmers work in an agricultural habitat. They look after the trees. They grow plants like bean plants and orange trees. They sell some oranges to the supermarket. People need these plants to eat.

## Test 6 on Unit 3 :

### "The life cycle of a sunflower"

First, we plant a sunflower seed in soil. Next, the seed germinates and starts to grow. It grows leaves. After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun. Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

## Test on units 1,2 & 3 :

### "Rhim gazelles"

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat grass and plants. They have big ears and long horns. They don't need to drink a lot of water like camels.



## **Unit 4**

### General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

#### "Your home"

I live in an apartment with my family. I like my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I love my apartment.



## General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

### "Your village"

I live in a village near the Nile. I live in a house with my family. It's between a yellow house and a brown house. There are a lot of trees. The village is quiet and beautiful.

## General Exercises on Lesson 3 :

### "Living on a boat"

We live on a boat in the summer. My parents work on tourist boats. They travel up and down the Nile. I see many interesting places. I meet people from all over the world. I like the summer very much.

## General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

### "Hurghada"

I live in Hurghada. It's on the Red Sea. There's a beach there. Tourists can go on safaris. It has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada.

## Test 7 on Unit 4 :

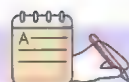
### "Your town"

This is my town. It's small, but it has stores, offices and many other places. My school is next to the hospital. Next to the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends. It's a good place to live in.

## Test 8 on Unit 4 :

### "Your favorite room"

I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I talk with my family and do many things in the living room.



## Unit 5

## General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

### "Different jobs"

There are many different jobs. An electrician connects the electricity. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage to keep our houses clean. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers the letters and parcels.

## General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

### "Electricity"

Electricity is very dangerous. If you get an electric shock, you can't control your body. To use electricity safely, never touch anything with wet hands. Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical.

## General Exercises on Lesson 3 :

### "A job you want to do"

My favorite job is an electrician. It's an important job. An electrician connects electricity so people can use lights and watch TV. We should learn about safety with electricity.

## General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

### "Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job"

There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. On the one hand, he walks all the day and gets a lot of exercise. On the other hand, the mail bag is very heavy. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job.

## Test 9 on Unit 5 :

### "Mechanics"

My favorite job is a mechanic. The mechanics work in the repair shop. They fix the cars and buses. The mechanic's job is very important. The mechanic is fixing my dad's car. He is clever.

## Test 10 on Unit 5 :

### "My father's job"

My father is an electrician. He always carries a screwdriver. He connects electricity. I like his job and I want to be an electrician like him.



## **Unit 6**

### General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

#### "Tourism industry"

I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell tourists lots of interesting information about places they visit.

### General Exercises on Lesson 2 :

#### "Energy sources"

We can make electricity from energy sources. There are two types of sources : renewable and non-renewable sources. Wave energy and wind energy are renewable sources. Oil, coal and gas are non-renewable sources.

### General Exercises on Lessons 4&5 :

#### "Teachers"

Teaching is a hard job, but it is very interesting. Teachers have different days. There's always something special at school every day. Good teachers are very patient to answer all students' questions. They are always ready to learn new things.

## Test 11 on Unit 6 :

### "A fisherman"

A fisherman wakes up early every day. He goes out on his boat. He catches fish. He sells the fish at the market. It's my favorite job. It's a very interesting job.

## Test 12 on Unit 6 :

### "The farmer"

My uncle is a farmer. He grows fruits and vegetables. He looks after the trees. He sells the crops at the market. He sends a lot of the fruits to the factory to make juice.

### October Test :

#### "Camels"

Camels are strong animals. They help us to carry things. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. They can live without water for a long time.

### November Test :

#### "Your apartment"

I live in an apartment with my family. I like my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I love my apartment.

# Notes



A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing notes.





**GREAT JOB !**

Name \_\_\_\_\_





GUIDE

# Interactive

By a group of supervisors

Parents' Guide دليل ولي الأمر

## Notebook

الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



**AL TALABA BOOKSTORE**

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com



15014

**4<sup>th</sup>**  
Primary

FIRST TERM

All rights reserved

# CONTENTS

## ► PART 1

### El Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي (التسميع)

Part 1 Dictation on Lessons ..... 4

Part 2 Accumulative assessments on Dictation ..... 28

## ► PART 2

### A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

Day 1 Listening ..... 32

Day 2 Vocabulary & Language ..... 33

Day 3 Reading skill ..... 43

Day 4 Writing skill ..... 45

Days 5,6&7 Governorates Exams ..... 47





# PART

# 1

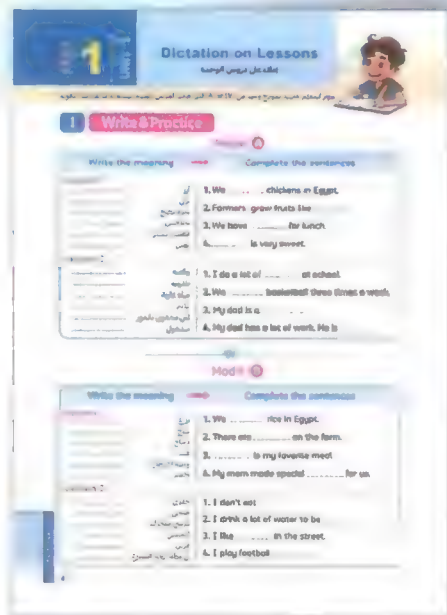
## El Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى (التسميع)

### Part One

### Dictation on Lessons

- ١- إملأ على دروس الوحدة
- ٢- أهم المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة
- ٣- تنمية مهارة الكتابة



### Part Two

### Accumulative assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء



## Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write &amp; Practice

## Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

## Lesson 1

..... أرز  
 ..... يربي  
 ..... ثمرة بطيخ  
 ..... بطاطس  
 ..... قصب السكر  
 ..... بصل

1. We ..... chickens in Egypt.
2. Farmers grow fruits like .....
3. We have ..... for lunch.
4. .... is very sweet.

## Lesson 2

..... رياضة  
 ..... يتدرب  
 ..... مياه غازية  
 ..... غالي  
 ..... لبن مخفوق بالموز  
 ..... مشغول

1. I do a lot of ..... at school.
2. We ..... basketball three times a week.
3. My dad is a .....
4. My dad has a lot of work. He is .....

Or

## Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

## Lesson 1

..... يزرع  
 ..... ينتج  
 ..... دجاج  
 ..... عنب  
 ..... وجبة الإفطار  
 ..... طعام

1. We ..... rice in Egypt.
2. There are ..... on the farm.
3. .... is my favorite meal.
4. My mom made special ..... for us.

## Lesson 2

..... حلوى  
 ..... صحي  
 ..... كرسي متحرك  
 ..... المشي  
 ..... فريق  
 ..... في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

1. I don't eat .....
2. I drink a lot of water to be .....
3. I like ..... in the street.
4. I play football .....

## Model A

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |                 |
|-------|-----------------|
| ..... | إمبراطور        |
| ..... | منافسة / مسابقة |
| ..... | بستاني          |
| ..... | أمين            |
| ..... | يعتني بـ        |
| ..... | بذور            |

1. The ..... is someone who rules a country.
2. My brother tries to win the .....
3. The ..... has a lot of seeds to grow plants.
4. You should be .....

#### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| ..... | محافظة       |
| ..... | عناصر غذائية |
| ..... | مشهور بـ     |
| ..... | صياد سمك     |
| ..... | مليون        |
| ..... | جوافه        |

1. Life is good in Damietta .....
2. Damietta is ..... Domiati cheese.
3. .... can catch thousands of fish.
4. Grapes and ..... are delicious fruits.

Or

## Model B

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |        |
|-------|--------|
| ..... | قصر    |
| ..... | ميت    |
| ..... | وعاء   |
| ..... | يكذب   |
| ..... | يفوز   |
| ..... | جيد في |

1. The seeds didn't grow. They were .....
2. The emperor lives in a .....
3. He is honest, he doesn't .....
4. My brother ..... the gold medal.

#### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| ..... | الحياة    |
| ..... | قمح       |
| ..... | جزء       |
| ..... | جبن       |
| ..... | غني بـ    |
| ..... | يصطاد سمك |

1. Farmers grow ..... and lemons.
2. Domiati ..... is very famous.
3. Damietta's land is ..... nutrients.
4. Fishermen ..... in the sea.

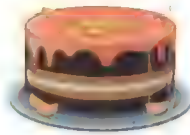




أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



potatoes



1. rice

2. palace

3. milk

4. onions

5. grapes

6. potatoes

7. guavas

8. bag

9. emperor

10. fisherman

11. wheelchair

12. mangoes

13. watermelon

14. gardener

15. mom

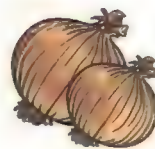
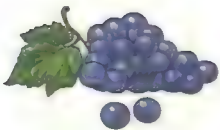
16. team

17. cake

18. chicken

19. sugarcane

20. cola





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

| Step 1<br>Vocabulary   | Step 2<br>Sentences   | Step 3<br>Paragraphs  |
|--|---|---|
| اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية  | منبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية  | متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية  |
| <p>► Write the meaning :</p> <p>رياضة .....</p> <p>المشي .....</p> <p>حلوى .....</p> <p>رائع .....</p> <p>لبن مخفوق بالموز .....</p> | <p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. sport - do - a lot - of - at school - I.</p> <p>2. really - I - like - walking.</p> <p>3. awesome - The banana - milkshake - is.</p>   | <p>► Write a paragraph about :</p> <p><b>Being healthy</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| <p>بصطاد السمك .....</p> <p>صياد السمك .....</p> <p>دمياط .....</p> <p>غنى ب .....</p> <p>حياة .....</p>                             | <p>4. thousands of - Fishermen - in - the sea - fish - catch.</p> <p>5. famous - Damietta - for - Domiati - is - cheese.</p> <p>6. rich in - The land - is - Damietta - in - nutrients.</p> <p>7. good - Life - in - Damietta - is.</p> | <p><b>Damietta governorate</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>                             |
| <p>أرز .....</p> <p>بننج .....</p> <p>مصري .....</p> <p>خاص / مميز .....</p> <p>يربي دجاج .....</p>                                  | <p>8. Egypt - grow - We - rice - in.</p> <p>9. farmers - Egyptian - many - produce - things.</p> <p>10. made - Mom - food - for - a special - us.</p> <p>11. in - raise - We - chickens - Egypt.</p>                                    | <p><b>Food in Egypt</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>                                    |

# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

تمساح  
عنكبوت  
هام  
قبيح  
متعاون  
خطير

1. The ..... is huge and scary.
2. The ..... is helpful.
3. Animals do a very ..... job.
4. Some animals are ..... , but they are all important.

#### Lesson 2

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

مدهش  
أقدام  
جميل  
صحراء  
مثالي  
يغضب

1. Camels have large, flat .....
2. Horses can live in the .....
3. Camels are ..... for the desert.
4. Camels can .....

Or

### Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

مخيف  
حشرات  
يتحكم  
ثعبان  
سحالي  
لطيف / جذاب

1. Crocodiles are .....
2. The spiders eat .....
3. Big animals ..... the number of small animals.
4. Crocodiles eat ..... and birds.

#### Lesson 2

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

يحمل  
مزعج/صاحب  
ماء عذب  
يعتنى بـ  
مميز  
بأكل

1. Camels ..... things and people.
2. Camels are very ..... when they get angry.
3. Horses drink .....
4. Horses ..... grass.



## Model A

Write the meaning →

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

بجعة  
كثير العسارة  
أكثر عطفاً  
مخالب  
يرفع  
يصل

1. The ..... and the bear are in the river.
2. The fish is big and .....
3. The bear has paws and .....
4. The bear ..... for the fish.

### Lessons 4 & 5

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

قرون حيوان  
يزن  
غزال الریم  
سميك  
يحتاج  
يسمع

1. Rhim gazelles have long .....
2. The fennec fox ..... around 1 kg.
3. The fox's ..... fur keeps it warm.
4. The fennec fox needs big ears to ..... insects.

Or

## Model B

Write the meaning →

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

منقار  
فم  
كف حيوان  
دب  
جاهز  
يخرج

1. The pelican opens its ..... to take the fish.
2. The bear lifts its .....
3. The pelican and the ..... are in the river.
4. The pelican ..... the fish out of the water.

### Lessons 4 & 5

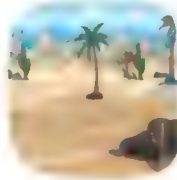
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

فراء حيوان  
ثعلب الفنك  
يبحث عن  
فئران  
حرارة  
دافئ

1. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .....
2. The ..... lives in the desert.
3. The fennec fox eats lizards and .....
4. The fennec fox loses ..... from its ears.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. rhim gazelle

2. lizard

3. fennec fox

4. claw

5. flat foot

6. pear

7. camel

8. horse

9. insect

10. coat

11. snake

12. beak

13. bear

14. crocodile

15. helpful

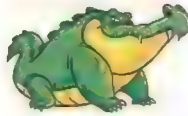
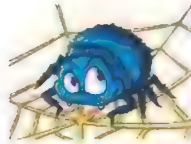
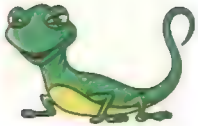
16. spider

17. pelican

18. horns

19. desert

20. pin





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

|                  | <b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary<br>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية                                 | <b>Step 2</b> Sentences<br>متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية  | <b>Step 3</b> Paragraphs<br>متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية                         |
|------------------|--|--|--|
| Animals in Egypt | <b>Write the meaning :</b><br>..... تمساح<br>..... عنكبوت<br>..... حشرة<br>..... سحلية<br>..... مخيف | <b>Reorder the words :</b><br>1. do - <u>Crocodiles</u> - important - an - job.<br>.....<br>2. helpful - <u>Spiders</u> - are - very.<br>.....<br>3. lizards - eat - <u>Snakes</u> - insects - and.<br>.....<br>4. animals - <u>Some</u> - scary - are.<br>..... | <b>Write a paragraph about :<br/>Animals in Egypt</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Camels           | ..... مسطحة<br>..... أقدام<br>..... يحمل<br>..... صحراء<br>..... لذيذ [الطعم]                        | 5. have - <u>Camels</u> - feet - flat.<br>.....<br>6. help - us - carry - <u>Camels</u> - things.<br>.....<br>7. perfect - for - <u>Camels</u> - are - the desert.<br>.....<br>8. delicious - <u>Camels'</u> - is - milk.<br>.....                               | <b>Camels</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....   |
| Fennec fox       | ..... حرارة<br>..... يفقد<br>..... سميكة<br>..... دافئ<br>..... يزن                                  | 9. loses - its ears - The <u>fennec fox</u> - heat - from.<br>.....<br>10. fur - The <u>fennec fox's</u> - warm - it - keeps.<br>.....<br>11. weighs - The <u>fennec fox</u> - 1 kilogram - around.<br>.....   | <b>Fennec fox</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....                                     |



# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

..... بذور  
..... يزرع  
..... يسقى / يروي  
..... جذور  
..... برعم / نبتة  
..... نبات

1. Tomatoes have ..... inside.
2. We ..... the plant every day.
3. The roots grow under the .....
4. The ..... grows above the soil.

#### Lesson 2

..... الفلاحين / المزارعين  
..... نهر  
..... زهرة الأقحوان  
..... شجرة السنط  
..... موطن / بيئة  
..... الأطول

1. .... grow food for us to eat .
2. Plants near the ..... need a lot of water .
3. A ..... is a place where living things live and grow.
4. The sunflower is the ..... flower .

Or

### Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

..... تنمو  
..... أوراق شجر  
..... ثمرة الطماطم  
..... بلكونة [شرفة]  
..... عملية الإنبات  
..... التربة الزراعية

1. The full plant grows ..... and flowers .
2. .... are green before they're red.
3. Our tomato plants are growing on the .....
4. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called .....

#### Lesson 2

..... زراعى  
..... صحراء  
..... زهرة عباد الشمس  
..... الاصغر  
..... نبات القصب / الجريد  
..... بحيرة

1. Farmers work in an ..... habitat.
2. There's not much rain in the .....
3. The ..... need a lot of water to grow .
4. We can find ..... in an agricultural habitat.

## Model A

Write the meaning →

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

مزرعة  
جاف  
رقم مليون  
مياه الأمطار  
فخور بـ  
حياة

1. My friend lives on a .....
2. They planted ..... of seeds.
3. They use ..... to water the seeds.
4. My parents are ..... me.

### Lessons 4 & 5

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

أولاً  
نبات البردي  
شهر  
سلة  
يسقط  
بسرعة

1. ...., you put the sunflower seed in soil .
2. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to make paper.
3. They also used papyrus to make .....
4. The sunflower dies and ..... its seeds.

Or

## Model B

Write the meaning →

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

الأجداد  
هواء ملوث  
رقم مليار  
يقرر  
ليمون  
يحضر

1. We don't like the .....
2. They need about a ..... liters of water .
3. They ..... to buy some land.
4. They ..... animals to the land.

### Lessons 4 & 5

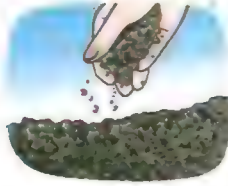
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

نبتة  
يواجه  
يزداد طولاً  
يضع  
دورة حياة  
أخيراً

1. The ..... grows above the soil .
2. The sunflower opens and ..... the sun.
3. We ..... the seeds in sunlight .
4. The ..... of sunflower is important.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. rose

2. orange tree

3. river



4. shoot

5. bean plant

6. slippers



7. balcony

8. seeds

9. farm

10. tomato plant

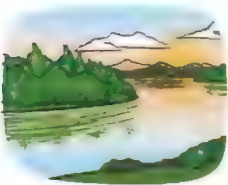
11. soil

12. sunflower

13. roots

14. swan

15. leaf







يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

| Step 1<br>Vocabulary  | اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية                                | Step 2<br>Sentences  | Step 3<br>Paragraphs  |
|---|--|--|---|
| <p>► Write the meaning :</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> | <p>تربة</p> <p>بذور</p> <p>بلونة</p> <p>يسقى</p> <p>جذور</p> <p>تربة</p> | <p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. have - <u>Tomatoes</u> - seeds - inside.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>2. growing - <u>Our tomatoes</u> - the balcony - on - are.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>3. water - <u>We</u> - every - the plant - day.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>4. grow - <u>The roots</u> - the - under - soil.</p> <p>.....</p> | <p>► Write a paragraph about :</p> <p><b>Tomato plants</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| <p>The life cycle of sunflower</p>  | <p>ينبت</p> <p>يرعم</p> <p>زهرة عباد الشمس</p> <p>يسقط</p> <p>أخيرا</p>  | <p>5. and - germinates - <u>The seed</u> - starts - to grow.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>6. grows - above - <u>The shoot</u> - the soil.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>7. faces - <u>The sunflower</u> - the sun - opens - and.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>8. the sunflower - <u>Finally</u> , - its - drops - seeds.</p> <p>.....</p>        | <p><b>The life cycle of sunflower</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>                      |
| <p>Papyrus</p>  | <p>نبات البردي</p> <p>سلة</p> <p>حذاء صيفي</p> <p>داقي</p> <p>يلمو</p>   | <p>9. special - a very - <u>Papyrus</u> - plant - is.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>10. made - <u>They</u> - sandals - baskets - and.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>11. warm - <u>Papyrus</u> - needs - weather - to - grow.</p> <p>.....</p>  | <p><b>Papyrus</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>  |

# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

..... شقة سكنية  
..... حجرة معيشة  
..... خيمة  
..... دورة مياه  
..... حجرة الطعام  
..... شُرفة [بلكونة]

1. I live in an .....
2. We live in the desert. We live in a .....
3. I eat dinner in the .....
4. I love to sit in the .....

#### Lesson 2

..... متجر [سوبر ماركت]  
..... مدرسة  
..... مكتب عمل  
..... مستشفى  
..... ملابس  
..... يرسل

1. The ..... is a place where we buy food.
2. The ..... is a place where I learn.
3. The ..... is a place where my mom works.
4. I ..... some letters to my friend.

Or

### Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

..... حجرة نوم  
..... شارع  
..... منزل عائ  
..... منزل  
..... مطبخ  
..... يسترخى

1. I can see the whole ..... from the balcony.
2. We live on a ..... on water.
3. We cook food in the .....
4. I sleep in the .....

#### Lesson 2

..... قرية  
..... مكتب بريد  
..... مركز تسوق  
..... مريض / مرض  
..... نهر النيل  
..... خلف

1. I live in the .....
2. The ..... is a place where we send letters.
3. The ..... is a place where I buy clothes.
4. There are tall trees ..... the house.

## Model A

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |               |
|-------|---------------|
| ..... | يسقط / يقع    |
| ..... | إتجاهات       |
| ..... | قارب سياحي    |
| ..... | فصل الصيف     |
| ..... | اللغة الصينية |
| ..... | ينقذ          |

1. The small child ..... in the river.
2. We should follow ..... to get to the bank.
3. My parents work on .....
4. The brave man can ..... the child.

#### Lessons 4&5

|       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| ..... | سائحين    |
| ..... | تفحص      |
| ..... | بالقرب من |
| ..... | خريطة     |
| ..... | كل أسبوع  |
| ..... | ممتع      |

1. There are many ..... in Luxor.
2. She ..... that the food is good.
3. Her work is ..... her home.
4. I located the town on the .....

Or

## Model B

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | في الزاوية |
| ..... | يقابل      |
| ..... | يقرر       |
| ..... | يسافر      |
| ..... | يسبح       |
| ..... | يتحدث      |

1. The supermarket is .....
2. He ..... people from all over the world.
3. They ..... up and down the Nile.
4. He ..... English.

#### Lessons 4&5

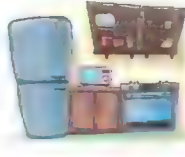
|       |                   |
|-------|-------------------|
| ..... | رحلات سفاري       |
| ..... | بازار [سوق تجاري] |
| ..... | طازج              |
| ..... | عمال              |
| ..... | صور فوتوغرافية    |
| ..... | سوبر ماركت        |

1. Tourists can go on .....
2. Hurghada has beautiful .....
3. The food is .....
4. The ..... are very kind.





أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. fan

2. supermarket

3. balcony

4. dining room

5. shopping mall

6. hospital

7. living room

8. bedroom

9. van

10. tent

11. apartment

12. bathroom

13. Turn left.

14. tourist

15. post office

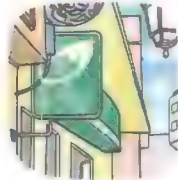
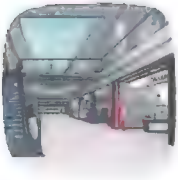
16. school

17. Turn right.

18. tourist boat

19. kitchen

20. office





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

|                        | <b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary<br>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية   | <b>Step 2</b> Sentences<br>متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية   | <b>Step 3</b> Paragraphs<br>متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب<br>فقرة إنشائية             |
|------------------------|--|---|---|
| My home                | <b>Write the meaning :</b><br>شرفة / بلكونة .....<br>حجرة نوم .....<br>شقة سكنية .....<br>مطبخ .....<br>ينظم ..... | <b>Reorder the words :</b><br>1. see - from - the whole - I <u>can</u> - street - the balcony.<br>.....<br>2. relax - bedroom - I <u>can</u> - in - my.<br>.....<br>3. lovely - <u>Our</u> - is - apartment.<br>.....<br>4. organize - I <u>help</u> - mom - my - the kitchen.<br>..... | <b>Write an a paragraph about :</b><br><b>My home</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Hurghada               | سوق تجاري (بازار) .....<br>البحر الأحمر .....<br>رحلات سفاري .....<br>سياح .....<br>منازل .....                    | 5. bazaars - <u>Hurghada</u> - interesting - has.<br>.....<br>6. on - is - <u>Hurghada</u> - Sea - the Red.<br>.....<br>7. go - <u>Tourists</u> - on - can - safaris.<br>.....<br>8. has - houses - <u>Hurghada</u> - some - beautiful.<br>.....  | <b>Hurghada</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....                                       |
| The supermarket worker | يفحص .....<br>طازج .....<br>عامل .....<br>بالقرب من .....<br>طبيب / عطوف .....                                     | 9. fresh - <u>She</u> - the food - is - checks.<br>.....<br>10. is - <u>My sister</u> - a supermarket - worker.<br>.....<br>11. works at - <u>She</u> - the supermarket - near - her<br>house.<br>.....   | <b>The supermarket worker</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....                         |

# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

..... سباك  
..... ساعي البريد  
..... سائق حافلة  
..... فوضوى  
..... مشكلة  
..... ماسورة

1. A ..... fixes pipes and faucets.
2. A ..... has our parcel.
3. I want to be a ..... I like driving.
4. The floor is wet and .....

#### Lesson 2

..... ينتقل  
..... صدمة كهربائية  
..... مقبس كهرباء  
..... بطريقة آمنة  
..... حريق / نار  
..... جاف

1. Electricity ..... very fast.
2. If we get an ....., we can't control our bodies.
3. Never put anything into a ....., only use plugs.
4. You should work ..... with electricity.

Or

### Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

..... فنى كهرباء  
..... جامع القمامة  
..... طرد  
..... ميكانيكى  
..... ينسى  
..... يريد

1. An ..... makes things work.
2. I'm taking the ..... to the post office.
3. I like being a .....
4. I ..... to take out the trash.

#### Lesson 2

..... يحرق  
..... مبلل  
..... ظاهرة البرق  
..... عاصفة  
..... يدرس  
..... الكهرباء

1. Electricity can ..... us.
2. We sometimes see a flash of .....
3. The crops were badly damaged by the .....
4. .... is very dangerous.



## Model A

### Write the meaning →

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |                      |
|-------|----------------------|
| ..... | يختبر / يجرب         |
| ..... | مكعبات               |
| ..... | شريط قياس            |
| ..... | أمان                 |
| ..... | فضول / محب الاستطلاع |
| ..... | دمية                 |

1. She loved to .....
2. She played with .....
3. She carried a .....
4. She was very .....

#### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| ..... | بالخارج |
| ..... | يستيقظ  |
| ..... | يجلب    |
| ..... | قمامة   |
| ..... | يصلح    |
| ..... | ثقل     |

1. Mail carriers ..... early.
2. The garbage collectors take away our .....
3. The mechanics ..... the cars.
4. The mail bag is very .....

Or

## Model B

### Write the meaning →

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| ..... | قفك البراغى  |
| ..... | صبور         |
| ..... | يشرح / يفسر  |
| ..... | جهاز الراديو |
| ..... | يغضب         |
| ..... | يضع          |

1. She always carried a .....
2. He is very ..... He never gets angry.
3. He ..... things all the time.
4. She ..... one block on top of another.

#### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |          |
|-------|----------|
| ..... | يوصل     |
| ..... | يصل      |
| ..... | يسير     |
| ..... | الطقس    |
| ..... | إيجابيات |
| ..... | تدريب    |

1. Mail carriers ..... letters and parcels.
2. Mail carriers ..... all day.
3. There are ..... and cons of being a mail carrier.
4. Mail carriers get a lot of .....



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. storm

2. screwdriver

3. bus driver

4. doctor



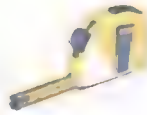
5. teacher

6. electrician

7. lightning

8. pipe

9. plumber



10. blocks

11. tape measure

12. garbage collector

13. parcel

14. socket

15. trash

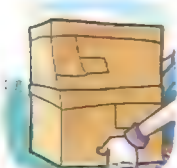
16. plug

17. mail carrier

18. architect

19. mechanic

20. faucet





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

|                        | <b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary<br>اختر مدى إقناعك للمفردات اللغوية التالية                                       | <b>Step 2</b> Sentences<br>متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية   | <b>Step 3</b> Paragraphs<br>متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية                   |
|------------------------|--|---|--|
| Jobs                   | <b>Write the meaning :</b><br>..... جامع قمامة<br>..... يصلح<br>..... طرد<br>..... كهربائي<br>..... ماسورة | <b>Reorder the words :</b><br>1. fixes - faucets - A plumber - pipes - and.<br>2. delivers - parcels - A mail - our - carrier.<br>3. makes - work - An electrician - things.<br>4. collector - out - A garbage - takes - the trash. | <b>Write a paragraph about :</b><br><b>Jobs</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Electricity            | ..... ظاهرة البرق<br>..... صدمة كهربائية<br>..... عاصفة<br>..... مبلل<br>..... وميض (نور خاطف)             | 5. see - lightning - of - We - a flash - in a storm.<br>6. is - dangerous - Electricity - very.<br>7. can - An electric - shock - us - burn.<br>8. anything - with - Never - electrical - touch - wet hands.                        | <b>Electricity</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....                              |
| The mail carrier's job | ..... سليات<br>..... بالخارج<br>..... طقس<br>..... حقيبة البريد<br>..... ثقيل                              | 9. are - all - Mail - outside - carriers - day.<br>10. is - heavy - The mail - very - bag.<br>11. wake up - early - Mail - very - carriers.<br>12. like - carriers - People - mail - to meet.                                       | <b>The mail carrier's job</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....                   |



# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

#### Write the meaning

#### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

|       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| ..... | صياد سمك     |
| ..... | أمين مكتبة   |
| ..... | يفسر         |
| ..... | التعليم      |
| ..... | مصنع         |
| ..... | فلاح / مزارع |

1. The ..... goes out on his boat.
2. The ..... works in a school library.
3. The guide can ..... the history of Egypt.
4. The ..... picks up the fruits.

#### Lesson 2

|       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| ..... | موارد متجددة |
| ..... | طاقة شمسية   |
| ..... | شجرة مانجو   |
| ..... | نقود         |
| ..... | ينظر من      |
| ..... | يقطع         |

1. Water is a .....
2. We get ..... from the sun.
3. We have a ..... in our garden.
4. They ..... trees to get wood.

Or

### Model B

#### Write the meaning

#### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | بيع        |
| ..... | مرشد سياحي |
| ..... | يعتنى بـ   |
| ..... | زراعة      |
| ..... | صيد السمك  |
| ..... | مصنع       |

1. He ..... the fish in the market.
2. The librarian ..... all the books.
3. Boats and nets are connected to ..... industry.
4. They send the fruit to the .....

#### Lesson 2

|       |                  |
|-------|------------------|
| ..... | موارد غير متجددة |
| ..... | مرة اخري         |
| ..... | فحم              |
| ..... | بترو             |
| ..... | خشب              |
| ..... | يلعب             |

1. .... resources can run out.
2. Renewable resources can grow .....
3. We cut down trees to get .....
4. The children ..... under the tree.

## Model A

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | طازج       |
| ..... | مشكلة      |
| ..... | مندهش      |
| ..... | حول القرية |
| ..... | صوت        |
| ..... | جميل       |

1. The fishermen have ..... fish every day.
2. The teacher helps me to solve my .....
3. The fisherman drove .....
4. We heard the ..... of the television.

#### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | رف         |
| ..... | يشجع       |
| ..... | يلقى       |
| ..... | بحرص       |
| ..... | يعلم       |
| ..... | يفكر بسرعة |

1. I put the books on the .....
2. Teachers always ..... their students.
3. We shouldn't ..... trash in the garden.
4. The students listen to their teachers .....

Or

## Model B

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |                   |
|-------|-------------------|
| ..... | محرك              |
| ..... | محبط              |
| ..... | شاحنة بيع الأسماك |
| ..... | يسمع              |
| ..... | يريد              |
| ..... | يصيح              |

1. There's a problem with my car .....
2. He lost his keys so he was .....
3. He has fresh fish in his .....
4. Don't .....! I can hear you.

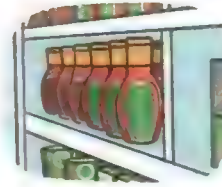
#### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | قمامة      |
| ..... | مفاجئ      |
| ..... | احترام     |
| ..... | أمين مكتبة |
| ..... | منير       |
| ..... | ينزل من    |

1. We shouldn't throw ..... in the garden.
2. Students ask ..... questions.
3. I show ..... to the people around me.
4. I say thank you when I ..... the bus.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. librarian

2. tourism industry

3. teacher

4. farmer

5. wood

6. mango tree

7. fish van

8. disappointed

9. engine

10. trash

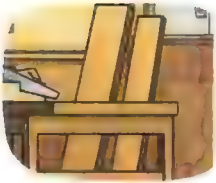
11. shelf

12. boat

13. fishing

14. factory

15. money







يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

|                 | <b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية   | <b>Step 2</b> Sentences<br>متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية   | <b>Step 3</b> Paragraphs<br>متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب<br>فقرة إنشائية                |
|-----------------|---|---|--|
| Jobs            | <b>Write the meaning :</b><br>يبيع .....<br>مرشد سياحي .....<br>سياحة .....<br>فلاح / مزارع .....<br>أمين مكتبة ..... | <b>Reorder the words :</b><br>1. their - <u>The fishermen</u> - market - sell - fish - at the.<br>2. work - <u>The guides</u> - in - industry - tourism - the.<br>3. look - after - <u>The farmers</u> - the - trees.<br>4. buys - <u>The librarian</u> - new - lots of - books.<br>5. had - <u>Each sister</u> - a beautiful - tree - mango.<br>6. cut - <u>She</u> - her - down - tree.<br>7. sold - <u>She</u> - the wood - money - to get.<br>8. under - the tree - <u>The</u> - played - children.<br>9. encourage - <u>Teachers</u> - always - their - students.<br>10. ask - <u>Students</u> - questions - surprising.<br>11. change - <u>A teacher</u> - the - can - lives - students'. | <b>Write a paragraph about :</b><br><b>Jobs</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Two mango trees | شجرة مانجو .....<br>يقطع .....<br>خشب .....<br>نقود .....<br>يلعب .....   |   | <b>Two mango trees</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....                                   |
| Being a teacher | بشجع .....<br>مفاجئ .....<br>سؤال .....<br>يغير .....<br>تحتاج .....  |   | <b>Being a teacher</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....                                   |



## تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

### Unit 1

#### Model A

1. onions
2. grapes
3. rice
4. wheelchair
5. emperor
6. gardener
7. competition
8. rich in

١. ثمرة بطاطس
٢. قصب السكر
٣. قصر
٤. المشي
٥. أمين
٦. لذيق
٧. ثمار الطماطم
٨. يربي

### Units 1 & 2

#### Model A

1. snake
2. camel
3. yummy
4. insect
5. produce
6. beak
7. honest
8. rhinoceros

١. تمساح
٢. ثعلب الفنك
٣. عنكبوت
٤. بذور
٥. دب
٦. يعتني بـ
٧. قرون حيوان
٨. يفوز

### Units 1, 2 & 3

#### Model A

1. leaf
2. seeds
3. acacia tree
4. chickens
5. living things
6. difficult
7. germination
8. camels

١. بلكونة / شرفة
٢. سحلية
٣. شجرة برتقال
٤. زهرة الأقحوان
٥. ثعلب الفنك
٦. نبات البردي
٧. عباد الشمس
٨. ماء عذب

#### Model B

1. mangoes
2. banana
3. country
4. vegetables
5. grow
6. palace
7. honest
8. onions

١. ثمرة بطيخ
٢. دجاج
٣. مشهور بـ
٤. جن
٥. مشغول
٦. عناصر غذائية
٧. حلوي
٨. ثمرة الليمون

#### Model B

1. shoot
2. roots
3. horns
4. sunflower
5. polluted air
6. sandals
7. life cycle
8. governorate

١. تربة زراعية
٢. وردة حمراء
٣. ثمرة طماطم
٤. شجرة الطرءاء
٥. حشرات
٦. مياه الأمطار
٧. جمل
٨. مزعج / صاخب

#### Model B

1. dangerous
2. helpful
3. amazing
4. beautiful
5. desert
6. pelican
7. mix
8. win

١. مخيف
٢. اناء
٣. مثال
٤. يكذب
٥. مخالف حيوان
٦. خائف
٧. كمثري
٨. قصر

## Units 1,2,3 & 4

### Model A

1. bazaar ..... ١. قارب سياحي
2. balcony ..... ٢. تالف
3. dining room ..... ٣. مكتب بريد
4. spider ..... ٤. ماء عذب
5. living things ..... ٥. يخلط
6. Egyptian ..... ٦. مركز تسوق
7. worker ..... ٧. اتجه يميناً!
8. breakfast ..... ٨. يسقى

## Units 1,2,3,4 & 5

### Model A

1. electrician ..... ١. إيجابيات
2. storm ..... ٢. مروحة
3. screwdriver ..... ٣. ميكانيكي
4. patient ..... ٤. ظاهرة البرق
5. heavy ..... ٥. بجعة
6. fennec fox ..... ٦. زراعي
7. yummy ..... ٧. بازلاء
8. healthy ..... ٨. أرض

## Units 1,2,3,4,5 & 6

### Model A

1. fisherman ..... ١. موارد متجددة
2. education ..... ٢. صناعة [مجال] السياحة
3. forest ..... ٣. شجاع
4. shelf ..... ٤. محيط
5. messy ..... ٥. ماسورة
6. curious ..... ٦. مميز / خاص
7. sweep ..... ٧. ينبت
8. fur ..... ٨. حصان

### Model B

1. hospital ..... ١. حجرة معيشة
2. summer ..... ٢. فريق
3. office ..... ٣. اتجه يساراً!
4. check ..... ٤. طازج
5. behind ..... ٥. حجرة نوم
6. cross ..... ٦. رحلات سفاري
7. practice ..... ٧. موطن / بيئة
8. honesty ..... ٨. وجبة العشاء

### Model B

1. mail carrier ..... ١. سائق حافلة
2. socket ..... ٢. محافظة
3. blocks ..... ٣. صدمة كهربائية
4. outside ..... ٤. قابس [فيشة]
5. crocodile ..... ٥. شريط قياس
6. noisy ..... ٦. سليليات
7. farm ..... ٧. شقة سكنية
8. special ..... ٨. إمبراطور

### Model B

1. guide ..... ١. أمين مكتبة
2. fish van ..... ٢. عملية الإنبات
3. engine ..... ٣. محاصيل
4. respect ..... ٤. موارد غير متجددة
5. bee ..... ٥. طرد
6. carry ..... ٦. خيمة
7. flat ..... ٧. مفك البراغي
8. plants ..... ٨. يحمي



# PART 2

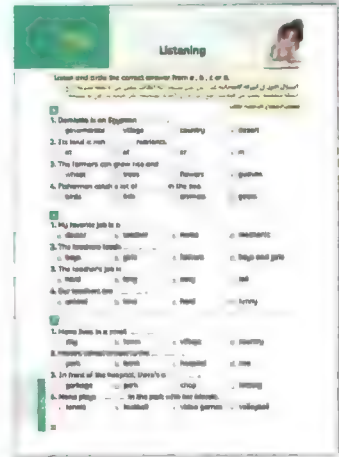
## A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

### اليوم الأول

### Listening

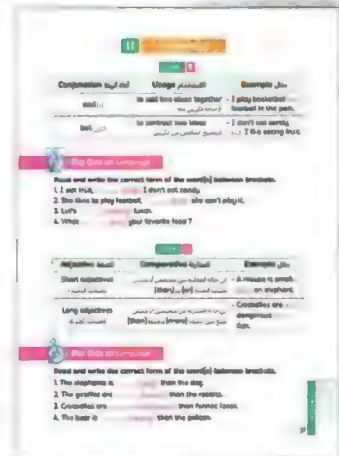
عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على  
افضل درجة في الامتحان.



### اليوم الثاني

### Vocabulary & Language

طريقة جديدة وعملية جدًا لمراجعة كل  
كلمات المنهج.







Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية عبارة عن نص يستمع إليه الطالب مكون من ٤٠ كلمة متبوعة بأربع أسئلة منفصلة. يطلب من الطالب وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة لكل جملة بناءً على ما يسمعه.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

**A**

1. Damietta is an Egyptian .....  
a. governorate    b. village    c. country    d. desert
2. Its land is rich ..... nutrients.  
a. at    b. of    c. or    d. in
3. The farmers can grow rice and .....  
a. wheat    b. trees    c. flowers    d. guavas
4. Fishermen catch a lot of ..... in the sea.  
a. birds    b. fish    c. animals    d. goats

**B**

1. My favorite job is a .....  
a. doctor    b. teacher    c. nurse    d. mechanic
2. The teachers teach .....  
a. boys    b. girls    c. fathers    d. boys and girls
3. The teacher's job is .....  
a. hard    b. long    c. easy    d. tall
4. Our teachers are .....  
a. unkind    b. kind    c. hard    d. funny

**C**

1. Mona lives in a small .....  
a. city    b. town    c. village    d. country
2. Mona's school is next to the .....  
a. park    b. bank    c. hospital    d. zoo
3. In front of the hospital, there's a .....  
a. garbage    b. park    c. shop    d. factory
4. Mona plays ..... in the park with her friends.  
a. tennis    b. football    c. video games    d. volleyball



## Vocabulary & Language

أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية



### I Vocabulary

#### Unit 1

|             |                 |            |              |               |             |
|-------------|-----------------|------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| produce     | ينتج            | emperor    | إمبراطور     | food          | طعام        |
| competition | منافسة / مسابقة | ready      | جاهز         | palace        | قصر         |
| grow        | يزرع / ينمو     | gardener   | بستاني       | raise chicken | يربي دجاج   |
| honest      | أمين / صادق     | wheelchair | كرسي متحرك   | honesty       | أمانة / صدق |
| scientist   | عالِم           | rich in    | غنية بـ      | healthy       | صحي         |
| governorate | محافظة          | sport      | رياضة        | fisherman     | صياد سمك    |
| lie         | يكذب            | nutrients  | عناصر غذائية | king          | ملك         |



#### Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Egyptian farmers ..... chickens.  
a. bring      b. give      c. lay      d. raise
- Egyptian farmers ..... onions, rice and many other things.  
a. make      b. do      c. grow      d. keep
- The land in Damietta is ..... in nutrients.  
a. famous      b. kind      c. rich      d. happy
- Lunch is ..... I made some special food for us.  
a. ready      b. dirty      c. hungry      d. happy
- My dad is a ..... He likes looking at animals and plants.  
a. plumber      b. scientist      c. doctor      d. driver

#### Unit 2

|            |                      |            |                |        |              |
|------------|----------------------|------------|----------------|--------|--------------|
| snake      | ثعبان                | perfect    | مثالي          | insect | حشرة         |
| pelican    | بجعة                 | lizard     | سحلية          | claw   | مخالب حيوان  |
| crocodile  | تمساح                | paw        | كف حيوان       | spider | عنكبوت       |
| beak       | منقار                | camel      | جمل            | bear   | دب           |
| noisy      | مزعج - مليء بالضوضاء | rhinoceros | غزال الرنم     | desert | صحراء        |
| fennec fox | ثعلب الفنك           | flat       | مسطحة / مستوية | coat   | فراء [حيوان] |
| feet       | أقدام                | horns      | قرون [حيوان]   | scary  | مخيف         |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Camels are ..... for the desert life.  
a. difficult      b. easy      c. kind      d. perfect
- Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .....  
a. wires      b. coats      c. feathers      d. months
- The fennec fox lives in the ..... of North Africa.  
a. deserts      b. rainforests      c. grasslands      d. rivers
- Farmers like ..... because they eat insects.  
a. crocodiles      b. snakes      c. spiders      d. bears
- Camels are very ..... but they can get angry.  
a. noisy      b. perfect      c. kind      d. delicious

### Unit 3

|           |                 |                     |               |              |                  |
|-----------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| roots     | جذور            | farm                | مزرعة         | shoot        | برعم - نبتة      |
| rainwater | مياه الأمطار    | seeds               | بذور          | dry          | جاف              |
| soil      | تربة زراعية     | land                | أرض           | leaf         | ورقة شجر         |
| life      | حياة            | germination process | عملية الإنبات | sandals      | صندل [حذاء صيفي] |
| sunflower | زهرة عباد الشمس | life cycle          | دورة الحياة   | agricultural | زراعي            |
| basket    | سلة             | living things       | كائنات حية    | papyrus      | نبات البردي      |
| habitat   | موطن - بيئة     | balcony             | بلكونة [شرفة] | water        | بروي - يسقى      |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The Ancient Egyptians made paper from .....  
a. iron      b. metal      c. skin      d. papyrus
- A/An ..... is a place where living things live and grow.  
a. office      b. school      c. habitat      d. library
- Farmers work in the ..... habitat.  
a. agricultural      b. desert      c. rivers      d. lakes
- When we plant a seed and the plant grows, this is called .....  
a. transportation      b. germination      c. information      d. evaporation
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. leaves      b. flowers      c. seeds      d. roots

## Unit 4

|             |                   |                     |                     |               |               |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|
| house       | منزل              | apartment           | شقة سكنية           | tourist boat  | قارب سياحي    |
| bazaar      | بازار (سوق تجاري) | go on safaris       | يذهب في رحلات سفاري | street        | شارع          |
| houseboat   | منزل على قارب     | school              | مدرسة               | Turn left !   | اتجه يساراً ! |
| Turn right! | اتجه يميناً !     | Go straight ahead ! |                     | shopping mall | مركز تسوق     |
| supermarket | متجر كبير         |                     | سربشكل مستقيم !     | bathroom      | دورة مياه     |
| bedroom     | حجرة نوم          | post office         | مكتب بريد           | save          | ينقذ          |
| office      | مكتب              | living room         | حجرة معيشة          |               |               |
| hospital    | مستشفى            | tent                | خيمة                |               |               |



### Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- People in the desert live in a/an .....  
a. tent      b. street      c. apartment      d. houseboat
- The ..... is where we go when we are sick.  
a. post office      b. school      c. hospital      d. supermarket
- A lot of ..... visit Hurghada. They enjoy the nice weather.  
a. tourists      b. thieves      c. clubs      d. rides
- Tourists usually go on ..... when they are in the Sahara Desert.  
a. visits      b. picnics      c. tents      d. safaris
- The ..... is the place where I learn.  
a. school      b. hospital      c. office      d. supermarket

## Unit 5

|              |                       |                   |               |                |               |
|--------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| electrician  | فني كهرباء            | parcel            | طرد           | plumber        | سباك          |
| screwdriver  | مفك براغي             | garbage collector | جامع القمامة  | tape measure   | شريط القياس   |
| mechanic     | ميكانيكي              | blocks            | مكعبات (لعبة) | fix            | يصلح          |
| curious      | محب للإستطلاع / فضولي | bus driver        | سائق حافلة    | pros and cons  | مزايا وعيوب   |
| mail carrier | ساعي البريد           | lightning         | ظاهرة البرق   | messy          | فوضوي         |
| socket       | مقبس كهرباء           | faucet            | صنبور ماء     | electric shock | صدمة كهربائية |
| pipe         | ماسورة - أنبوب        | plug              | قابس (فيشة)   | storm          | عاصفة         |





## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An ..... fixes pipes and faucets.  
a. mechanic      b. plumber      c. bus driver      d. electrician
2. A/An ..... takes the trash.  
a. garbage collector      b. mail carrier  
c. plumber      d. electrician
3. Never put anything into a ....., only use plugs.  
a. tape      b. box      c. bin      d. socket
4. She loved to experiment. She was very .....  
a. sad      b. angry      c. curious      d. lazy
5. The electricians connect ....., so that we can use lights.  
a. bus      b. bag      c. garbage      d. electricity

## Unit 6

|                  |               |              |                   |           |                |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|-----------|----------------|
| fisherman        | صياد سمك      | disappointed | محبط              | encourage | يشجع           |
| guide            | مرشد سياحي    | engine       | محرك              | farmer    | فلاح / مزارع   |
| education        | تعليم         | librarian    | أمين مكتبة        | respect   | احترام / يحترم |
| tourism industry | صناعة السياحة | shelf        | رف                | get off   | ينزل           |
| surprising       | مفاجئ - مذهش  | renewable    | متجدد             | patient   | صبور           |
| non-renewable    | غير متجدد     | cut down     | يقطع              | fresh     | طازج           |
| catch            | يصادد         | fish van     | شاحنة بيع الأسماك | job       | وظيفة          |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The fisherman ..... a lot of fish.  
a. catches      b. grows      c. takes      d. drives
2. A ..... works in the tourism industry.  
a. librarian      b. guide      c. farmer      d. fisherman
3. I respect the ..... . I put my book back on the shelf.  
a. bus driver      b. librarian      c. cleaner      d. teacher
4. A ..... works on the sea.  
a. librarian      b. fisherman      c. guide      d. farmer
5. The person who grows plants is called a/an .....  
a. farmer      b. guide      c. fisherman      d. engineer

## II

## Language

### Unit 1

| Conjunction أداة الربط | Usage الاستخدام                                    | Example مثال   |
|------------------------|--|--|
| and [و]                | to add two ideas together<br>لإضافة فكرتين معًا    | - I play basketball <b>and</b> football in the park. |
| but [لكن]              | to contrast two ideas<br>لتوضيح التناقض بين فكرتين | - I don't eat candy, <b>but</b> I like eating fruit. |



### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I eat fruit, ..... [and] I don't eat candy.
- She likes to play football, ..... [and] she can't play it.
- Let's ..... [eating] lunch.
- What ..... [are] your favorite food ?

### Unit 2

| Adjective الصفة                    | Comparative المقارنة  | Example مثال  |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| Short adjectives<br>الصفات القصيرة | في حالة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين<br>تضيف للصفة [er] ثم [than]          | - A mouse is <b>smaller</b> <b>than</b> an elephant.            |
| Long adjectives<br>الصفات الطويلة  | في حالة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين<br>نضع قبل الصفة [more] وبعدها [than] | - Crocodiles are <b>more</b> <b>dangerous</b> <b>than</b> fish. |



### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The elephants is ..... [big] than the dog.
- The giraffes are ..... [heavy] than the rabbits.
- Crocodiles are ..... [dangerous] than fennec foxes.
- The bear is ..... [strong] than the pelican.

### Unit 3

| Adjective الصفه                    | Superlative التفضيل   | Example مثال  |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| Short adjectives<br>الصفات القصيرة | في حالة المقارنة بين أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين [تفضيل] نضيف للصفة القصيرة [est] ونضع قبلها [the] | - A reed is <b>the tallest</b> plant.                   |
| Long adjectives<br>الصفات الطويلة  | في حالة المقارنة بين أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين [تفضيل] نضع قبل الصفة الطويلة [the most]          | - I think the rose is <b>the most beautiful</b> flower. |



#### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Nada is a very ..... [beauty] girl.
- I have the ..... [heavy] bag.
- Snakes are the ..... [more] dangerous animals.
- The sunflower is ..... [than] tallest.

### Unit 4

| Prepositions of place<br>حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان | Giving directions<br>إعطاء الاتجاهات  |
|---|---|
| above فوق   | سر بشكل مستقيم / للأمام.<br>اتجه يسارًا / يمينًا.<br>إنه في الزاوية.<br>Go straight ahead.<br>Turn left / right.<br>It's on the corner. |
| behind خلف  |   |
| between بين                                       |   |
| in front of أمام                                  |   |
| next to بجوار / بجانب                             |   |



#### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The school is in front ..... [on] the bank.
- The park is next ..... [of] the museum.
- Ali ..... [live] in Hurgada.
- Go straight ahead and then ..... [turns] right.



## Unit 5

| Demonstrative pronoun<br>ضمير إشارة | Use الاستخدام               | Example مثال   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| This is ... هذا يكون ..             | للإشارة إلى شيء قريب مفرد   | - <b>This</b> is the socket the electrician is fixing. |
| These are ... هؤلاء يكونوا ..       | للإشارة إلى أشياء قريبة جمع | - <b>These</b> are the plumber's tools.                |
| That is ... ذلك يكون ..             | للإشارة إلى شيء بعيد مفرد   | - <b>That's</b> the mail carrier's parcel.             |
| Those are ... أولئك يكونوا ..       | للإشارة إلى أشياء بعيدة جمع | - <b>Those</b> drivers are driving the new buses.      |



### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I like ..... [**this**] flowers.
- ..... [**These**] rabbit is white.
- That ..... [**are**] your ball.
- Yesterday, he ..... [**watch**] TV.

## Unit 6

The prefix "dis-" means "not"

تعني "البادئة -" "dis" (ليس)

dis + main verb = not + main verb  
dis + like = not + like

He dislikes ice cream.

هو لا يحب الآيس كريم.



### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- She ..... [**water**] the plant every day.
- Do you ..... [**likes**] English ?
- Ali ..... [**live**] in Cairo.
- He didn't pass the exam. He was ..... [**appointed**].

### III The most important 20 correction sentences

الهدف من هذا الجزء : تجميع أهم ٢٠ فكرة مختلفة وردت في سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء في اختبارات المحافظات للأعوام السابقة.

| Sentence   | Correction   | Reason  |
|--|--------------|---|
| 1. I want to be healthy, ..... [and]<br>I don't like sports. | but          | نستخدم [but]<br>لوجود تناقض بين الجملتين.                       |
| 2. Omar is kind ..... [but] helpful.                         | and          | نستخدم [and]<br>لربط فكرتين مقًا                                |
| 3. Horses are ..... [most] beautiful<br>than camels.         | more         | نستخدم [more] مع [than]<br>لمقارنة الصفات الطويلة               |
| 4. How ..... [tall] does the camel live ?                    | long         | نستخدم [How long]<br>للسؤال عن المدة                            |
| 5. The sunflower is the ..... [taller]<br>flower.            | tallest      | نضيف للصفة [est] بعد [the] في<br>حالة التفضيل مع الصفات القصيرة |
| 6. Lara is a ..... [beauty] girl.                            | beautiful    | نضيف للكلمة [ful]<br>لتحويلها إلى صفة                           |
| 7. .... [What] is the tree?<br>- In front of the house.      | Where        | نستخدم [Where]<br>للسؤال عن مكان                                |
| 8. The chair is next ..... [of] the table.                   | to           | نستخدم [to] بعد [next]  |
| 9. .... [Are] this your school?                              | Is           | نستخدم [Is] مع [this]   |
| 10. These ..... [child] are playing.                         | children     | نستخدم [جمع] لوجود<br>[These] ولوجود [are]                      |
| 11. He is ..... [appointed]. He couldn't<br>win.             | disappointed | نستخدم [disappointed] بمعنى<br>محبط بسبب عدم استطاعته الفوز     |
| 12. Cheetah is the ..... [fast] animal.                      | fastest      | نستخدم [صيغة تفضيل] نضيف<br>للصفة القصيرة [est] بعد the         |
| 13. The armchair is ..... [next] of the<br>bookcase.         | in front     | نستخدم [in front] لوجود of                                      |

|  |         |  |
|--|---------|--|
| 14. .... [Who] big is the daisy?<br>It's a big flower. | How     | نستخدم (How) مع (big)<br>للسؤال عن الحجم                               |
| 15. The train is .... [fastest] than the bus.          | faster  | نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er)<br>وبعدها than للمقارنة                        |
| 16. The ball is .... [on] the bed and the table.       | between | نستخدم (between) لوجود مكانين  |
| 17. Those .... [is] my pencils.                        | are     | نستخدم (are) مع (Those)  |
| 18. How .... [heavy] is the horse?<br>- It's 88 kph.   | fast    | تم ذكر السرعة في الإجابة<br>لذلك نستخدم (How fast)<br>للسؤال عن السرعة |
| 19. .... [Taking] the second left.                     | Take    | نستخدم (مصدر الفعل) لإعطاء تعليمات                                     |
| 20. I want to .... [being] an engineer.                | be      | نستخدم (مصدر الفعل) بعد want to  |

تدريبات على السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان طبقاً لوحدات المنهج.

• Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

## Unit 1

### - Conjunctions

1. In summer, it's dry ..... [but] hot.
2. I want to be healthy, ..... [and] I don't like vegetables.
3. I want to play football, ..... [and] I hurt my leg.
4. I can speak English ..... [or] French.
5. That cat is cute ..... [but] quiet.
6. I like reading stories ..... [but] I like watching films, too.

## Unit 2

### - Comparative adjectives

### - Questions with "How .... ?"

1. The whale is ..... [big] than the shark.
2. The giraffe is ..... [tall] than the lion.
3. Cats are nicer ..... [than] dogs.
4. Crocodiles are ..... [many] dangerous than turtles.
5. How ..... [tall] does the horse live ? - About 25 - 30 years.
6. Fruit and vegetables are ..... [healthy] than candies.
7. How ..... [long] is the horse ? - It's 88 kph.
8. Horses are ..... [most] beautiful than camels.



## Unit 3

### - Superlative adjectives

### - The suffix "-ful"

1. Elephants are the ..... [bigger] animals.
2. Crocodiles and snakes are the ..... [more] dangerous animals.
3. This cat is the ..... [nice] in our street.
4. Which animal is the ..... [scary] ?
5. The sunflower is ..... [that] tallest flower.
6. The rose is the ..... [more] beautiful flower.
7. Salma is a ..... [beauty] girl.
8. My brother likes ..... [colorfully] flowers.
9. Ali is a ..... [care] driver. He drives carefully.
10. My car is the ..... [fast] one.

## Unit 4

### - Prepositions of place

### - Asking about place

1. .... [How] is my book ? - On the table.
2. I like sitting ..... [above] the couch.
3. The cat is ..... [on] front of the tree.
4. The school is next ..... [of] the post office.
5. The children are sitting ..... [above] to the tree.
6. There is a chair ..... [in] to the table.
7. My car is ..... [in] the bike and the bus.

## Unit 5

### - Demonstrative pronouns

1. My father bought those ..... [toy] for me.
2. .... [Are] this his house ?
3. Those ..... [plumber] fix the pipes.
4. This ..... [are] the mail carrier.
5. That ..... [are] your pen.
6. These ..... [mechanic] work in the repair shop.

## Unit 6

### - What we want to be

### - The prefix "dis-"

1. What do you ..... [wanted] to be ?
2. The cat ..... [appeared]. I can't see it.
3. He wants to ..... [being] an engineer.
4. The girl is ..... [appointed], she didn't pass the exam.



★ Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A**

books - interesting - history - Egypt - tourism

I'm Kareem. I am Egyptian. I'm a guide. I work in the [1] ..... industry. Many people come to visit [2] ..... every year. There are many [3] ..... places to visit in Egypt. It's my job to explain the [4] ..... to the tourists.

**B**

heat - eyes - small - fur - ears

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. Its [1] ..... are big. It eats insects and [2] ..... mice. It's hot in the desert during the day. The fennec fox loses [3] ..... from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick [4] ..... keeps it warm.

**C**

color - helped - touched - very - beautiful

My house is old. I wanted to make it [1] ..... I repainted it. The new [2] ..... was green and red. My friends [3] ..... me. We were [4] ..... happy.

**D**

mechanic - faucets - lights - cleaner - electrician

We have a big house. A [1] ..... keeps our house clean. An [2] ..... connected electricity, so we can use the [3] ..... A plumber connected the pipes and [4] ..... , so we can have water. We like our house very much.

★ Read the text and answer the questions.

- 1** I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- This text is about "The ..... job".  
a. doctor's      b. teacher's      c. engineer's      d. farmer's
- Teachers need to be very .....  
a. nervous      b. patient      c. unkind      d. ugly

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why is the job of a teacher the best ?

.....

4. Who can change the students' lives ?

.....

- 2** When Dalia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she became older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Dalia when you want to change something in your house.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The text talks about " ..... ".  
a. Dalia's sister      b. Dalia      c. Mona      d. Heba
- Dalia always carried a .....  
a. doll      b. dog      c. tape measure      d. pen

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. When can you call Dalia ?

.....

4. What did she start making when she was older ?

.....





## السؤال الخامس في الورقة الامتحانية

★ Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I love burgers, ..... [or] I only eat one a week.
2. I speak English ..... [but] French.
3. The crocodile is ..... [big] than the snake.
4. The elephant is the ..... [fat] animal.
5. Excuse me, ..... [when] is the post office ?
6. The library is the ..... [quiet] place to study in.
7. Which fruit is the ..... [more] expensive in the supermarket ?
8. The hospital is next ..... [of] the school.

## السؤال السادس في الورقة الامتحانية

★ Punctuate the following.

1. hurghada is on the Red Sea  
.....
2. crocodiles are dangerous animals  
.....
3. which is your favorite room  
.....
4. i think crocodiles are scary  
.....
5. egyptian farmers produce many things  
.....
6. The land in damietta governorate is rich in nutrients  
.....
7. the hospital is next to the school  
.....



## Important paragraphs

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية (للمزيد من التدريب على الموضوعات في نهاية كتاب الشرح)

### "Food in Egypt"

Egyptian farmers produce many things. We grow rice in Egypt. We grow tomatoes and onions. We raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

### "The life cycle of a tomato"

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

### "Mechanics"

My favorite job is a mechanic. The mechanics work in the repair shop. They fix the cars and buses. The mechanic's job is very important. The mechanic is fixing my dad's car. He is clever.

### "Desert habitat"

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. In the desert, there isn't much rain. Plants that live in it don't need a lot of water. It's very hot in the desert.

### "Rhim gazelle"

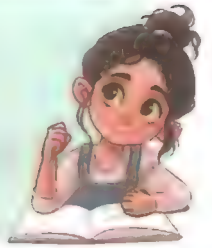
Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun.

### "Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job"

I'm happy to write this email to you. There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. They speak to a lot of people. The mail bag is very heavy. He wakes up very early. Every body likes getting mails, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

### "Life on the farm"

I'm happy to write this email to you. I live on a farm with my family. We use plants to make the land green. We use rainwater to water the seeds. We bring animals to the land. We grow rice, tomatoes and wheat. We love our farm.



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Snakes and crocodiles are very .....  
a. nice                      b. funny                      c. dangerous                      d. cute
- ..... eat insects, birds and lizards.  
a. Snakes                      b. Chickens                      c. Goats                      d. Camels
- All animals are .....  
a. funny                      b. dangerous                      c. unimportant                      d. important
- Crocodiles ..... a very important job.  
a. make                      b. do                      c. play                      d. cut

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Watermelons and ..... are my favorite fruits.  
a. potatoes                      b. onions                      c. peppers                      d. grapes
- I live in a/an ..... I like living on the water.  
a. houseboat                      b. apartment                      c. tent                      d. house
- Nadia loves to eat fruit and vegetables. She is very .....  
a. angry                      b. healthy                      c. unhealthy                      d. sad
- He was sick, so he went to .....  
a. office                      b. school                      c. hospital                      d. supermarket

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

electrician - collector - wires - pipes - bus driver

All jobs are important. The garbage [1] ..... takes away the garbage. He keeps our houses clean. The [2] ..... connects the electricity, so I can use the computer. The plumber connects the [3] ..... and faucets. The [4] ..... drives students to school.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My dad is an electrician. He connects electricity to houses. He helps people use lights, watch TV and use computers. Electricity is important, but it can harm us, too. My dad works safely with electricity. He uses a screwdriver and never touches electrical things with wet hands. He never puts anything in a socket. Also an electrician's job is very dangerous, but my dad loves it because this job makes things work !



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Dad ..... touches electrical things with wet hands.  
a. always                      b. sometimes                      c. doesn't                      d. never
2. This text is about the..... job.  
a. doctor's                      b. teacher's                      c. electrician's                      d. farmer's

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the electrician do ?  
.....
4. How can we work safely with electricity ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. The wolf is ..... [most] dangerous than the camel.
2. A : Where's your house ?                      B : It's ..... [in] the corner.
3. How ..... [tall] is the cat ? - It's two kilos.
4. I like chocolate ..... [but] ice cream.

**6 Punctuate the following.**  
we chew food with our teeth  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Horses"**

- Guiding elements :** - big                      - carry
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The fennec fox lives in the .....  
a. rainforest      b. desert      c. sea      d. mangrove
- The fennec fox is ..... than other foxes.  
a. smaller      b. bigger      c. taller      d. shorter
- Its ears are .....  
a. small      b. short      c. big      d. happy
- The fennec fox has thick ..... to stay warm.  
a. feather      b. skin      c. fur      d. leaves

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We can buy food from the .....  
a. supermarket      b. hospital      c. post office      d. library
- Lots of ..... go to the Sahara Desert on safaris.  
a. doctors      b. nurses      c. boys      d. tourists
- The ..... waters the plants.  
a. teacher      b. doctor      c. gardener      d. scientist
- I like fruits like apples and .....  
a. milk      b. bananas      c. chickens      d. potatoes

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

people – carrier – day – doctor – job

I am Ali. I work as a mail [1] ..... I walk all [2] ..... and get a lot of exercise. I see different [3] ..... every day. My [4] ..... is difficult, but I like it very much.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Crock is a young crocodile. He's two years old. Crock is green and has got a big mouth with lots of teeth. Crock has a long tail. Crock lives in hot places and dirty water that helps it to hide. Crock eats rabbits and birds. It can swim and stay under water. Crock sleeps with an eye open.

Big crocodiles can eat people and big animals, they are very dangerous. We can see crocodiles in the zoo and on TV.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Crock has got a big mouth with lots of .....  
a. nails                      b. fingers                      c. teeth                      d. hands
2. Crock has a long .....  
a. tail                      b. neck                      c. leg                      d. eye

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Crock live ?  
.....
4. What does Crock eat ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. .... [When] does Mohamed live ? - He lives in a big city.
2. The office is ..... [under] to the shop.
3. I want to ..... [is] a doctor.
4. I love ..... [made] cakes.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

ahmed and Hazem are friends

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"My house"**

**Guiding elements :** - bedrooms                      - kitchen

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- My house is .....  
a. small                      b. big                      c. bad                      d. messy
- I can play in the .....  
a. bedroom                      b. kitchen                      c. bathroom                      d. garden
- My favorite room is the .....  
a. living room                      b. bedroom                      c. dining room                      d. bathroom
- I can see the whole street from the .....  
a. TV                      b. sofa                      c. balcony                      d. radio

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We use ..... to make sugar.  
a. onions                      b. sugarcane                      c. rice                      d. tomatoes
- Horses eat grass and drink ..... water.  
a. unhealthy                      b. salt                      c. sea                      d. fresh
- We go to ..... when we are sick.  
a. hospital                      b. office                      c. school                      d. beach
- The ..... helps me in the library.  
a. singer                      b. plumber                      c. driver                      d. librarian

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

Plumbers – catch – rice – Mail – Teachers

All jobs are important. Farmers grow [1] ..... Fishermen [2] ..... fish in the sea. [3] ..... fix faucets and connect pipes. [4] ..... carriers deliver parcels.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It is smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. It needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It loses heat from its ears during the day. At night, its thick fur keeps it warm.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about the .....  
a. river                      b. farmers                      c. snakes                      d. fennec fox
2. It weighs around ..... kilogram.  
a. three                      b. one                      c. half                      d. two

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the fennec fox eat ?  
.....
4. Where does the fennec fox live ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. It's in ..... [ next ] of the school.
2. The elephant is the ..... [ bigger ] animal.
3. These ..... [ is ] pens.
4. I eat chicken, ..... [ and ] I don't eat pizza.

**6 Punctuate the following.**  
he lives in an apartment  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Camels"**

**Guiding elements :** - perfect                      - without water

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Hossam moved to a new apartment last .....  
a. week                      b. month                      c. night                      d. year
- Hossam's apartment is .....  
a. fantastic                      b. ugly                      c. bad                      d. small
- Hossam's favorite room is the .....  
a. living room                      b. kitchen                      c. bedroom                      d. dining room
- The new apartment has a/an ..... balcony.  
a. old                      b. new                      c. short                      d. big

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is .....  
a. healthy                      b. scary                      c. tired                      d. unhealthy
- The fennec fox has thick .....  
a. mouth                      b. fur                      c. eye                      d. head
- A mail carrier brings us .....  
a. pipes                      b. faucets                      c. parcels                      d. cars
- Farmers in my country ..... chickens and cows.  
a. plant                      b. grow                      c. make                      d. raise

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

food – supermarket – fresh – office – kind

This is Hana. She works at the (1) ..... near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy (2) ..... Hana checks the food is (3) ..... She helps us when we can't find something. She is very (4) ..... We all love her.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Alexandria is a big city in Egypt. It is in the north of Egypt on the sea. About 5 million people live in this part of Egypt. I visit Alexandria with my family in the summer. We go by bus. When we go to Alexandria, I swam in the sea with my brothers and sisters. Alexandria is famous for its amazing beaches and Alexandria Library. Tourists like to visit Alexandria governorate.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about .....  
a. Damietta                      b. Cairo                      c. Alexandria                      d. Aswan
2. I visit Alexandria with my family in the .....  
a. summer                      b. winter                      c. fall                      d. spring

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where is Alexandria ?  
.....
4. How many people live in Alexandria ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. Camels are ..... [tall] than horses.
2. The mechanic ..... [fix] cars and buses.
3. .... [That] bird is so near. I can see it well.
4. Do you like ..... [help] people ?

**6 Punctuate the following.**

We grow cotton in egypt  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Different jobs"**

**Guiding elements :**

- Which job is the most interesting ? Why ?
  - What is your dream job ?
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The ..... habitat doesn't have much rain.  
a. lakes                      b. rivers                      c. desert                      d. agricultural
- The plants don't need a lot of ..... in the desert.  
a. seeds                      b. water                      c. soil                      d. wind
- ..... work in the agricultural habitat.  
a. Farmers                      b. Mechanics                      c. Cleaners                      d. Plumbers
- Plants that live ..... the rivers and lakes need a lot of water.  
a. on                      b. above                      c. under                      d. near

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- He can't walk, so he uses a/an ..... to move.  
a. armchair                      b. wheelchair                      c. couch                      d. bed
- Camels have ..... feet, so they can walk on the sand.  
a. flat                      b. long                      c. tall                      d. heavy
- They work on a tourist ..... on the Nile.  
a. car                      b. bus                      c. train                      d. boat
- If we get an electrical ....., we can't control our bodies.  
a. shake                      b. cheek                      c. check                      d. shock

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

street – fantastic – relax – drive – balcony

Look at my lovely new apartment. It's [1] ..... . My favorite room is the living room with the [2] ..... that I can see the whole [3] ..... . My sister loves her bedroom because she can [4] ..... in it.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Mrs Hana is a cook. She works in a school kitchen. She cooks lunch for students every week. She makes pies, sandwiches and beefburgers. She cooks meat, fish and vegetables, too. She washes hundreds of dishes every week! The students like her delicious meals. Today, she is at home and she is making an apple pie. She is cooking lunch for two people herself and her son.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about ".....".  
a. Food                      b. A cook                      c. Fish                      d. Lunch
2. The underlined word "delicious" means ..... to eat.  
a. bad                      b. harmful                      c. dangerous                      d. nice

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Mrs Hana work ?  
.....
4. What is Mrs Hana cooking today at home ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. .... [That] mountains are very high.
2. The trees are ..... [above] of the apartments.
3. Lions are ..... [dangerous] than cows.
4. He can speak English, ..... [and] he can't speak French.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

the bear is a big animal  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Egyptian food"**

**Guiding elements :** - delicious

- dishes

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Camels are ..... !  
a. amazing                      b. ugly                      c. boring                      d. bad
- Camels can ..... things and people to cross the desert.  
a. sleep                      b. carry                      c. eat                      d. live
- We can use camels' ..... to make clothes.  
a. nose                      b. ears                      c. meat                      d. fur
- Camels are perfect for the .....  
a. river                      b. flat                      c. house                      d. desert

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Camels can live without ..... for a long time.  
a. clothes                      b. water                      c. fur                      d. feet
- The ..... grow under the soil.  
a. shoots                      b. flowers                      c. roots                      d. fruits
- I like sitting in the ..... to see the whole street.  
a. kitchen                      b. bathroom                      c. dinning room                      d. balcony
- The plumber fixes the pipes and .....  
a. faucets                      b. electricity                      c. parcels                      d. lights

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

leaves – roots – shoot – water – seeds

Farmers put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and [1] ..... , so it can grow. The seed grows [2] ..... under the soil. Then it grows a [3] ..... and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows [4] ..... and flowers. This is called the germination process.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician makes things work. A garbage collector takes out the trash. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. A mechanic fixes cars and buses. All these workers should work together to help and make our life easier.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about ".....".  
a. Food                      b. Animals                      c. Jobs                      d. Places
2. The word "....." in the text means garbage.  
a. trash                      b. faucets                      c. parcels                      d. places

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does a mechanic do ?
- .....
4. Why should all workers work together ?
- .....

**5** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I play basketball ..... **[but]** football.
2. The bear is ..... **[strong]** than the pelican.
3. The cat is ..... **[next]** the bed and the table.
4. When my sister ..... **[is]** a child, she played with the blocks.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

what does the bus driver do

**7** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

## "My house"

**Guiding elements :** - next to

- balcony

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We put a seed in the ..... .  
a. soil                      b. sky                      c. sea                      d. plant
2. The seed needs sunlight and ..... to grow.  
a. juice                      b. sugar                      c. water                      d. seeds
3. The seed grows ..... under the soil.  
a. flowers                      b. roots                      c. shoots                      d. leaves
4. The plant grows leaves and ..... .  
a. flowers                      b. seeds                      c. roots                      d. shoots

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I'm ..... of my father because he could save the child.  
a. proud                      b. angry                      c. worried                      d. sad
2. In a ..... , someone tries to win.  
a. palace                      b. competition                      c. germination                      d. life cycle
3. Fruits are ..... and healthy.  
a. hot                      b. salty                      c. sweet                      d. busy
4. He works with tourists. He is a ..... .  
a. guide                      b. plumber                      c. doctor                      d. farmer

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

special - carry - feet - fur - feathers

Camels are amazing animals. They have large, flat [1] ..... , so they can walk on the sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. They have [2] ..... ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. We can use their [3] ..... to make clothes. Camels can help us to [4] ..... things.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Noura moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big and near Noura's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Noura's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Noura can see the street from the balcony.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about "Noura's .....".  
a. school                      b. apartment                      c. family                      d. room
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a/an .....  
a. kitchen                      b. apartment                      c. living room                      d. bedroom

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What can Noura see from the balcony ?  
.....
4. How many bedrooms does the apartment have ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. I like chocolate ..... [but] ice cream.
2. A mouse is ..... [small] than an elephant.
3. The opposite of "appear" is ..... [unappear].
4. These ..... [is] my books.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

where does the farmer work  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Rhim gazelles"**

**Guiding elements :** - Sahara Desert                      - long horns

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Mona works at the ..... .  
a. bank                      b. school                      c. hospital                      d. supermarket
- We see Mona when we buy ..... .  
a. wood                      b. food                      c. clothes                      d. books
- Mona checks the food is ..... .  
a. fresh                      b. dirty                      c. salty                      d. ugly
- Mona is very ..... and happy.  
a. rude                      b. busy                      c. kind                      d. bad

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Some birds have long ..... .  
a. hands                      b. horns                      c. faces                      d. beaks
- It is very ..... in the desert during the day.  
a. hot                      b. tall                      c. high                      d. cold
- I go to the ..... to buy clothes and shoes.  
a. school                      b. office                      c. hospital                      d. shopping mall
- Tomatoes are ..... before they are red.  
a. green                      b. yellow                      c. brown                      d. pink

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

biggest - Nile - family - village - bed

My friend Salah lives in a [1] ..... . It's next to the [2] ..... .  
He lives with his [3] ..... . He has a brother and a sister. He lives in  
a house. It's the [4] ..... house in the village. Salah is a good boy.  
He helps his mom.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

There are many beautiful animals that live in the desert. Rhim gazelles are one of them. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about "The .....".  
a. fennec fox      b. Sahara Desert      c. rhim gazelles      d. plants
2. The underlined word "beautiful" means .....  
a. hard      b. ugly      c. small      d. lovely

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where do rhim gazelles live ?  
.....
4. Why do rhim gazelles have yellow-white coats ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. The giraffes are the ..... [tall] animals.
2. She likes to play football, ..... [and] she can't play it well.
3. This ..... [are] the socket the electrician is fixing.
4. Let's ..... [having] our breakfast.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

He lives is cairo  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

"How do you show respect ?"

Guiding elements : - teacher

- librarian

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Ali lives in a/an ..... with his family.  
a. house                      b. apartment                      c. tent                      d. boat
- Ali's house is the ..... in the village.  
a. smallest                      b. biggest                      c. nicest                      d. shortest
- It's ..... a yellow house and a brown house.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. between                      d. above
- There are ..... trees behind the house.  
a. tall                      b. short                      c. small                      d. thin

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- I live in a/an ..... . It's made of cloth.  
a. houseboat                      b. apartment                      c. tent                      d. house
- We ..... respect to our teachers.  
a. show                      b. blow                      c. grow                      d. play
- The ..... is the place where we learn.  
a. park                      b. school                      c. mall                      d. hospital
- The garbage collectors take away our .....  
a. pipes                      b. garage                      c. water                      d. garbage

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

color – helped – touched – very – beautiful

My house is old. I wanted to make it [1] ..... I repainted it. The new [2] ..... was green and red. My friends [3] ..... me. We were [4] ..... happy .

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

There are many beautiful animals that live in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They don't like to drink a lot of water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ".....".  
a. Rhim gazelles      b. Goats      c. Camels      d. Roses
2. The underlined word "protect" means to keep them .....  
a. bad      b. sad      c. safe      d. angry

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do rhim gazelles eat ?  
.....
4. How do rhim gazelles look ?  
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. These ..... [is] the plumber's tools.
2. My house is ..... [behind] to the school.
3. Let's ..... [has] lunch.
4. A rat is ..... [small] than a cat.

6 Punctuate the following.

i live in Cairo  
.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"My home"

Guiding elements : - big      - rooms

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The land in Damietta governorate is rich in .....  
a. sports                      b. nutrients                      c. seeds                      d. weather
- The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, ..... and guavas.  
a. mango                      b. potatoes                      c. wheat                      d. strawberry
- ..... catch thousands of fish in the sea.  
a. Teachers                      b. Farmers                      c. Engineers                      d. Fishermen
- ..... is good in Damietta.  
a. Reading                      b. Food                      c. Sugar                      d. Life

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- I can relax and ..... my homework in my bedroom.  
a. do                      b. make                      c. watch                      d. get
- Cheng was good at looking ..... his garden.  
a. at                      b. for                      c. after                      d. from
- How ..... does a rhim gazelle live ? - About 14 years.  
a. heavy                      b. long                      c. tall                      d. color
- The fox's thick fur keeps it .....  
a. cold                      b. heat                      c. hot                      d. warm

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

juicy - beak - paw - hungry - thirsty

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very [1] ..... They are both looking at a big, [2] ..... fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its [3] ..... The pelican opens its [4] ..... It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician fixes sockets. A garbage collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work together to help people and make their life easier.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We need a/an ..... to fix sockets.  
a. electrician      b. plumber      c. bus driver      d. mail carrier
2. The underlined word garbage means .....  
a. faucet      b. trash      c. pipe      d. letter

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does a plumber do ?  
.....
4. Why is the job of a bus driver interesting ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. I don't really like ..... [drive].
2. Snakes and crocodiles ..... [be] dangerous.
3. The sunflower is the ..... [big].
4. .... [These] is a garbage collector.

**6 Punctuate the following.**  
what job do you want to do  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Camels"**

**Guiding elements :** - desert

- flat feet

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Samir grows many ..... every year.  
a. rice                      b. fruits                      c. tomatoes                      d. cotton
- He gives the ..... water they need.  
a. flowers                      b. plants                      c. trees                      d. leaves
- Samir sends a lot of fruit to the .....  
a. house                      b. bank                      c. farm                      d. factory
- Samir is a good .....  
a. farmer                      b. teacher                      c. doctor                      d. vet

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Camels are perfect for the .....  
a. river                      b. desert                      c. sea                      d. lake
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. seeds                      b. leaves                      c. roots                      d. nuts
- People in China speak .....  
a. English                      b. Arabic                      c. French                      d. Chinese
- The ..... connects the pipes.  
a. plumber                      b. vet                      c. teacher                      d. driver

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

throw – driver – trash – listen – get

We should show respect to the people around us. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw the [1] ..... in the street. I respect the teacher. I [2] ..... to him carefully. I respect the bus [3] ..... . I say thank you when I [4] ..... off the bus.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Sama. I spend my weekend at home with my family. We have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch, and dinner. I always have milk and eggs for breakfast. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sits together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. I often help her in the kitchen. Today we are having potatoes and chicken. It looks delicious !

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Sama's family has ..... meals every day.  
a. one                      b. two                      c. three                      d. four
2. They are having ..... and chicken for lunch today.  
a. pasta                      b. rice                      c. potatoes                      d. salad

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does Sama have for breakfast ?  
.....
4. What is Sama's favorite meal ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. I want to play, ..... [so] my leg hurts.
2. The cow is ..... [small] than the elephant.
3. The living room is ..... [behind] to the bathroom.
4. .... [This] children are going to school.

**6 Punctuate the following.**  
my favorite animal is the lion  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Fennec foxes"**

- Guiding elements :** - Where do they live ?  
- What do they eat ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Ahmed wants to be a/an .....  
a. doctor                      b. electrician                      c. teacher                      d. engineer
- Electricity is very .....  
a. safe                      b. nice                      c. dangerous                      d. interesting
- You shouldn't touch anything electrical with ..... hands.  
a. wet                      b. dirty                      c. dry                      d. happy
- You never put anything into a ....., only use the plugs.  
a. bag                      b. box                      c. socket                      d. cupboard

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Spiders are ..... insects. People are afraid of them  
a. beautiful                      b. scary                      c. unhelpful                      d. cute
- The boy is ..... He didn't pass the test.  
a. disappointed                      b. happy                      c. good                      d. fine
- We send letters at the .....  
a. hospital                      b. school                      c. supermarket                      d. post office
- The ..... grow above the soil.  
a. roots                      b. shoots                      c. leaves                      d. seeds

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

school - fruits - animals - gets - factory

My grandfather is a farmer. He [1] ..... up early every day. He grows vegetables and [2] ..... He sends a lot of fruits to the [3] ..... to make juice. He keeps [4] ..... for meat and birds for eggs. I visit him on holiday.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruits like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. When they grew up, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees because they are important for our life.



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Mona can see the whole ..... from the balcony.  
a. street                      b. desert                      c. river                      d. village
- The new apartment has ..... rooms.  
a. four                      b. six                      c. five                      d. seven
- Mona likes the .....  
a. balcony                      b. living room                      c. bedroom                      d. kitchen
- The new apartment is .....  
a. small                      b. lovely                      c. not big                      d. bad

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We need to grow ..... to make bread.  
a. lemons                      b. potatoes                      c. wheat                      d. guava
- A ..... is an insect. It gives us honey.  
a. bee                      b. pea                      c. pin                      d. pie
- The air in big cities is ..... because of factories and cars.  
a. fresh                      b. polluted                      c. clean                      d. nice
- Nora is a ..... She delivers parcels to all the city.  
a. doctor                      b. mechanic                      c. plumber                      d. mail carrier

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

hospital - learn - shopping mall - letters - clothes

There are different places in my town. We buy food at the supermarket. We send [1] ..... at the post office. I [2] ..... at school. I buy clothes and shoes at the [3] ..... My mom and dad work in an office. We go to the [4] ..... when we are sick.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Kareem. I live with my family in Ismailia. We have three meals every day : breakfast, lunch and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. Today we are having potatoes and chicken for lunch. It looks delicious !



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We are having potatoes and chicken for ..... today.  
a. breakfast                      b. lunch                      c. dinner                      d. break
2. We have ..... meals every day.  
a. two                      b. one                      c. four                      d. three

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why does Kareem like lunch ?  
.....
4. Where does Kareem's family live ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. The giraffes are the ..... [tall] animals.
2. She likes to play football, ..... [and] she can't play it.
3. This ..... [are] the socket the electrician is fixing.
4. My school is next ..... [two] the park.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

what color are tomatoes  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Agricultural habitat"**

**Guiding elements :** - Where do farmers work ?  
                                    - Which plants grow in the agricultural habitat ?  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Amira is from .....  
a. Cairo                      b. Al-Fayoum                      c. Aswan                      d. Tanta
- Amira's father is a/an .....  
a. teacher                      b. fisherman                      c. engineer                      d. farmer
- Amira's mother is a/an .....  
a. nurse                      b. housewife                      c. teacher                      d. engineer
- Amira's mother likes to help ..... with his work.  
a. Amira's dad                      b. Amira                      c. Amira's brother                      d. grandpa

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Rhim gazelles have big ears and long ..... on their heads.  
a. feet                      b. horns                      c. tails                      d. coats
- Mom says that drinking ..... isn't healthy.  
a. milk                      b. water                      c. juice                      d. cola
- Tomatoes are ..... before they're red.  
a. orange                      b. purple                      c. green                      d. black
- Lara loved to experiment. She was very .....  
a. curious                      b. lazy                      c. sad                      d. angry

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

milk – drink – desert – eat – fur

Camels are strong animals. They can carry people and things across the (1) ..... Their (2) ..... is delicious and we can use their (3) ..... to make clothes. Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't (4) ..... a lot of water.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

The seasons of the year are winter, spring, autumn and summer. We are now in winter. It starts on the 21<sup>st</sup> of December and ends on the 20<sup>th</sup> of March. Fathers and teachers always advise their children. We should wear heavy clothes. It is good to have a lot of hot drinks. Healthy food is very important. We should wash our hands before and after we eat. Sleeping early is a key to good health. Doing sports makes the body strong and fit.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. There are ..... seasons in the year.  
a. two                      b. three                      c. four                      d. five
2. The underlined word "wear" means ..... up.  
a. draw                      b. dress                      c. wash                      d. buy

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What season are we in now ?  
.....
4. Why is doing sports important ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. Camels are ..... [big] than horses.
2. My school is ..... [behind] to my house.
3. The doors ..... [is] open.
4. Mai is tall, ..... [and] Dina is short.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

tomatoes are not vegetables, but fruit  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Fishermen"**

**Guiding elements :**

- Where they work                      - What they do
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The fennec fox lives in the ..... of North Africa.  
a. farm                      b. forest                      c. desert                      d. sea
- The fennec fox has big ..... to hear insects and small animals.  
a. legs                      b. ears                      c. eyes                      d. nose
- The fennec fox eats .....  
a. plants                      b. leaves  
c. fruits                      d. insects and small mice
- The fennec fox weighs around ..... kilogram.  
a. one                      b. ten                      c. three                      d. four

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Farmers grow ..... in Egypt.  
a. goats                      b. chickens                      c. rice                      d. cows
- I can sit and watch TV in the .....  
a. bathroom                      b. balcony                      c. kitchen                      d. living room
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. leaves                      b. roots                      c. seeds                      d. soil
- People in the desert live in .....  
a. apartments                      b. tents                      c. houseboats                      d. houses

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

drink - grass - ugly - beautiful - ears

Rhim gazelles look very [1] ..... . They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat [2] ..... , leaves and plants. They have big [3] ..... and long horns. Like camels, they don't need to [4] ..... a lot of water.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

There are many jobs we can do. They are all important. They help us to have a better life. An electrician connects the electricity. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean. Mail carriers deliver letters and parcels. The bus driver helps us to go to school on time. The mechanic fixes cars and buses. All jobs are important.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about ".....".

- a. Electricity                      b. Jobs                      c. Water                      d. Computers

2. A ..... helps you keep your house nice and clean.

- a. farmer                                      b. mechanic  
c. garbage collector                      d. plumber

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the mechanic do ?

.....

4. Who connects the pipes and faucets ?

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. I want to play football, ..... [and] my leg hurts.

2. Ali is ..... [tall] than Mona.

3. Fishermen ..... [uses] nets to catch fish.

4. The hospital is next ..... [of] the school.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

the fisherman works on a boat

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"My house"**

**Guiding elements : - living room**

**- bedroom**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Horses are ..... animals.  
a. weak                      b. strong                      c. scary                      d. angry
- Horses can live in the .....  
a. sea                      b. river                      c. desert                      d. lake
- Horses have large, beautiful .....  
a. legs                      b. eyes                      c. ears                      d. hands
- They eat ..... and drink fresh water.  
a. grass                      b. fruit                      c. meat                      d. vegetables

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- A/An ..... helps me in the library.  
a. vet                      b. engineer                      c. librarian                      d. guide
- Some birds have long ..... They use them to eat.  
a. pens                      b. beaks                      c. peas                      d. horns
- A/An ..... fixes cars and buses.  
a. mechanic                      b. electrician                      c. dentist                      d. plumber
- I watch TV in the .....  
a. kitchen                      b. bathroom                      c. living room                      d. garage

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

plumber – mechanic – electrician – garbage – bus driver

All jobs are important in our society. A (1) ..... fixes our cars.  
A garbage collector takes away the (2) ..... A mail carrier delivers letters and parcels. A (3) ..... drives students to school.  
An (4) ..... connects electricity so that we can use the lights.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Hi! I'm Jana. I live in Damietta governorate. It's a beautiful place. The land in Damietta is rich in nutrients. The farmers here can grow lots of crops, like rice, tomatoes, potatoes and oranges. Farmers raise sheep, goats and cows. Damiette is famous for Domiati cheese. The weather here is very nice. Some tourists like to come here because the people here are kind and friendly.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The land in Damietta is rich in .....  
a. soil                      b. roots                      c. nutrients                      d. orange
2. Damietta is famous for Domiati .....  
a. cheese                      b. milk                      c. yogurt                      d. butter

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What do the farmers grow ?
- .....
4. What do the farmers raise ?
- .....

**5** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The fennec fox is ..... [small] than other foxes.
2. This ..... [are] my book.
3. I like reading, ..... [and] I don't like watching TV.
4. The rose is the ..... [more] beautiful flower.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i live in a city called Hurghada

**7** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

## "Horses"

**Guiding elements : - strong**

- beautiful

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Cheng was a/an .....  
a. gardener      b. teacher      c. emperor      d. engineer
- Cheng lived in .....  
a. Egypt      b. China      c. France      d. Canada
- The emperor would give a ..... to each gardener.  
a. plant      b. shoot      c. seed      d. flower
- The one who could ..... the most beautiful plant would be the next emperor.  
a. eat      b. water      c. air      d. grow

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Fishermen catch .....  
a. fish      b. elephants      c. sheep      d. goats
- Camels have large, flat .....  
a. noses      b. feet      c. ears      d. heads
- Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .....  
a. eyes      b. boots      c. coats      d. shoes
- A librarian works in a .....  
a. hospital      b. post office      c. shopping mall      d. library

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

heat - eyes - small - fur - ears

The fennec fox lives in the desert of North Africa. Its [1] ..... are big. It eats insects and [2] ..... mice. It's hot in the desert during the day. The fennec fox loses [3] ..... from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick [4] ..... keeps it warm.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Ziad. I live on a boat in the summer. My parents work on tourists boats so I go with them. I see many interesting places and meet people from all over the world. I speak English with the tourists. One day, the boat stopped and I saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into river. I called dad who jumped into the river and saved the child. I am so proud of my dad.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The main idea of the text is about "..... life".  
a. Ziad's                      b. Sherif's                      c. Mazen's                      d. Heba's
- Ziad lives on a boat in the .....  
a. fall                      b. summer                      c. spring                      d. winter

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What language does Ziad speak with the tourists ?

4. Who saved the child who fell into the river ?

**5** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. A giraffe is ..... **(tall)** than a horse.
2. The living room is next ..... **(at)** the kitchen.
3. I want to play football, ..... **(and)** my leg hurts.
4. A crocodile is ..... **(most)** dangerous than a fish.

**6** Punctuate the following.

we water the plants every day

**7** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

## "Tomatoes"

**Guiding elements : - green**

- seeds



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Hurghada is a ..... in Egypt.  
a. village                      b. city                      c. town                      d. country
- Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt.  
a. west                      b. north                      c. east                      d. south
- Tourists go on safaris in the .....  
a. beach                      b. Sahara Desert                      c. house                      d. Sahl Hasheesh
- The tourists buy things from the .....  
a. sea                      b. hotels                      c. markets                      d. bazaars

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Horses can live in the .....  
a. river                      b. sea                      c. desert                      d. forest
- In Egypt, farmers ..... chickens.  
a. raise                      b. grow                      c. drink                      d. plant
- A/An ..... takes you to school.  
a. mechanic                      b. bus driver                      c. electrician                      d. plumber
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. shoots                      b. vegetables                      c. seeds                      d. flowers

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

dangerous - animals - family - camel - strong

Last summer, I went to the zoo. I went with my family. We saw many (1) ..... there. There were snakes. They are (2) ..... and scary. We saw a (3) ..... , too. It's very big and (4) ..... . We saw elephants, monkeys and lions there. We had a nice time.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

I am Salma. I live in a small city with my family. There are stores, offices, a shopping mall and a big library. Every day, I go to school by bus because my house is not near my school. My school is next to the hospital. My father works in that hospital. There is a big park in my city. I go to the park on the weekend to play basketball with my friends. There is also a big supermarket.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about "Salma's .....".  
a. school                      b. town                      c. village                      d. city
2. Salma's school is ..... the hospital.  
a. behind                      b. beside                      c. next to                      d. in front of

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Salma's father work ?  
.....
4. What does Salma do in the park ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. That mechanic ..... [are] fixing the cars.
2. I eat vegetables ..... [but] I exercise.
3. I have the ..... [heavy] bag.
4. The tent is ..... [behind] to the car.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i don't go to school on fridays.  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"How to be healthy"**

**Guiding elements :** - exercise                      - fruit and vegetables

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My uncle is a .....  
a. farmer                      b. vet                      c. nurse                      d. teacher
2. He gets up at ..... every day  
a. three                      b. six                      c. four                      d. two
3. My uncle has two .....  
a. cows                      b. horses                      c. dogs                      d. pens
4. He ..... potatoes.  
a. buys                      b. cuts                      c. grows                      d. cleans

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. A librarian works in a .....  
a. bank                      b. post office                      c. library                      d. hotel
2. People in the desert live in .....  
a. houseboats                      b. tents                      c. apartments                      d. houses
3. Camels have large, flat .....  
a. hands                      b. feet                      c. legs                      d. ears
4. I watch TV in the .....  
a. bedroom                      b. bathroom                      c. kitchen                      d. living room

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

drink - chickens - grow - onions - eat

Farmers [1] ..... a lot of food. They grow rice that we [2] ..... for lunch. Egyptian farmers produce many vegetables like [3] ..... and tomatoes. They also raise [4] ..... and goats. Farmers get eggs from chickens and meat from goats and sheep.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Yousef lives in Aswan. He has a big apartment. Yousef has two sons. There are three bedrooms. The kitchen is next to the bathroom. There are some trees in front of his apartment. The apartment has a big balcony that we can see all the street from it.





**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- I'm a .....  
a. carpenter      b. doctor      c. vet      d. fisherman
- I wake up very ..... every day.  
a. tall      b. soon      c. early      d. late
- I go out on my ..... to catch fish.  
a. car      b. boat      c. bus      d. bike
- I sell my fish in the .....  
a. market      b. house      c. school      d. hospital

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The fisherman ..... a lovely fresh fish.  
a. drew      b. wrote      c. caught      d. threw
- The camel is ..... than the horse.  
a. shorter      b. taller      c. faster      d. smaller
- The ..... connects electricity to light the house.  
a. doctor      b. mechanic      c. electrician      d. plumber
- My grandpa grows .....  
a. chicken      b. eggs      c. fish      d. tomatoes

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

wet – job – dangerous – plugs – sockets

My father is an electrician. He likes his [1] ..... . He knows a lot about electricity. He fixes [2] ..... and plugs. He tells us never to touch electrical things with [3] ..... hands. Electricity is very [4] ..... . It can burn our bodies.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My aunt moved to a new apartment in Luxor. She is very happy because there is a balcony. It is very big. My aunt can see the whole street from the new balcony. My friend and his family live in a houseboat. It is small, but he likes living on water. I love living in a house because it is big. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word "It" refers to a .....  
a. balcony                      b. boat                      c. house                      d. school
2. The main idea of the text is about ".....".  
a. Aunt                      b. Apartment                      c. Different houses                      d. Balcony

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does your aunt live ?  
.....
4. Does your friend like living on water ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. The cat is ..... [biggest] than the mouse.
2. The farmer grows potatoes ..... [but] tomatoes.
3. This ..... [are] my father.
4. The school is ..... [next] the office and the supermarket.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

horses have beautiful eyes  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Different houses"**

Guiding elements : - apartment                      - houseboat  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Tomatoes are ..... before they are red.  
a. blue                      b. red                      c. black                      d. green
2. Tomatoes ..... seeds inside.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. are                      d. fruit
3. We plant ..... and the plant grows.  
a. vegetables              b. seeds                      c. fish                      d. oranges
4. The roots grow ..... the soil.  
a. on                      b. in                      c. under                      d. above

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Farmers ..... chicken to get eggs and meat.  
a. grow                      b. raise                      c. plant                      d. eat
2. Plants in the ..... don't need a lot of water.  
a. desert                      b. dessert                      c. door                      d. farm
3. I learn math at .....  
a. school                      b. office                      c. hospital                      d. post office
4. The fennec fox ..... heat from its ears.  
a. walks                      b. drinks                      c. eats                      d. loses

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

huge - spiders - fennec fox - animals - dangerous

The Sahara Desert covers large parts of Egypt's land. There are a lot of [1] ..... in our country. Crocodiles are [2] ..... and scary, but [3] ..... are helpful. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. Snakes are [4] ..... We should be careful.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Marwa. I'm ten years old. I'm in primary four. My father is a doctor. He helps sick people. He loves his job very much. My mom is a teacher. Her students like her very much. She is kind and friendly. I have one brother. His name is Tarek. He is eight years old. He is in primary two. I want to be a doctor like my father. We are a happy family.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Marwa is ..... years old.  
a. 10                                      b. 11                                      c. 12                                      d. 13
2. Her father is a/an .....  
a. plumber                                      b. electrician                                      c. teacher                                      d. doctor

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What's the main idea of the passage ?  
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "Her" refer to ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. You ..... [is] a kind boy.
2. How about ..... [buy] some eggs ?
3. We can ..... [found] everything in Taba.
4. Many men ..... [wears] the galabeya.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i wake up very early every day  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Your house"**

Guiding elements : - rooms                                      - large

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- Hossam's favorite room is the .....  
 a. kitchen                      b. bedroom                      c. living room                      d. dining room
- Hossam ..... do his homework quietly.  
 a. can't                      b. can                      c. is                      d. are
- Hossam has a ..... balcony.  
 a. small                      b. big                      c. cold                      d. hot

## 2 Read the following dialogue and complete with the words below:

live - houseboat - you - Nile

Hazem : Where do [1] ..... live ?

Anas : I live on a [2] ..... What about you ?

Hazem : I [3] ..... in a village next to the [4] .....

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Zain. I'm in grade four. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice four times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I eat healthy food. I eat fruit and vegetables. I play basketball with my friends in the park.

### A. Choose the correct answer.

- Zain is in grade .....  
 a. three                      b. four                      c. five
- He likes to play .....  
 a. volleyball                      b. tennis                      c. basketball
- Zain wants to drink more .....  
 a. juice                      b. water                      c. milk

### B. Answer the following questions.

- How many times do they practice every week ?  
 .....

- Does Zain eat healthy food ?  
 .....

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

- I sleep in a big ..... It has two big beds.  
 a. bathroom                      b. bedroom                      c. kitchen



2. .... is the cat ? – It's under the table.  
a. What                                      b. Why                                      c. Where
3. The mouse is ..... than the elephant.  
a. smallest                                      b. smaller                                      c. small
4. .... keep the school clean.  
a. Cleaners                                      b. Plumbers                                      c. Teachers
5. Camels are perfect for the .....  
a. sea                                      b. lake                                      c. desert

**5** Rearrange these sentences to make correct sentences.

1. next - My home - is - the - to - school.
2. park - play - the - I - in - football.
3. are - and - in - The pelican - the bear - the river.
4. is - the - Where - mall - shopping ?
5. you - helping - Do - people - like ?

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer.

- We grow ..... in Egypt.  
a. rice                      b. flowers                      c. tea
- Farmers raise ..... to get eggs.  
a. cows                      b. chickens                      c. lions
- Our food is ..... .  
a. bad                      b. delicious                      c. salty

**2** Read the following dialogue and complete with the words below.

room – homework – apartment – bedroom

Mom : Look at our lovely new (1) .....

**Hala** : It's fantastic !

Mom : Which is your favorite (2) ..... ?

Hala : It's my [3] ....., I can relax and do my [4] .....

**3 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow – white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

**A. Answer the following questions.**

1. What do rhim gazelles eat ?

.....

2. Where do rhim gazelles live ?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer.**

3. Rhim gazelles don't need a lot of water like .....

a. cats

b. foxes

c. camels

4. They have yellow-white coats to protect them from the .....

a. sun

b. animals

c. moon

5. They have long .....

a. mouth

b. horns

c. eyes

**4 Choose the correct answer.**

1. The elephant is ..... than the mouse.

a. big

b. bigger

c. biggest

2. The fishermen..... fish.

a. work

b. grow

c. catch

3. Mum cooks in the .....

a. living room

b. kitchen

c. bed

4. The hospital is ..... to school.

a. next

b. behind

c. in front of

5. His car is dirty, he will ..... it.

a. reclean

b. reread

c. redo

**5 Rearrange these sentences to make correct sentences.**

1. eats – The fennec fox – insects – lizards – and.

.....

2. do – you – Where – live ?

.....

3. fastest – Cheetah – is – the – animal.

.....

4. pencil case – My – is – the table – on.

.....

5. want – I – to be – a teacher.

.....

**1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text.**

mice – fur – ears – cold

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big [1] ..... It eats insects and small [2] ..... It is [3] ..... in the desert at night. Its thick [4] ..... keeps it warm.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We send letters at the .....  
a. post office      b. market      c. shop      d. class
- My favorite ..... is mango.  
a. fruit      b. vegetable      c. sport      d. class
- We have ..... in the morning.  
a. lunch      b. dinner      c. breakfast      d. park
- Cows give us .....  
a. fruit      b. onions      c. milk      d. eggs

**3 Read the text and answer the questions below.**

Mostafa is 10 years old. Football is his favorite sport. He plays it once a week. He plays it in the club. He plays it with his cousins. He plays it in the morning. It is fun.

**A. Choose the correct answer.**

- Mostafa is ..... years old.  
a. ten      b. two      c. three      d. twenty
- He plays .....  
a. tennis      b. football      c. basketball      d. judo
- He plays with his .....  
a. friends      b. sisters      c. cousins      d. mom
- They play in the .....  
a. club      b. school      c. street      d. class

**4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences.**

- have – feet – camels – flat  
a. Camels have flat feet.  
b. feet camels have flat.  
c. flat camels feet have.
- get up – I – 7 o'clock – at  
a. at 7 o'clock I up get.  
b. get up I at 7 o'clock.  
c. I get up at 7 o'clock.

**5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d.**

- A. I went there by car.      B. I went to the club yesterday.  
C. I played with my friends.      D. I went home at 6 o'clock.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....





# Listening Texts

## نصوص الاستماع

### 1. نصوص استماع اليوم الأول

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

**[A]** Damietta is an Egyptian governorate.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes and guavas. Fishermen can catch a lot of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta.

**[B]** My favorite job is a teacher.

The teachers teach boys and girls. The teacher's job is hard. Our teachers are kind.

**[C]** Mona lives in a small village.

Her school is near her house. She walks to school every morning. Her school is next to the hospital. In front of the hospital, there is a park. Mona often plays football in the park with her friends.

### 2. نصوص استماع الاختبارات

**[1]** محافظة القاهرة - إدارة حلوان التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

**[2]** محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العجوزة التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. It needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It has thick fur that helps the fox stay warm.

**[3]** محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

My house is big. I can play in the garden. My favorite room is the living room. I can see the whole street from the balcony.

**[4]** محافظة القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Hossam. I moved to a new apartment last week. My apartment is fantastic. My favorite room is the living room. The new apartment has a big balcony.

**[5]** محافظة الشرقية - إدارة بلبس التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

There are many habitats. In the desert habitat, there is not much rain. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water. Farmers work in the agricultural habitat. They grow food for us to eat. Plants near the rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

**[6]** محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes! Camels are perfect for the desert.

**[7]** محافظة الغربية - إدارة غرب طنطا التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the

soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the plant grows leaves and flowers.

(٨) محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلادين التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

(٩) محافظة البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name's Ali. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

(١٠) محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة شرق كفر الشيخ التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, wheat and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Life is good in Damietta.

(١١) محافظة دمياط - إدارة فارسكور التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Samir. I grow many fruits every year. I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients they need. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory. I'm a good farmer.

(١٢) محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة شمال التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My cousin Ahmed wants to be an electrician. He must study and

practice for three years. He tries to know how to work safely with electricity. Electricity is very dangerous. Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use the plugs.

(١٣) محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Mona moved to a new apartment with her family. She loves her house. She can see the whole street from the balcony. The new apartment has four rooms. She likes the balcony. The new apartment is lovely.

(١٤) محافظة الفيوم - إدارة يوسف الصديق التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hello! I am Amira. I am from Al-Fayoum. I go to primary school. My father is a farmer. He grows fruit and vegetables. They are good for our health. My mother is a housewife. She likes to help dad with his work.

(١٥) محافظة بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

The fennec fox lives in the desert of North Africa. It has big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. The fennec fox weighs around one kilogram.

(١٦) محافظة المنيا - إدارة المنيا التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Horses are strong animals. They live in the desert. Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses need people to look after them.



(١٧) محافظة أسيوط - إدارة أبو تيج التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Cheng was a gardener. He lived in China. The emperor would give a seed to each gardener. The one who could grow the most beautiful plant would be the next emperor.

Cheng put the seed in the soil and gave it water. But nothing happened because the seed was dead.

(١٨) محافظة سوهاج - إدارة جهينة التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hurghada is a city in Egypt. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. The tourists buy things from the bazaars.

(١٩) محافظة قنا - إدارة قنا التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My uncle is a farmer. He gets up at six every day. He has two cows. He looks after his animals and gives them food and drink. He grows potatoes.

(٢٠) محافظة الأقصر - إدارة الطود التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my boat to catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

(٢١) محافظة أسوان - إدارة كوم أمبو التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We plant seeds and the plant grows. The roots grow under the soil.

## Sample Tests for Al-Azhar students

(١) محافظة الإسكندرية - منطقة الاسكندرية الازهرية

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Hossam. My favorite room is the bedroom. I can do my homework quietly in it. It has a big balcony.

(٢) محافظة الشرقية - الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية الأزهرية

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

In Egypt, we grow rice, tomatoes and onions. Farmers raise chickens to get eggs and meat. Farmers produce many things. Our food is delicious.





GUIDE

# Interactive

By a group of supervisors

Parents' Guide

دليل ولي الأمر

## Notebook

الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول

CONNECT



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com



15014

4<sup>th</sup>  
Primary

FIRST TERM

All rights reserved

# CONTENTS

## ► PART 1

### El Moasser Homework Interactive

مراجعة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي (التسميع)

Part 1 Dictation on Lessons ..... 4

Part 2 Accumulative assessments on Dictation ..... 28

## ► PART 2

### A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

Day 1 Listening ..... 32

Day 2 Vocabulary & Language ..... 33

Day 3 Reading skill ..... 43

Day 4 Writing skill ..... 45

Days 5,6&7 Governorates Exams ..... 47



# PART

# 1

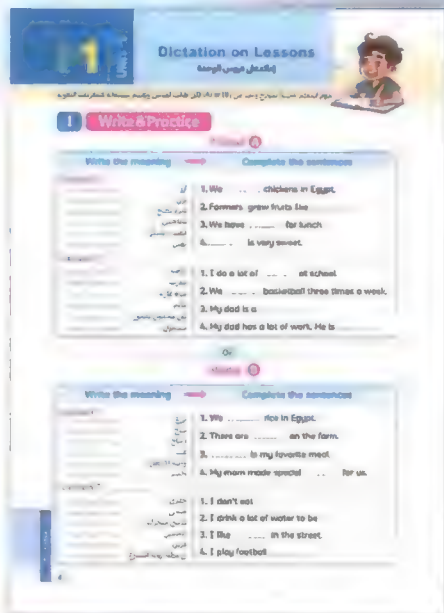
## El Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي (التسميع)

### Part One

### Dictation on Lessons

- ١- إملأ على دروس الوحدة
- ٢- أهم المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة
- ٣- تنمية مهارة الكتابة



### Part Two

### Accumulative assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء





## Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write &amp; Practice

## Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

## Lesson 1

..... أرز  
 ..... يربي  
 ..... ثمرة بطيخ  
 ..... بطاطس  
 ..... قصب السكر  
 ..... بصل

1. We ..... chickens in Egypt.
2. Farmers grow fruits like .....
3. We have ..... for lunch.
4. .... is very sweet.

## Lesson 2

..... رياضة  
 ..... يتدرب  
 ..... مياه غازية  
 ..... غالم  
 ..... لبن مخفوق بالموز  
 ..... مشغول

1. I do a lot of ..... at school.
2. We ..... basketball three times a week.
3. My dad is a .....
4. My dad has a lot of work. He is .....

Or

## Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

## Lesson 1

..... يزرع  
 ..... ينتج  
 ..... دجاج  
 ..... عنب  
 ..... وجبة الإفطار  
 ..... طعام

1. We ..... rice in Egypt.
2. There are ..... on the farm.
3. .... is my favorite meal.
4. My mom made special ..... for us.

## Lesson 2

..... حلوى  
 ..... صحي  
 ..... كرسي متحرك  
 ..... المشي  
 ..... فريق  
 ..... في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

1. I don't eat .....
2. I drink a lot of water to be .....
3. I like ..... in the street.
4. I play football .....

## Model 1

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

|       |                 |
|-------|-----------------|
| ..... | إمبراطور        |
| ..... | منافسة / مسابقة |
| ..... | بستاني          |
| ..... | أمين            |
| ..... | يعتني بـ        |
| ..... | بذور            |

1. The ..... is someone who rules a country.
2. My brother tries to win the .....
3. The ..... has a lot of seeds to grow plants.
4. You should be .....

### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| ..... | محافظة       |
| ..... | عناصر غذائية |
| ..... | مشهور بـ     |
| ..... | صيد سمك      |
| ..... | مليون        |
| ..... | جوافه        |

1. Life is good in Damietta .....
2. Damietta is ..... Domiati cheese.
3. .... can catch thousands of fish.
4. Grapes and ..... are delicious fruits.

Or

## Model 2

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

|       |        |
|-------|--------|
| ..... | قصر    |
| ..... | ميت    |
| ..... | وعاء   |
| ..... | يكذب   |
| ..... | يفوز   |
| ..... | جيد في |

1. The seeds didn't grow. They were .....
2. The emperor lives in a .....
3. He is honest, he doesn't .....
4. My brother ..... the gold medal.

### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| ..... | الحياة    |
| ..... | قمح       |
| ..... | جزء       |
| ..... | جبن       |
| ..... | غني بـ    |
| ..... | يصطاد سمك |

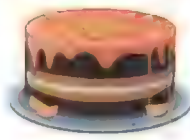
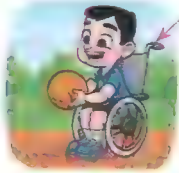
1. Farmers grow ..... and lemons.
2. Domiati ..... is very famous.
3. Damietta's land is ..... nutrients.
4. Fishermen ..... in the sea.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



potatoes



1. rice

2. palace

3. milk

4. onions



5. grapes

6. potatoes

7. guavas

8. bag

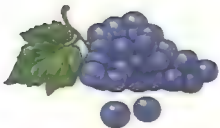


9. emperor

10. fisherman

11. wheelchair

12. mangoes



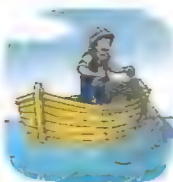
13. watermelon

14. gardener

15. mom

16. team

17. cake



18. chicken

19. sugarcane

20. cola





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

| Step 1<br>Vocabulary   | اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية   | Step 2<br>Sentences   | Step 3<br>Paragraphs  |
|--|---|---|---|
| <p>► Write the meaning :</p> <p>رياضة .....</p> <p>المشي .....</p> <p>حلوى .....</p> <p>رائع .....</p> <p>لبن مخفوق بالموز .....</p> | <p>Being healthy</p>  | <p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. sport - do - a lot - of - at school - I.</p> <p>2. really - I - like - walking.</p> <p>3. awesome - The banana - milkshake - is.</p> <p>4. thousands of - Fishermen - in - the sea - fish - catch.</p> <p>5. famous - Damietta - for - Domiati - is - cheese.</p> <p>6. rich in - The land - is - Damietta - in - nutrients.</p> <p>7. good - Life - in - Damietta - is.</p> | <p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية</p> <p>► Write a paragraph about :</p> <p>Being healthy</p> |
| <p>Damietta governorate</p>  | <p>يصطاد السمك .....</p> <p>صبياد السمك .....</p> <p>دمياطى .....</p> <p>غنى بـ .....</p> <p>حياة .....</p> | <p>8. Egypt - grow - We - rice - in.</p> <p>9. farmers - Egyptian - many - produce - things.</p> <p>10. made - Mom - food - for - a special - us.</p> <p>11. in - raise - We - chickens - Egypt.</p>  | <p>Damietta governorate</p>   |
| <p>Food in Egypt</p>   | <p>أرز .....</p> <p>بننج .....</p> <p>مصرى .....</p> <p>خاص / مميز .....</p> <p>يربي دجاج .....</p>         |   | <p>Food in Egypt</p>  |

# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

تمساح  
عنكبوت  
هام  
قبيح  
متعاون  
خطير

1. The ..... is huge and scary.
2. The ..... is helpful.
3. Animals do a very ..... job.
4. Some animals are ..... , but they are all important.

#### Lesson 2

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

مدهش  
أقدام  
جميل  
صحراء  
مثالي  
يغضب

1. Camels have large, flat .....
2. Horses can live in the .....
3. Camels are ..... for the desert.
4. Camels can .....

Or

### Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

مخيف  
حشرات  
يتحكم  
ثعبان  
سحالي  
لطيف / جذاب

1. Crocodiles are .....
2. The spiders eat .....
3. Big animals ..... the number of small animals.
4. Crocodiles eat ..... and birds.

#### Lesson 2

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

يحمل  
مزعج/صاحب  
ماء عذب  
يعتني بـ  
مميز  
بأكل

1. Camels ..... things and people.
2. Camels are very ..... when they get angry.
3. Horses drink .....
4. Horses ..... grass.

## Model A

Write the meaning →

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

..... بجة  
..... كثير العصرة  
..... أكثر عطفا  
..... مخالف  
..... يرفع  
..... يصل

1. The ..... and the bear are in the river.
2. The fish is big and .....
3. The bear has paws and .....
4. The bear ..... for the fish.

### Lessons 4 & 5

..... قرون حيوان  
..... يزن  
..... غزال الريم  
..... سميك  
..... يحتاج  
..... يسمع

1. Rhim gazelles have long .....
2. The fennec fox ..... around 1 kg.
3. The fox's ..... fur keeps it warm.
4. The fennec fox needs big ears to ..... insects.

Or

## Model B

Write the meaning →

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

..... منقار  
..... فم  
..... كف حيوان  
..... دب  
..... جاهز  
..... يخرج

1. The pelican opens its ..... to take the fish.
2. The bear lifts its .....
3. The pelican and the ..... are in the river.
4. The pelican ..... the fish out of the water.

### Lessons 4 & 5

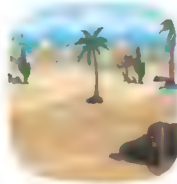
..... فراء حيوان  
..... ثعلب الفئك  
..... يبحث عن  
..... فئران  
..... حرارة  
..... دافئ

1. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .....
2. The ..... lives in the desert.
3. The fennec fox eats lizards and .....
4. The fennec fox loses ..... from its ears.





أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. rhim gazelle

2. lizard

3. fennec fox

4. claw

5. flat foot

6. pear

7. camel

8. horse

9. insect

10. coat

11. snake

12. beak

13. bear

14. crocodile

15. helpful

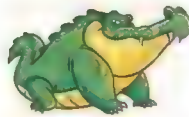
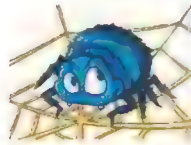
16. spider

17. pelican

18. horns

19. desert

20. pin





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

|                  | <b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية                                | <b>Step 2</b> Sentences<br>متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية  | <b>Step 3</b> Paragraphs<br>متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية                               |
|------------------|--|--|--|
| Animals in Egypt | <b>Write the meaning :</b><br>..... تمساح<br>..... عنكبوت<br>..... حشرة<br>..... سحلية<br>..... مخيف | <b>Reorder the words :</b><br>1. do - <u>Crocodiles</u> - important - an - job.<br>.....<br>2. helpful - <u>Spiders</u> - are - very.<br>.....<br>3. lizards - eat - <u>Snakes</u> - insects - and.<br>.....<br>4. animals - <u>Some</u> - scary - are.<br>..... | <b>Write a paragraph about :</b><br><b>Animals in Egypt</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Camels           | ..... مسطحة<br>..... أقدام<br>..... يحمل<br>..... صحراء<br>..... لذيذ [الطعم]                        | 5. have - <u>Camels</u> - feet - flat.<br>.....<br>6. help - us - carry - <u>Camels</u> - things.<br>.....<br>7. perfect - for - <u>Camels</u> - are - the desert.<br>.....<br>8. delicious - <u>Camels'</u> - is - milk.<br>.....                               | <b>Camels</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....   |
| Fennec fox       | ..... حرارة<br>..... يفقد<br>..... سميكة<br>..... دافئ<br>..... يزن                                  | 9. loses - <u>its ears</u> - The fennec fox - heat - from.<br>.....<br>10. fur - The fennec fox's - warm - it - keeps.<br>.....<br>11. weighs - The fennec fox - 1 kilogram - around.<br>.....   | <b>Fennec fox</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....   |

# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

..... بذور  
..... يزرع  
..... يسقى / يروي  
..... جذور  
..... برعم / نبتة  
..... نبات

1. Tomatoes have ..... inside.
2. We ..... the plant every day.
3. The roots grow under the .....
4. The ..... grows above the soil.

#### Lesson 2

..... الفلاحين / المزارعين  
..... نهر  
..... زهرة الأقحوان  
..... شجرة السنط  
..... موطن / بيئة  
..... الأطول

1. .... grow food for us to eat .
2. Plants near the ..... need a lot of water .
3. A ..... is a place where living things live and grow.
4. The sunflower is the ..... flower .

Or

### Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

..... تنمو  
..... أوراق شجر  
..... ثمرة الطماطم  
..... بلكونة [شرفة]  
..... عملية الإنبات  
..... التربة الزراعية

1. The full plant grows ..... and flowers .
2. .... are green before they're red.
3. Our tomato plants are growing on the .....
4. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called .....

#### Lesson 2

..... زراعى  
..... صحراء  
..... زهرة عباد الشمس  
..... الاصغر  
..... نبات القصب / الجريد  
..... بحيرة

1. Farmers work in an ..... habitat.
2. There's not much rain in the .....
3. The ..... need a lot of water to grow .
4. We can find ..... in an agricultural habitat.



## Model A

Write the meaning →

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

مزرعة  
جاف  
رقم مليون  
مياه الأمطار  
فخور بـ  
حياة

1. My friend lives on a .....
2. They planted ..... of seeds.
3. They use ..... to water the seeds.
4. My parents are ..... me.

### Lessons 4 & 5

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

أولاً  
نبات البردي  
شهر  
سلة  
يسقط  
بسرعة

1. ...., you put the sunflower seed in soil .
2. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to make paper.
3. They also used papyrus to make .....
4. The sunflower dies and ..... its seeds.

Or

## Model B

Write the meaning →

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

الأجداد  
هواء ملوث  
رقم مليار  
يقرر  
ليمون  
يحضر

1. We don't like the .....
2. They need about a ..... liters of water .
3. They ..... to buy some land.
4. They ..... animals to the land.

### Lessons 4 & 5

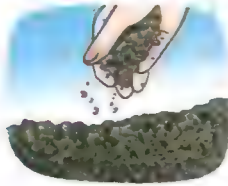
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

نبتة  
بواجه  
يزداد طولاً  
يضع  
دورة حياة  
أخيراً

1. The ..... grows above the soil .
2. The sunflower opens and ..... the sun.
3. We ..... the seeds in sunlight .
4. The ..... of sunflower is important.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. rose

2. orange tree

3. river



4. shoot

5. bean plant

6. slippers

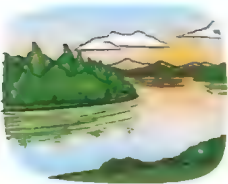


7. balcony

8. seeds

9. farm

10. tomato plant



11. soil

12. sunflower

13. roots



14. swan

15. leaf



يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

|                             | <b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية  | <b>Step 2</b> Sentences<br>متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية  | <b>Step 3</b> Paragraphs<br>متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية   |
|-----------------------------|--|--|--|
| Tomato plants               | <p>► Write the meaning :</p> <p>..... بذور</p> <p>..... بلكونة</p> <p>..... يسقى</p> <p>..... جذور</p> <p>..... تربة</p> | <p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. have - <u>Tomatoes</u> - seeds - inside.</p> <p>2. growing - <u>Our tomatoes</u> - the balcony - on - are.</p> <p>3. water - <u>We</u> - every - the plant - day.</p> <p>4. grow - <u>The roots</u> - the - under - soil.</p> | <p>► Write a paragraph about :</p> <p><b>Tomato plants</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| The life cycle of sunflower | <p>..... ينبت</p> <p>..... برعم</p> <p>..... زهرة عباد الشمس</p> <p>..... يسقط</p> <p>..... أخيرا</p>                    | <p>5. and - germinates - <u>The seed</u> - starts - to grow.</p> <p>6. grows - above - <u>The shoot</u> - the soil.</p> <p>7. faces - <u>The sunflower</u> - the sun - opens - and.</p> <p>8. the sunflower - <u>Finally</u> - its - drops - seeds.</p>          | <p><b>The life cycle of sunflower</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>                      |
| Papyrus                     | <p>..... نبات البردي</p> <p>..... سلة</p> <p>..... حذاء صيفي</p> <p>..... دافئ</p> <p>..... يلمو</p>                     | <p>9. special - a very - <u>Papyrus</u> - plant - is.</p> <p>10. made - <u>They</u> - sandals - baskets - and.</p> <p>11. warm - <u>Papyrus</u> - needs - weather - to - grow.</p>   | <p><b>Papyrus</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>  |



# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

- ..... شقة سكنية  
..... حجرة معيشة  
..... خيمة  
..... دورة مياه  
..... حجرة الطعام  
..... شُرْفة (بلكونة)

1. I live in an .....
2. We live in the desert. We live in a .....
3. I eat dinner in the .....
4. I love to sit in the .....

#### Lesson 2

- ..... متجر [سوبر ماركت]  
..... مدرسة  
..... مكتب عمل  
..... مستشفى  
..... ملابس  
..... يرسل

1. The ..... is a place where we buy food.
2. The ..... is a place where I learn.
3. The ..... is a place where my mom works.
4. I ..... some letters to my friend.

Or

### Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

- ..... حجرة نوم  
..... شارع  
..... منزل عائم  
..... منزل  
..... مطبخ  
..... يسترخى

1. I can see the whole ..... from the balcony.
2. We live on a ..... on water.
3. We cook food in the .....
4. I sleep in the .....

#### Lesson 2

- ..... قرية  
..... مكتب بريد  
..... مركز تسوق  
..... مريض / مرض  
..... نهر النيل  
..... خلف

1. I live in the .....
2. The ..... is a place where we send letters.
3. The ..... is a place where I buy clothes.
4. There are tall trees ..... the house.

## Model A

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |               |
|-------|---------------|
| ..... | يسقط / يقع    |
| ..... | إتجاهات       |
| ..... | قارب سياحي    |
| ..... | فصل الصيف     |
| ..... | اللغة الصينية |
| ..... | ينقذ          |

1. The small child ..... in the river.
2. We should follow ..... to get to the bank.
3. My parents work on .....
4. The brave man can ..... the child.

#### Lessons 4&5

|       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| ..... | سائحين    |
| ..... | تفحص      |
| ..... | بالقرب من |
| ..... | خرطة      |
| ..... | كل أسبوع  |
| ..... | ممتع      |

1. There are many ..... in Luxor.
2. She ..... that the food is good.
3. Her work is ..... her home.
4. I located the town on the .....

Or

## Model II

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | في الزاوية |
| ..... | يقابل      |
| ..... | يقرر       |
| ..... | يسافر      |
| ..... | يسبح       |
| ..... | يتحدث      |

1. The supermarket is .....
2. He ..... people from all over the world.
3. They ..... up and down the Nile.
4. He ..... English.

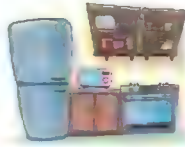
#### Lessons 4&5

|       |                   |
|-------|-------------------|
| ..... | رحلات سفاري       |
| ..... | بازار [سوق تجاري] |
| ..... | طازج              |
| ..... | عمال              |
| ..... | صور فوتوغرافية    |
| ..... | سوبر ماركت        |

1. Tourists can go on .....
2. Hurghada has beautiful .....
3. The food is .....
4. The ..... are very kind.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. fan

2. supermarket

3. balcony

4. dining room

5. shopping mall

6. hospital

7. living room

8. bedroom

9. van

10. tent

11. apartment

12. bathroom

13. Turn left.

14. tourist

15. post office

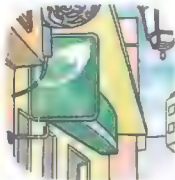
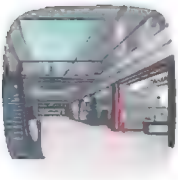
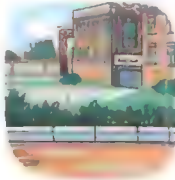
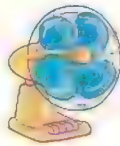
16. school

17. Turn right.

18. tourist boat

19. kitchen

20. office







يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

| <b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary<br>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية   | <b>Step 2</b> Sentences<br>متبغا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية   | <b>Step 3</b> Paragraphs<br>متبغا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية                           |
|--|---|--|
| <b>Write the meaning :</b><br>شرفة / بلكونة .....<br>حجرة نوم .....<br>شقة سكنية .....<br>مطبخ .....<br>ينظم ..... | <b>My home</b><br><b>Reorder the words :</b><br>1. see - from - the whole - <u>I can</u> - street - the balcony.<br>.....<br>2. relax - bedroom - <u>I can</u> - in - my.<br>.....<br>3. lovely - <u>Our</u> - is - apartment.<br>.....<br>4. organize - <u>I help</u> - mom - my - the kitchen.<br>..... | <b>My home</b><br>Write an a paragraph about :<br><b>My home</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| <b>Hurghada</b><br>سوق تجارى (إزارا) .....<br>البحر الأحمر .....<br>رحلات سفارى .....<br>سياح .....<br>منازل ..... | <b>Hurghada</b><br>5. bazaars - <u>Hurghada</u> - interesting - has.<br>.....<br>6. on - is - <u>Hurghada</u> - Sea - the Red.<br>.....<br>7. go - <u>Tourists</u> - on - can - safaris.<br>.....<br>8. has - houses - <u>Hurghada</u> - some - beautiful.<br>.....                                       | <b>Hurghada</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....  |
| <b>The supermarket worker</b><br>يفحص .....<br>طازج .....<br>عامل .....<br>بالقرب من .....<br>طبيب / عطوف .....    | <b>The supermarket worker</b><br>9. fresh - <u>She</u> - the food - is - checks.<br>.....<br>10. is - <u>My sister</u> - a supermarket - worker.<br>.....<br>11. works at - <u>She</u> - the supermarket - near - her house.<br>.....   | <b>The supermarket worker</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....                                    |

## Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write &amp; Practice

## Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

## Lesson 1

..... سباك  
 ..... ساعي البريد  
 ..... سائق حافلة  
 ..... فوضوى  
 ..... مشكلة  
 ..... ماسورة

1. A ..... fixes pipes and faucets.
2. A ..... has our parcel.
3. I want to be a ..... I like driving.
4. The floor is wet and .....

## Lesson 2

..... ينتقل  
 ..... صدمة كهربائية  
 ..... مقبس كهرباء  
 ..... بطريقة آمنة  
 ..... حريق / نار  
 ..... جاف

1. Electricity ..... very fast.
2. If we get an ....., we can't control our bodies.
3. Never put anything into a ....., only use plugs.
4. You should work ..... with electricity.

Or

## Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

## Lesson 1

..... فنى كهرباء  
 ..... جامع القمامة  
 ..... طرد  
 ..... ميكانيكى  
 ..... ينسى  
 ..... يريد

1. An ..... makes things work.
2. I'm taking the ..... to the post office.
3. I like being a .....
4. I ..... to take out the trash.

## Lesson 2

..... يحرق  
 ..... ميلل  
 ..... ظاهرة البرق  
 ..... عاصفة  
 ..... يدرس  
 ..... الكهرباء

1. Electricity can ..... us.
2. We sometimes see a flash of .....
3. The crops were badly damaged by the .....
4. .... is very dangerous.

## Model A

### Write the meaning →

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |                      |
|-------|----------------------|
| ..... | يختبر / يجرب         |
| ..... | مكعبات               |
| ..... | شریط قياس            |
| ..... | أمان                 |
| ..... | فضول / محب الاستطلاع |
| ..... | دمية                 |

1. She loved to .....
2. She played with .....
3. She carried a .....
4. She was very .....

#### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| ..... | بالخارج |
| ..... | يستيقظ  |
| ..... | يجلب    |
| ..... | قمامة   |
| ..... | يصلح    |
| ..... | ثقيل    |

1. Mail carriers ..... early.
2. The garbage collectors take away our .....
3. The mechanics ..... the cars.
4. The mail bag is very .....

Or

## Model B

### Write the meaning →

### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 3

|       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| ..... | مفك البراغي  |
| ..... | صبور         |
| ..... | يشرح / يفسر  |
| ..... | جهاز الراديو |
| ..... | يغضب         |
| ..... | يضع          |

1. She always carried a .....
2. He is very ..... He never gets angry.
3. He ..... things all the time.
4. She ..... one block on top of another.

#### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |          |
|-------|----------|
| ..... | يوصل     |
| ..... | يصل      |
| ..... | يسير     |
| ..... | الطقس    |
| ..... | إيجابيات |
| ..... | تدريب    |

1. Mail carriers ..... letters and parcels.
2. Mail carriers ..... all day.
3. There are ..... and cons of being a mail carrier.
4. Mail carriers get a lot of .....

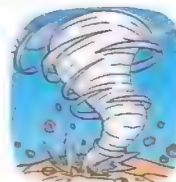




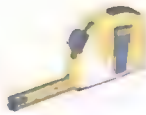
أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



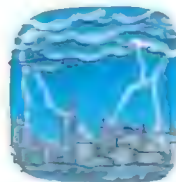
1. storm
2. screwdriver
3. bus driver
4. doctor



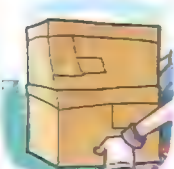
5. teacher
6. electrician
7. lightning
8. pipe



9. plumber
10. blocks
11. tape measure
12. garbage collector



13. parcel
14. socket
15. trash
16. plug
17. mail carrier



18. architect
19. mechanic
20. faucet



# Writing Practice



يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

| Jobs                   | <div>Step 1</div> <div>Vocabulary</div> <p>اختر مدى إقناعك للمفردات اللغوية التالية</p>  | <div>Step 2</div> <div>Sentences</div> <p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية</p>  | <div>Step 3</div> <div>Paragraphs</div> <p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية</p>                          |
|------------------------|--|---|--|
| Jobs                   | <p>► Write the meaning :</p> <p>جامع قمامة .....</p> <p>يصلح .....</p> <p>طرد .....</p> <p>كهربائي .....</p> <p>ماسورة .....</p> | <p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. fixes - faucets - A plumber - pipes - and. ....</p> <p>2. delivers - parcels - A mail - our - carrier. ....</p> <p>3. makes - work - An electrician - things. ....</p> <p>4. collector - out - A garbage - takes - the trash. ....</p> | <p>► Write a paragraph about :</p> <p><b>Jobs</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| Electricity            | <p>ظاهرة البرق .....</p> <p>صدمة كهربائية .....</p> <p>عاصفة .....</p> <p>مبلل .....</p> <p>وميض (نور خاطف) .....</p>            | <p>5. see - lightning - of - We - a flash - in a storm. ....</p> <p>6. is - dangerous - Electricity - very. ....</p> <p>7. can - An electric - shock - us - burn. ....</p> <p>8. anything - with - Never - electrical - touch - wet hands. ....</p>                       | <p><b>Electricity</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>                             |
| The mail carrier's job | <p>سليات .....</p> <p>بالخارج .....</p> <p>طقس .....</p> <p>حقبة البريد .....</p> <p>ثقل .....</p>                               | <p>9. are - all - Mail - outside - carriers - day. ....</p> <p>10. is - heavy - The mail - very - bag. ....</p> <p>11. wake up - early - Mail - very - carriers. ....</p> <p>12. like - carriers - People - mail - to meet. ....</p>                                      | <p><b>The mail carrier's job</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>                  |

# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

### Model A

#### Write the meaning

#### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

صياد سمك  
أمين مكتبة  
يفسر  
التعليم  
مصنع  
فلاح / مزارع

1. The ..... goes out on his boat.
2. The ..... works in a school library.
3. The guide can ..... the history of Egypt.
4. The ..... picks up the fruits.

#### Lesson 2

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

موارد متجددة  
طاقة شمسية  
شجرة مانجو  
نقود  
ينظر من  
يقطع

1. Water is a .....
2. We get ..... from the sun.
3. We have a ..... in our garden.
4. They ..... trees to get wood.

Or

### Model B

#### Write the meaning

#### Complete the sentences

#### Lesson 1

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

يبيع  
مرشد سياحي  
يعتنى بـ  
زراعة  
صيد السمك  
مصنع

1. He ..... the fish in the market.
2. The librarian ..... all the books.
3. Boats and nets are connected to ..... industry.
4. They send the fruit to the .....

#### Lesson 2

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

موارد غير متجددة  
مرة اخرى  
فحم  
بتروول  
خشب  
يلعب

1. .... resources can run out.
2. Renewable resources can grow .....
3. We cut down trees to get .....
4. The children ..... under the tree.



## Model A

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | طازج       |
| ..... | مشكلة      |
| ..... | مندھش      |
| ..... | حول القرية |
| ..... | صوت        |
| ..... | جميل       |

1. The fishermen have ..... fish every day.
2. The teacher helps me to solve my .....
3. The fisherman drove .....
4. We heard the ..... of the television.

### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | رف         |
| ..... | يشجع       |
| ..... | يلقى       |
| ..... | بحرص       |
| ..... | يعلم       |
| ..... | يفكر بسرعة |

1. I put the books on the .....
2. Teachers always ..... their students.
3. We shouldn't ..... trash in the garden.
4. The students listen to their teachers.....

Or

## Model B

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

### Lesson 3

|       |                   |
|-------|-------------------|
| ..... | محرك              |
| ..... | محيط              |
| ..... | شاحنة بيع الأسماك |
| ..... | يسمع              |
| ..... | يريد              |
| ..... | يصيح              |

1. There's a problem with my car .....
2. He lost his keys so he was .....
3. He has fresh fish in his .....
4. Don't ..... ! I can hear you.

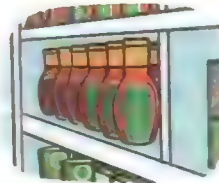
### Lessons 4 & 5

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| ..... | قمامة      |
| ..... | مفاجئ      |
| ..... | احترام     |
| ..... | أمين مكتبة |
| ..... | منير       |
| ..... | ينزل من    |

1. We shouldn't throw ..... in the garden.
2. Students ask ..... questions.
3. I show ..... to the people around me.
4. I say thank you when I ..... the bus.



أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



1. librarian

2. tourism industry

3. teacher

4. farmer

5. wood

6. mango tree

7. fish van

8. disappointed

9. engine

10. trash

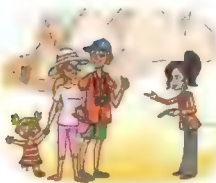
11. shelf

12. boat

13. fishing

14. factory

15. money





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

| Step 1          | Vocabulary  | Step 2   | Step 3  | Paragraphs |
|-----------------|---|--|---|------------|
|                 | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية</p> <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> | <p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية</p> <p>Sentences</p> <p>Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. their - <u>The fishermen</u> - market - sell - fish - at the.</p> <p>2. work - <u>The guides</u> - in - industry - tourism - the.</p> <p>3. look - after - <u>The farmers</u> - the - trees.</p> <p>4. buys - <u>The librarian</u> - new - lots of - books.</p> <p>5. had - <u>Each sister</u> - a beautiful - tree - mango.</p> <p>6. cut - <u>She</u> - her - down - tree.</p> <p>7. sold - <u>She</u> - the wood - money - to get.</p> <p>8. under - the tree - <u>The</u> - played - children.</p> <p>9. encourage - <u>Teachers</u> - always - their - students.</p> <p>10. ask - <u>Students</u> - questions - surprising.</p> <p>11. change - <u>A teacher</u> - the - can - lives - students'.</p> | <p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية</p> <p>Write a paragraph about :</p> <p>Jobs</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |            |
| Jobs            | <p>يبيع</p> <p>مرشد سياحي</p> <p>سياحة</p> <p>فلاح / مزارع</p> <p>أمين مكتبة</p>  |  | <p>Two mango trees</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>  |            |
| Two mango trees | <p>شجرة مانجو</p> <p>يقطع</p> <p>خشب</p> <p>نقود</p> <p>يلعب</p>  |  | <p>Being a teacher</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>  |            |
| Being a teacher | <p>يشجع</p> <p>مفاجئ</p> <p>سؤال</p> <p>يغير</p> <p>تحتاج</p>   |  |   |            |





## تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

### Unit 1

#### Model A

1. onions
2. grapes
3. rice
4. wheelchair
5. emperor
6. gardener
7. competition
8. rich in

١. ثمرة بطاطس
٢. قصب السكر
٣. قصر
٤. المشي
٥. أمين
٦. لذيذ
٧. ثمار الطماطم
٨. يربي

### Units 1 & 2

#### Model A

1. snake
2. camel
3. yummy
4. insect
5. produce
6. beak
7. honest
8. rhinoceros

١. تمساح
٢. ثعلب الفنك
٣. عنكبوت
٤. بذور
٥. دب
٦. يعتني بـ
٧. قرون حيوان
٨. يفوز

### Units 1, 2 & 3

#### Model A

1. leaf
2. seeds
3. acacia tree
4. chickens
5. living things
6. difficult
7. germination
8. camels

١. بلكونة / شُرفة
٢. سحلية
٣. شجرة برتقال
٤. زهرة الأقحوان
٥. ثعلب الفنك
٦. نبات البردي
٧. عباد الشمس
٨. ماء عذب

#### Model B

1. mangoes
2. banana
3. country
4. vegetables
5. grow
6. palace
7. honest
8. onions

١. ثمرة بطيخ
٢. دجاج
٣. مشهور بـ
٤. جن
٥. مشغول
٦. عناصر غذائية
٧. حلوي
٨. ثمرة الليمون

#### Model B

1. shoot
2. roots
3. horns
4. sunflower
5. polluted air
6. sandals
7. life cycle
8. governorate

١. تربة زراعية
٢. وردة حمراء
٣. ثمرة طماطم
٤. شجرة الطرءاء
٥. حشرات
٦. مياه الأمطار
٧. جمل
٨. مزعج / صاخب

#### Model B

1. dangerous
2. helpful
3. amazing
4. beautiful
5. desert
6. pelican
7. mix
8. win

١. مخيف
٢. اناء
٣. مثال
٤. يكذب
٥. مخالف حيوان
٦. خائف
٧. كمثري
٨. قصر

## Units 1,2,3 & 4

### Model A

1. bazaar
2. balcony
3. dining room
4. spider
5. living things
6. Egyptian
7. worker
8. breakfast

١. قارب سياحي
٢. تالف
٣. مكتب بريد
٤. ماء عذب
٥. يخلط
٦. مركز تسوق
٧. اتجه يميناً!
٨. يسقى

## Units 1,2,3,4 & 5

### Model A

1. electrician
2. storm
3. screwdriver
4. patient
5. heavy
6. fennec fox
7. yummy
8. healthy

١. إيجابيات
٢. مروحة
٣. ميكانيكي
٤. ظاهرة البرق
٥. بجعة
٦. زراعي
٧. بازلاء
٨. أرض

## Units 1,2,3,4,5 & 6

### Model A

1. fisherman
2. education
3. forest
4. shelf
5. messy
6. curious
7. sweep
8. fur

١. موارد متجددة
٢. صناعة [مجال] السياحة
٣. شجاع
٤. محبط
٥. ماسورة
٦. مميز / خاص
٧. بنيت
٨. حصان

### Model B

1. hospital
2. summer
3. office
4. check
5. behind
6. cross
7. practice
8. honesty

١. حجرة معيشة
٢. فريق
٣. اتجه يساراً!
٤. طازج
٥. حجرة نوم
٦. رحلات سفاري
٧. موطن / بيئة
٨. وجبة العشاء

### Model B

1. mail carrier
2. socket
3. blocks
4. outside
5. crocodile
6. noisy
7. farm
8. special

١. سائق حافلة
٢. محافظة
٣. صدمة كهربائية
٤. قابس [فيشة]
٥. شريط قياس
٦. سليليات
٧. شقة سكنية
٨. إمبراطور

### Model B

1. guide
2. fish van
3. engine
4. respect
5. bee
6. carry
7. flat
8. plants

١. أمين مكتبة
٢. عملية الإنبات
٣. محاصيل
٤. موارد غير متجددة
٥. طرد
٦. خيمة
٧. مفك البراغي
٨. يحمي

# PART

# 2

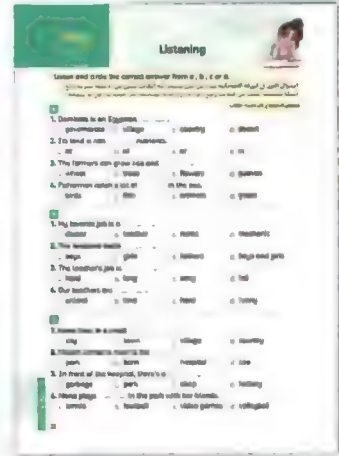
## A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

### اليوم الأول

### Listening

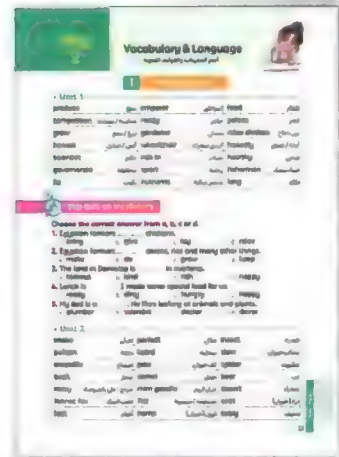
عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على  
افضل درجة في الامتحان.



### اليوم الثاني

### Vocabulary & Language

طريقة جديدة وعملية جدًا لمراجعة كل  
كلمات المنهج.



### عرض كل قواعد المنهج

للمراجعة والتدرب عليها.



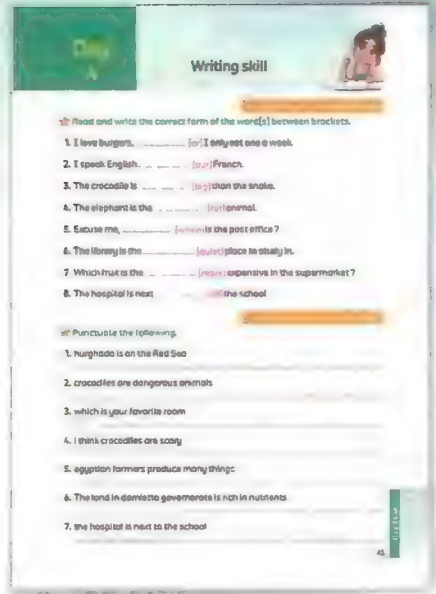




## اليوم الثالث

### Reading Skill

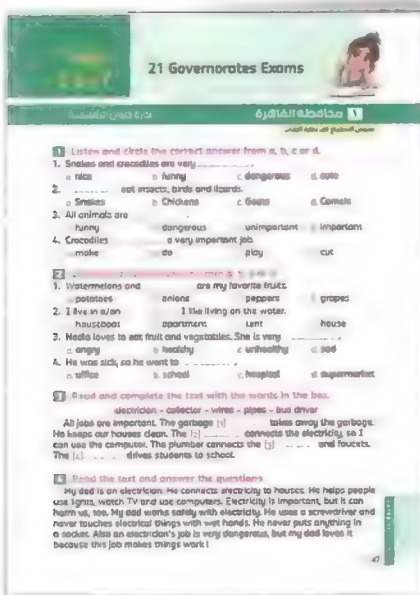
عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجات في الامتحان.



## اليوم الرابع

### Writing Skill

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة في الامتحان.



## اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

٢١ اختبار مجمع من امتحانات المدارس لعام ٢٠٢٤ من مختلف المحافظات.  
اختبارات للأزهر الشريف.  
اختبارات للدمج.



Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية عبارة عن نص يستمع إليه الطالب مكون من ٤٠ كلمة متبوعة بأربع أسئلة منفصلة. يطلب من الطالب وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة لكل جملة بناءً على ما يسمعه.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

**A**

1. Damietta is an Egyptian .....  
a. governorate      b. village      c. country      d. desert
2. Its land is rich ..... nutrients.  
a. at      b. of      c. or      d. in
3. The farmers can grow rice and .....  
a. wheat      b. trees      c. flowers      d. guavas
4. Fishermen catch a lot of ..... in the sea.  
a. birds      b. fish      c. animals      d. goats

**B**

1. My favorite job is a .....  
a. doctor      b. teacher      c. nurse      d. mechanic
2. The teachers teach .....  
a. boys      b. girls      c. fathers      d. boys and girls
3. The teacher's job is .....  
a. hard      b. long      c. easy      d. tall
4. Our teachers are .....  
a. unkind      b. kind      c. hard      d. funny

**C**

1. Mona lives in a small .....  
a. city      b. town      c. village      d. country
2. Mona's school is next to the .....  
a. park      b. bank      c. hospital      d. zoo
3. In front of the hospital, there's a .....  
a. garbage      b. park      c. shop      d. factory
4. Mona plays ..... in the park with her friends.  
a. tennis      b. football      c. video games      d. volleyball



### I

### Vocabulary

#### Unit 1

|             |                 |            |              |               |             |
|-------------|-----------------|------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| produce     | ينتج            | emperor    | إمبراطور     | food          | طعام        |
| competition | منافسة / مسابقة | ready      | جاهز         | palace        | قصر         |
| grow        | يزرع / ينمو     | gardener   | بستاني       | raise chicken | يربي دجاج   |
| honest      | أمين / صادق     | wheelchair | كرسي متحرك   | honesty       | أمانة / صدق |
| scientist   | عالِم           | rich in    | غنية بـ      | healthy       | صحي         |
| governorate | محافظة          | sport      | رياضة        | fisherman     | صياد سمك    |
| lie         | يكذب            | nutrients  | عناصر غذائية | king          | ملك         |



#### Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Egyptian farmers ..... chickens.  
a. bring      b. give      c. lay      d. raise
- Egyptian farmers ..... onions, rice and many other things.  
a. make      b. do      c. grow      d. keep
- The land in Damietta is ..... in nutrients.  
a. famous      b. kind      c. rich      d. happy
- Lunch is ..... I made some special food for us.  
a. ready      b. dirty      c. hungry      d. happy
- My dad is a ..... He likes looking at animals and plants.  
a. plumber      b. scientist      c. doctor      d. driver

#### Unit 2

|            |                     |            |                |        |              |
|------------|---------------------|------------|----------------|--------|--------------|
| snake      | ثعبان               | perfect    | مثالي          | insect | حشرة         |
| pelican    | بجعة                | lizard     | سحلية          | claw   | مخالب حيوان  |
| crocodile  | تمساح               | paw        | كف حيوان       | spider | عنكبوت       |
| beak       | منقار               | camel      | جمل            | bear   | دب           |
| noisy      | مزعج - ملي بالضوضاء | rhinoceros | غزال الریم     | desert | صحراء        |
| fennec fox | ثعلب الفنك          | flat       | مسطحة / مستوية | coat   | فراء [حيوان] |
| feet       | أقدام               | horns      | قرون [حيوان]   | scary  | مخيف         |





## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Camels are ..... for the desert life.  
a. difficult      b. easy      c. kind      d. perfect
- Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .....  
a. wires      b. coats      c. feathers      d. months
- The fennec fox lives in the ..... of North Africa.  
a. deserts      b. rainforests      c. grasslands      d. rivers
- Farmers like ..... because they eat insects.  
a. crocodiles      b. snakes      c. spiders      d. bears
- Camels are very ..... but they can get angry.  
a. noisy      b. perfect      c. kind      d. delicious

### Unit 3

|           |                 |                     |               |              |                  |
|-----------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| roots     | جذور            | farm                | مزرعة         | shoot        | برعم - نبتة      |
| rainwater | مياه الأمطار    | seeds               | بذور          | dry          | جاف              |
| soil      | تربة زراعية     | land                | أرض           | leaf         | ورقة شجر         |
| life      | حياة            | germination process | عملية الإنبات | sandals      | صندل [حذاء صيفي] |
| sunflower | زهرة عباد الشمس | life cycle          | دورة الحياة   | agricultural | زراعي            |
| basket    | سلة             | living things       | كائنات حية    | papyrus      | نبات البردي      |
| habitat   | موطن - بيئة     | balcony             | بلكونة [شرفة] | water        | يروي - يسقى      |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The Ancient Egyptians made paper from .....  
a. iron      b. metal      c. skin      d. papyrus
- A/An ..... is a place where living things live and grow.  
a. office      b. school      c. habitat      d. library
- Farmers work in the ..... habitat.  
a. agricultural      b. desert      c. rivers      d. lakes
- When we plant a seed and the plant grows, this is called .....  
a. transportation      b. germination      c. information      d. evaporation
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. leaves      b. flowers      c. seeds      d. roots

## Unit 4

|             |                   |                     |                     |               |               |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|
| house       | منزل              | apartment           | شقة سكنية           | tourist boat  | قارب سياحي    |
| bazaar      | بازار [سوق تجاري] | go on safaris       | يذهب في رحلات سفاري | street        | شارع          |
| houseboat   | منزل على قارب     | school              | مدرسة               | Turn left !   | اتجه يساراً ! |
| Turn right! | اتجه يميناً !     | Go straight ahead ! |                     | shopping mall | مركز تسوق     |
| supermarket | متجر كبير         |                     | سر بشكل مستقيم !    | bathroom      | دورة مياه     |
| bedroom     | حجرة نوم          | post office         | مكتب بريد           | save          | ينقذ          |
| office      | مكتب              | living room         | حجرة معيشة          |               |               |
| hospital    | مستشفى            | tent                | خيمة                |               |               |



### Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- People in the desert live in a/an .....  
a. tent                      b. street                      c. apartment                      d. houseboat
- The ..... is where we go when we are sick.  
a. post office                      b. school                      c. hospital                      d. supermarket
- A lot of ..... visit Hurghada. They enjoy the nice weather.  
a. tourists                      b. thieves                      c. clubs                      d. rides
- Tourists usually go on ..... when they are in the Sahara Desert.  
a. visits                      b. picnics                      c. tents                      d. safaris
- The ..... is the place where I learn.  
a. school                      b. hospital                      c. office                      d. supermarket

## Unit 5

|              |                       |                   |               |                |               |
|--------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| electrician  | فني كهرباء            | parcel            | طرد           | plumber        | سباك          |
| screwdriver  | مفك براغي             | garbage collector | جامع القمامة  | tape measure   | شريط القياس   |
| mechanic     | ميكانيكي              | blocks            | مكعبات [لعبة] | fix            | يصلح          |
| curious      | محب للإستطلاع / فضولي | bus driver        | سائق حافلة    | pros and cons  | مزايا وعيوب   |
| mail carrier | ساعي البريد           | lightning         | ظاهرة البرق   | messy          | فوضوي         |
| socket       | مقبس كهرباء           | faucet            | صنبور ماء     | electric shock | صدمة كهربائية |
| pipe         | ماسورة - أنبوب        | plug              | قابس [فيشة]   | storm          | عاصفة         |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An ..... fixes pipes and faucets.  
a. mechanic      b. plumber      c. bus driver      d. electrician
2. A/An ..... takes the trash.  
a. garbage collector      b. mail carrier  
c. plumber      d. electrician
3. Never put anything into a ....., only use plugs.  
a. tape      b. box      c. bin      d. socket
4. She loved to experiment. She was very .....  
a. sad      b. angry      c. curious      d. lazy
5. The electricians connect ....., so that we can use lights.  
a. bus      b. bag      c. garbage      d. electricity

## Unit 6

|                  |               |              |                   |           |                |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|-----------|----------------|
| fisherman        | صياد سمك      | disappointed | محبط              | encourage | يشجع           |
| guide            | مرشد سياحي    | engine       | محرك              | farmer    | فلاح / مُزارع  |
| education        | تعليم         | librarian    | أمين مكتبة        | respect   | احترام / يحترم |
| tourism industry | صناعة السياحة | shelf        | رف                | get off   | ينزل           |
| surprising       | مفاجئ - مذهش  | renewable    | متجدد             | patient   | صبور           |
| non-renewable    | غير متجدد     | cut down     | يقطع              | fresh     | طازج           |
| catch            | يصطاد         | fish van     | شاحنة بيع الأسماك | job       | وظيفة          |



## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The fisherman ..... a lot of fish.  
a. catches      b. grows      c. takes      d. drives
2. A ..... works in the tourism industry.  
a. librarian      b. guide      c. farmer      d. fisherman
3. I respect the ..... . I put my book back on the shelf.  
a. bus driver      b. librarian      c. cleaner      d. teacher
4. A ..... works on the sea.  
a. librarian      b. fisherman      c. guide      d. farmer
5. The person who grows plants is called a/an .....  
a. farmer      b. guide      c. fisherman      d. engineer



## II Language

### Unit 1

| Conjunction أداة الربط | Usage الاستخدام                                    | Example مثال   |
|------------------------|--|--|
| and (و)                | to add two ideas together<br>لإضافة فكرتين معًا    | - I play basketball <b>and</b> football in the park. |
| but (لكن)              | to contrast two ideas<br>لتوضيح التناقض بين فكرتين | - I don't eat candy, <b>but</b> I like eating fruit. |



#### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I eat fruit, ..... **[and]** I don't eat candy.
- She likes to play football, ..... **[and]** she can't play it.
- Let's ..... **[eating]** lunch.
- What ..... **[are]** your favorite food ?

### Unit 2

| Adjective الصفة                    | Comparative المقارنة  | Example مثال  |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| Short adjectives<br>الصفات القصيرة | في حالة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين<br>نضيف للصفة (er) ثم (than)          | - A mouse is <b>smaller</b> <b>than</b> an elephant.            |
| Long adjectives<br>الصفات الطويلة  | في حالة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين<br>نضع قبل الصفة (more) وبعدها (than) | - Crocodiles are <b>more</b> <b>dangerous</b> <b>than</b> fish. |



#### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The elephants is ..... **[big]** than the dog.
- The giraffes are ..... **[heavy]** than the rabbits.
- Crocodiles are ..... **[dangerous]** than fennec foxes.
- The bear is ..... **[strong]** than the pelican.

### Unit 3

| Adjective الصفة                    | Superlative التفضيل   | Example مثال  |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| Short adjectives<br>الصفات القصيرة | في حالة المقارنة بين أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين [تفضيل] نضيف للصفة القصيرة [est] ونضع قبلها [the] | - A reed is <b>the tallest</b> plant.                   |
| Long adjectives<br>الصفات الطويلة  | في حالة المقارنة بين أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين [تفضيل] نضع قبل الصفة الطويلة [the most]          | - I think the rose is <b>the most beautiful</b> flower. |



#### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Nada is a very ..... [beauty] girl.
- I have the ..... [heavy] bag.
- Snakes are the ..... [more] dangerous animals.
- The sunflower is ..... [than] tallest.

### Unit 4

| Prepositions of place<br>حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان | Giving directions<br>إعطاء الاتجاهات  |
|---|---|
| above<br>فوق                                      | Go straight ahead. سربشكل مستقيم / للأمام.<br>Turn left / right. اتجه يساراً / يميناً.<br>It's on the corner. إنه في الزاوية. |
| behind<br>خلف                                     |   |
| between<br>بين                                    |   |
| in front of<br>أمام                               |   |
| next to<br>بجوار / بجانب                          |   |



#### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The school is in front ..... [on] the bank.
- The park is next ..... [of] the museum.
- Ali ..... [live] in Hurgada.
- Go straight ahead and then ..... [turns] right.

## Unit 5

| Demonstrative pronoun<br>ضمير إشارة | Use الاستخدام               | Example مثال   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| This is ... هذا يكون ..             | للإشارة إلى شيء قريب مفرد   | - <b>This</b> is the socket the electrician is fixing. |
| These are ... هؤلاء يكونوا ..       | للإشارة إلى أشياء قريبة جمع | - <b>These</b> are the plumber's tools.                |
| That is ... ذلك يكون ..             | للإشارة إلى شيء بعيد مفرد   | - <b>That's</b> the mail carrier's parcel.             |
| Those are ... أولئك يكونوا ..       | للإشارة إلى أشياء بعيدة جمع | - <b>Those</b> drivers are driving the new buses.      |



### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I like ..... [**this**] flowers.
2. .... [These] rabbit is white.
3. That ..... [are] your ball.
4. Yesterday, he ..... [watch] TV.

## Unit 6

The prefix "dis-" means "not"

تعني "البادئة -" dis " (ليس)

dis + main verb = not + main verb  
dis + like = not + like

He dislikes ice cream.

هو لا يحب الآيس كريم.



### Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She ..... [water] the plant every day.
2. Do you ..... [likes] English ?
3. Ali ..... [live] in Cairo.
4. He didn't pass the exam. He was ..... [appointed].



### III The most important 20 correction sentences

الهدف من هذا الجزء : تجميع أهم ٢٠ فكرة مختلفة وردت في سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء في اختبارات المحافظات للأعوام السابقة.

| Sentence   | Correction   | Reason  |
|--|--------------|---|
| 1. I want to be healthy, ..... [and]<br>I don't like sports. | but          | نستخدم [but]<br>لوجود تناقض بين الجملتين.                       |
| 2. Omar is kind ..... [but] helpful.                         | and          | نستخدم [and]<br>لربط فكرتين مقابلتين                            |
| 3. Horses are ..... [most] beautiful<br>than camels.         | more         | نستخدم [more] مع [than]<br>لمقارنة الصفات الطويلة               |
| 4. How ..... [tall] does the camel live ?                    | long         | نستخدم [How long]<br>للسؤال عن المدة                            |
| 5. The sunflower is the ..... [taller]<br>flower.            | tallest      | نضيف للصفة [est] بعد [the] في<br>حالة التفضيل مع الصفات القصيرة |
| 6. Lara is a ..... [beauty] girl.                            | beautiful    | نضيف للكلمة [ful]<br>لتحويلها إلى صفة                           |
| 7. .... [What] is the tree?<br>- In front of the house.      | Where        | نستخدم [Where]<br>للسؤال عن مكان                                |
| 8. The chair is next ..... [of] the table.                   | to           | نستخدم [to] بعد [next]  |
| 9. .... [Are] this your school?                              | Is           | نستخدم [Is] مع [this]   |
| 10. These ..... [child] are playing.                         | children     | نستخدم [جمع] لوجود<br>[These] ولوجود [are]                      |
| 11. He is ..... [appointed]. He couldn't<br>win.             | disappointed | نستخدم [disappointed] بمعنى<br>محبط بسبب عدم استطاعته الفوز     |
| 12. Cheetah is the ..... [fast] animal.                      | fastest      | نستخدم [صيغة تفضيل] نضيف<br>للصفة القصيرة [est] بعد the         |
| 13. The armchair is ..... [next] of the<br>bookcase.         | in front     | نستخدم [in front] لوجود of                                      |

|  |         |  |
|--|---------|--|
| 14. .... [Who] big is the daisy?<br>It's a big flower. | How     | نستخدم (How) مع (big)<br>للسؤال عن الحجم                               |
| 15. The train is ..... [fastest] than the bus.         | faster  | نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er)<br>وبعدها than للمقارنة                        |
| 16. The ball is ..... [on] the bed and the table.      | between | نستخدم (between) لوجود<br>مكائين                                       |
| 17. Those ..... [is] my pencils.                       | are     | نستخدم (are) مع (Those)  |
| 18. How ..... [heavy] is the horse?<br>- It's 88 kph.  | fast    | تم ذكر السرعة في الإجابة<br>لذلك نستخدم (How fast)<br>للسؤال عن السرعة |
| 19. .... [Taking] the second left.                     | Take    | نستخدم (مصدر الفعل) لإعطاء<br>تعليمات                                  |
| 20. I want to ..... [being] an engineer.               | be      | نستخدم (مصدر الفعل) بعد<br>want to                                     |

تدريبات على السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان طبقاً لوحدات المنهج.

• Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

## Unit 1

### - Conjunctions

1. In summer, it's dry ..... [but] hot.
2. I want to be healthy, ..... [and] I don't like vegetables.
3. I want to play football, ..... [and] I hurt my leg.
4. I can speak English ..... [or] French.
5. That cat is cute ..... [but] quiet.
6. I like reading stories ..... [but] I like watching films, too.

## Unit 2

### - Comparative adjectives - Questions with "How .... ?"

1. The whale is ..... [big] than the shark.
2. The giraffe is ..... [tall] than the lion.
3. Cats are nicer ..... [than] dogs.
4. Crocodiles are ..... [many] dangerous than turtles.
5. How ..... [tall] does the horse live ? - About 25 - 30 years.
6. Fruit and vegetables are ..... [healthy] than candies.
7. How ..... [long] is the horse ? - It's 88 kph.
8. Horses are ..... [most] beautiful than camels.

## Unit 3

### - Superlative adjectives

### - The suffix "-ful"

1. Elephants are the ..... [bigger] animals.
2. Crocodiles and snakes are the ..... [more] dangerous animals.
3. This cat is the ..... [nice] in our street.
4. Which animal is the ..... [scary] ?
5. The sunflower is ..... [that] tallest flower.
6. The rose is the ..... [more] beautiful flower.
7. Salma is a ..... [beauty] girl.
8. My brother likes ..... [colorfully] flowers.
9. Ali is a ..... [care] driver. He drives carefully.
10. My car is the ..... [fast] one.

## Unit 4

### - Prepositions of place

### - Asking about place

1. .... [How] is my book ? - On the table.
2. I like sitting ..... [above] the couch.
3. The cat is ..... [on] front of the tree.
4. The school is next ..... [of] the post office.
5. The children are sitting ..... [above] to the tree.
6. There is a chair ..... [in] to the table.
7. My car is ..... [in] the bike and the bus.

## Unit 5

### - Demonstrative pronouns

1. My father bought those ..... [toy] for me.
2. .... [Are] this his house ?
3. Those ..... [plumber] fix the pipes.
4. This ..... [are] the mail carrier.
5. That ..... [are] your pen.
6. These ..... [mechanic] work in the repair shop.

## Unit 6

### - What we want to be

### - The prefix "dis-"

1. What do you ..... [wanted] to be ?
2. The cat ..... [appeared]. I can't see it.
3. He wants to ..... [being] an engineer.
4. The girl is ..... [appointed], she didn't pass the exam.





★ Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A**

books - interesting - history - Egypt - tourism

I'm Kareem. I am Egyptian. I'm a guide. I work in the [1] ..... industry. Many people come to visit [2] ..... every year. There are many [3] ..... places to visit in Egypt. It's my job to explain the [4] ..... to the tourists.

**B**

heat - eyes - small - fur - ears

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. Its [1] ..... are big. It eats insects and [2] ..... mice. It's hot in the desert during the day. The fennec fox loses [3] ..... from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick [4] ..... keeps it warm.

**C**

color - helped - touched - very - beautiful

My house is old. I wanted to make it [1] ..... I repainted it. The new [2] ..... was green and red. My friends [3] ..... me. We were [4] ..... happy.

**D**

mechanic - faucets - lights - cleaner - electrician

We have a big house. A [1] ..... keeps our house clean. An [2] ..... connected electricity, so we can use the [3] ..... A plumber connected the pipes and [4] ....., so we can have water. We like our house very much.

★ Read the text and answer the questions.

1

I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This text is about "The ..... job".  
a. doctor's      b. teacher's      c. engineer's      d. farmer's
- Teachers need to be very .....  
a. nervous      b. patient      c. unkind      d. ugly

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is the job of a teacher the best ?

.....

4. Who can change the students' lives ?

.....

2

When Dalia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she became older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Dalia when you want to change something in your house.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text talks about ".....".  
a. Dalia's sister      b. Dalia      c. Mona      d. Heba
- Dalia always carried a .....  
a. doll      b. dog      c. tape measure      d. pen

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When can you call Dalia ?

.....

4. What did she start making when she was older ?

.....



## السؤال الخامس في الورقة الامتحانية

★ Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I love burgers, ..... [or] I only eat one a week.
2. I speak English ..... [but] French.
3. The crocodile is ..... [big] than the snake.
4. The elephant is the ..... [fat] animal.
5. Excuse me, ..... [when] is the post office ?
6. The library is the ..... [quiet] place to study in.
7. Which fruit is the ..... [more] expensive in the supermarket ?
8. The hospital is next ..... [of] the school.

## السؤال السادس في الورقة الامتحانية

★ Punctuate the following.

1. hurghada is on the Red Sea  
.....
2. crocodiles are dangerous animals  
.....
3. which is your favorite room  
.....
4. i think crocodiles are scary  
.....
5. egyptian farmers produce many things  
.....
6. The land in damietta governorate is rich in nutrients  
.....
7. the hospital is next to the school  
.....





## Important paragraphs

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية (للمزيد من التدريب على الموضوعات في نهاية كتاب الشرح)

### "Food in Egypt"

Egyptian farmers produce many things. We grow rice in Egypt. We grow tomatoes and onions. We raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

### "The life cycle of a tomato"

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

### "Mechanics"

My favorite job is a mechanic. The mechanics work in the repair shop. They fix the cars and buses. The mechanic's job is very important. The mechanic is fixing my dad's car. He is clever.

### "Desert habitat"

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. In the desert, there isn't much rain. Plants that live in it don't need a lot of water. It's very hot in the desert.

### "Rhim gazelle"

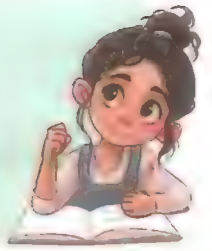
Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun.

### "Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job"

I'm happy to write this email to you. There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. They speak to a lot of people. The mail bag is very heavy. He wakes up very early. Every body likes getting mails, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

### "Life on the farm"

I'm happy to write this email to you. I live on a farm with my family. We use plants to make the land green. We use rainwater to water the seeds. We bring animals to the land. We grow rice, tomatoes and wheat. We love our farm.



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Snakes and crocodiles are very .....  
a. nice                      b. funny                      c. dangerous                      d. cute
- ..... eat insects, birds and lizards.  
a. Snakes                      b. Chickens                      c. Goats                      d. Camels
- All animals are .....  
a. funny                      b. dangerous                      c. unimportant                      d. important
- Crocodiles ..... a very important job.  
a. make                      b. do                      c. play                      d. cut

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Watermelons and ..... are my favorite fruits.  
a. potatoes                      b. onions                      c. peppers                      d. grapes
- I live in a/an ..... I like living on the water.  
a. houseboat                      b. apartment                      c. tent                      d. house
- Nadia loves to eat fruit and vegetables. She is very .....  
a. angry                      b. healthy                      c. unhealthy                      d. sad
- He was sick, so he went to .....  
a. office                      b. school                      c. hospital                      d. supermarket

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

electrician - collector - wires - pipes - bus driver

All jobs are important. The garbage [1] ..... takes away the garbage. He keeps our houses clean. The [2] ..... connects the electricity, so I can use the computer. The plumber connects the [3] ..... and faucets. The [4] ..... drives students to school.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My dad is an electrician. He connects electricity to houses. He helps people use lights, watch TV and use computers. Electricity is important, but it can harm us, too. My dad works safely with electricity. He uses a screwdriver and never touches electrical things with wet hands. He never puts anything in a socket. Also an electrician's job is very dangerous, but my dad loves it because this job makes things work !





**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The fennec fox lives in the .....  
a. rainforest      b. desert      c. sea      d. mangrove
- The fennec fox is ..... than other foxes.  
a. smaller      b. bigger      c. taller      d. shorter
- Its ears are .....  
a. small      b. short      c. big      d. happy
- The fennec fox has thick ..... to stay warm.  
a. feather      b. skin      c. fur      d. leaves

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We can buy food from the .....  
a. supermarket      b. hospital      c. post office      d. library
- Lots of ..... go to the Sahara Desert on safaris.  
a. doctors      b. nurses      c. boys      d. tourists
- The ..... waters the plants.  
a. teacher      b. doctor      c. gardener      d. scientist
- I like fruits like apples and .....  
a. milk      b. bananas      c. chickens      d. potatoes

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

people - carrier - day - doctor - job

I am Ali. I work as a mail [1] ..... I walk all [2] ..... and get a lot of exercise. I see different [3] ..... every day. My [4] ..... is difficult, but I like it very much.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Crock is a young crocodile. He's two years old. Crock is green and has got a big mouth with lots of teeth. Crock has a long tail. Crock lives in hot places and dirty water that helps it to hide. Crock eats rabbits and birds. It can swim and stay under water. Crock sleeps with an eye open.

Big crocodiles can eat people and big animals, they are very dangerous. We can see crocodiles in the zoo and on TV.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Crock has got a big mouth with lots of .....  
a. nails                      b. fingers                      c. teeth                      d. hands
2. Crock has a long .....  
a. tail                      b. neck                      c. leg                      d. eye

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Crock live ?  
.....
4. What does Crock eat ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. .... [When] does Mohamed live ? - He lives in a big city.
2. The office is ..... [under] to the shop.
3. I want to ..... [is] a doctor.
4. I love ..... [made] cakes.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

ahmed and Hazem are friends

.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"My house"**

**Guiding elements :** - bedrooms                      - kitchen

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- My house is .....  
a. small                      b. big                      c. bad                      d. messy
- I can play in the .....  
a. bedroom                      b. kitchen                      c. bathroom                      d. garden
- My favorite room is the .....  
a. living room                      b. bedroom                      c. dining room                      d. bathroom
- I can see the whole street from the .....  
a. TV                      b. sofa                      c. balcony                      d. radio

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We use ..... to make sugar.  
a. onions                      b. sugarcane                      c. rice                      d. tomatoes
- Horses eat grass and drink ..... water.  
a. unhealthy                      b. salt                      c. sea                      d. fresh
- We go to ..... when we are sick.  
a. hospital                      b. office                      c. school                      d. beach
- The ..... helps me in the library.  
a. singer                      b. plumber                      c. driver                      d. librarian

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

Plumbers – catch – rice – Mail – Teachers

All jobs are important. Farmers grow [1] ..... Fishermen [2] ..... fish in the sea. [3] ..... fix faucets and connect pipes. [4] ..... carriers deliver parcels.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It is smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. It needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It loses heat from its ears during the day. At night, its thick fur keeps it warm.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about the .....  
a. river                      b. farmers                      c. snakes                      d. fennec fox
2. It weighs around ..... kilogram.  
a. three                      b. one                      c. half                      d. two

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the fennec fox eat ?  
.....
4. Where does the fennec fox live ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. It's in ..... [ next] of the school.
2. The elephant is the ..... [ bigger] animal.
3. These ..... [ is] pens.
4. I eat chicken, ..... [and] I don't eat pizza.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

he lives in an apartment  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Camels"**

**Guiding elements :** - perfect

- without water

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Hossam moved to a new apartment last .....  
a. week                      b. month                      c. night                      d. year
- Hossam's apartment is .....  
a. fantastic                      b. ugly                      c. bad                      d. small
- Hossam's favorite room is the .....  
a. living room                      b. kitchen                      c. bedroom                      d. dining room
- The new apartment has a/an ..... balcony.  
a. old                      b. new                      c. short                      d. big

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is .....  
a. healthy                      b. scary                      c. tired                      d. unhealthy
- The fennec fox has thick .....  
a. mouth                      b. fur                      c. eye                      d. head
- A mail carrier brings us .....  
a. pipes                      b. faucets                      c. parcels                      d. cars
- Farmers in my country ..... chickens and cows.  
a. plant                      b. grow                      c. make                      d. raise

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

food – supermarket – fresh – office – kind

This is Hana. She works at the [1] ..... near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy [2] ..... Hana checks the food is [3] ..... She helps us when we can't find something. She is very [4] ..... We all love her.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Alexandria is a big city in Egypt. It is in the north of Egypt on the sea. About 5 million people live in this part of Egypt. I visit Alexandria with my family in the summer. We go by bus. When we go to Alexandria, I swam in the sea with my brothers and sisters. Alexandria is famous for its amazing beaches and Alexandria Library. Tourists like to visit Alexandria governorate.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about .....  
a. Damietta                      b. Cairo                      c. Alexandria                      d. Aswan
2. I visit Alexandria with my family in the .....  
a. summer                      b. winter                      c. fall                      d. spring

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where is Alexandria ?  
.....
4. How many people live in Alexandria ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. Camels are ..... [tall] than horses.
2. The mechanic ..... [fix] cars and buses.
3. .... [That] bird is so near. I can see it well.
4. Do you like ..... [help] people ?

**6 Punctuate the following.**

We grow cotton in egypt  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Different jobs"**

**Guiding elements :**

- Which job is the most interesting ? Why ?
- What is your dream job ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The ..... habitat doesn't have much rain.  
a. lakes                      b. rivers                      c. desert                      d. agricultural
- The plants don't need a lot of ..... in the desert.  
a. seeds                      b. water                      c. soil                      d. wind
- ..... work in the agricultural habitat.  
a. Farmers                      b. Mechanics                      c. Cleaners                      d. Plumbers
- Plants that live ..... the rivers and lakes need a lot of water.  
a. on                      b. above                      c. under                      d. near

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- He can't walk, so he uses a/an ..... to move.  
a. armchair                      b. wheelchair                      c. couch                      d. bed
- Camels have ..... feet, so they can walk on the sand.  
a. flat                      b. long                      c. tall                      d. heavy
- They work on a tourist ..... on the Nile.  
a. car                      b. bus                      c. train                      d. boat
- If we get an electrical ....., we can't control our bodies.  
a. shake                      b. cheek                      c. check                      d. shock

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

street – fantastic – relax – drive – balcony

Look at my lovely new apartment. It's [1] ..... . My favorite room is the living room with the [2] ..... that I can see the whole [3] ..... . My sister loves her bedroom because she can [4] ..... in it.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Mrs Hana is a cook. She works in a school kitchen. She cooks lunch for students every week. She makes pies, sandwiches and beefburgers. She cooks meat, fish and vegetables, too. She washes hundreds of dishes every week! The students like her delicious meals. Today, she is at home and she is making an apple pie. She is cooking lunch for two people herself and her son.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about ".....".  
a. Food                      b. A cook                      c. Fish                      d. Lunch
2. The underlined word "delicious" means ..... to eat.  
a. bad                      b. harmful                      c. dangerous                      d. nice

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Mrs Hana work ?  
.....
4. What is Mrs Hana cooking today at home ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. .... [That] mountains are very high.
2. The trees are ..... [above] of the apartments.
3. Lions are ..... [dangerous] than cows.
4. He can speak English, ..... [and] he can't speak French.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

the bear is a big animal  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Egyptian food"**

**Guiding elements : - delicious**

**- dishes**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Camels are ..... !  
a. amazing                      b. ugly                      c. boring                      d. bad
- Camels can ..... things and people to cross the desert.  
a. sleep                      b. carry                      c. eat                      d. live
- We can use camels' ..... to make clothes.  
a. nose                      b. ears                      c. meat                      d. fur
- Camels are perfect for the .....  
a. river                      b. flat                      c. house                      d. desert

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Camels can live without ..... for a long time.  
a. clothes                      b. water                      c. fur                      d. feet
- The ..... grow under the soil.  
a. shoots                      b. flowers                      c. roots                      d. fruits
- I like sitting in the ..... to see the whole street.  
a. kitchen                      b. bathroom                      c. dinning room                      d. balcony
- The plumber fixes the pipes and .....  
a. faucets                      b. electricity                      c. parcels                      d. lights

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

leaves – roots – shoot – water – seeds

Farmers put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and [1] ..... , so it can grow. The seed grows [2] ..... under the soil. Then it grows a [3] ..... and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows [4] ..... and flowers. This is called the germination process.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician makes things work. A garbage collector takes out the trash. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. A mechanic fixes cars and buses. All these workers should work together to help and make our life easier.





**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We put a seed in the .....  
a. soil                      b. sky                      c. sea                      d. plant
- The seed needs sunlight and ..... to grow.  
a. juice                      b. sugar                      c. water                      d. seeds
- The seed grows ..... under the soil.  
a. flowers                      b. roots                      c. shoots                      d. leaves
- The plant grows leaves and .....  
a. flowers                      b. seeds                      c. roots                      d. shoots

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- I'm ..... of my father because he could save the child.  
a. proud                      b. angry                      c. worried                      d. sad
- In a ..... , someone tries to win.  
a. palace                      b. competition                      c. germination                      d. life cycle
- Fruits are ..... and healthy.  
a. hot                      b. salty                      c. sweet                      d. busy
- He works with tourists. He is a .....  
a. guide                      b. plumber                      c. doctor                      d. farmer

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

special – carry – feet – fur – feathers

Camels are amazing animals. They have large, flat [1] ....., so they can walk on the sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. They have [2] ..... ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. We can use their [3] ..... to make clothes. Camels can help us to [4] ..... things.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Noura moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big and near Noura's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Noura's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Noura can see the street from the balcony.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about "Noura's .....".  
a. school                      b. apartment                      c. family                      d. room
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a/an .....  
a. kitchen                      b. apartment                      c. living room                      d. bedroom

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What can Noura see from the balcony ?  
.....
4. How many bedrooms does the apartment have ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. I like chocolate ..... [but] ice cream.
2. A mouse is ..... [small] than an elephant.
3. The opposite of "appear" is ..... [unappear].
4. These ..... [is] my books.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

where does the farmer work  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Rhim gazelles"**

**Guiding elements :** - Sahara Desert                      - long horns

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Mona works at the .....  
a. bank                      b. school                      c. hospital                      d. supermarket
- We see Mona when we buy .....  
a. wood                      b. food                      c. clothes                      d. books
- Mona checks the food is .....  
a. fresh                      b. dirty                      c. salty                      d. ugly
- Mona is very ..... and happy.  
a. rude                      b. busy                      c. kind                      d. bad

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Some birds have long .....  
a. hands                      b. horns                      c. faces                      d. beaks
- It is very ..... in the desert during the day.  
a. hot                      b. tall                      c. high                      d. cold
- I go to the ..... to buy clothes and shoes.  
a. school                      b. office                      c. hospital                      d. shopping mall
- Tomatoes are ..... before they are red.  
a. green                      b. yellow                      c. brown                      d. pink

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

biggest – Nile – family – village – bed

My friend Salah lives in a [1] ..... . It's next to the [2] ..... .  
He lives with his [3] ..... . He has a brother and a sister. He lives in  
a house. It's the [4] ..... house in the village. Salah is a good boy.  
He helps his mom.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

There are many beautiful animals that live in the desert. Rhim gazelles are one of them. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about "The .....".  
a. fennec fox      b. Sahara Desert      c. rhim gazelles      d. plants
2. The underlined word "beautiful" means .....  
a. hard      b. ugly      c. small      d. lovely

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where do rhim gazelles live ?  
.....
4. Why do rhim gazelles have yellow-white coats ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. The giraffes are the ..... [tall] animals.
2. She likes to play football, ..... [and] she can't play it well.
3. This ..... [are] the socket the electrician is fixing.
4. Let's ..... [having] our breakfast.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

He lives is cairo  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"How do you show respect ?"**

**Guiding elements :** - teacher  
- librarian  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Ali lives in a/an ..... with his family.  
a. house                      b. apartment                      c. tent                      d. boat
- Ali's house is the ..... in the village.  
a. smallest                      b. biggest                      c. nicest                      d. shortest
- It's ..... a yellow house and a brown house.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. between                      d. above
- There are ..... trees behind the house.  
a. tall                      b. short                      c. small                      d. thin

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- I live in a/an ..... It's made of cloth.  
a. houseboat                      b. apartment                      c. tent                      d. house
- We ..... respect to our teachers.  
a. show                      b. blow                      c. grow                      d. play
- The ..... is the place where we learn.  
a. park                      b. school                      c. mall                      d. hospital
- The garbage collectors take away our .....  
a. pipes                      b. garage                      c. water                      d. garbage

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

color – helped – touched – very – beautiful

My house is old. I wanted to make it [1] ..... I repainted it. The new [2] ..... was green and red. My friends [3] ..... me. We were [4] ..... happy .

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

There are many beautiful animals that live in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They don't like to drink a lot of water.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about ".....".  
a. Rhim gazelles      b. Goats      c. Camels      d. Roses
2. The underlined word "protect" means to keep them .....  
a. bad      b. sad      c. safe      d. angry

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What do rhim gazelles eat ?  
.....
4. How do rhim gazelles look ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. These ..... [is] the plumber's tools.
2. My house is ..... [behind] to the school.
3. Let's ..... [has] lunch.
4. A rat is ..... [small] than a cat.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i live in Cairo  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

"My home"

Guiding elements : - big      - rooms

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The land in Damietta governorate is rich in .....  
a. sports                      b. nutrients                      c. seeds                      d. weather
- The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, ..... and guavas.  
a. mango                      b. potatoes                      c. wheat                      d. strawberry
- ..... catch thousands of fish in the sea.  
a. Teachers                      b. Farmers                      c. Engineers                      d. Fishermen
- ..... is good in Damietta.  
a. Reading                      b. Food                      c. Sugar                      d. Life

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- I can relax and ..... my homework in my bedroom.  
a. do                      b. make                      c. watch                      d. get
- Cheng was good at looking ..... his garden.  
a. at                      b. for                      c. after                      d. from
- How ..... does a rhinoceros live ? - About 14 years.  
a. heavy                      b. long                      c. tall                      d. color
- The fox's thick fur keeps it .....  
a. cold                      b. heat                      c. hot                      d. warm

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

juicy - beak - paw - hungry - thirsty

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very [1] ..... They are both looking at a big, [2] ..... fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its [3] ..... The pelican opens its [4] ..... It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician fixes sockets. A **garbage** collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work together to help people and make their life easier.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We need a/an ..... to fix sockets.  
a. electrician      b. plumber      c. bus driver      d. mail carrier
2. The underlined word garbage means .....  
a. faucet      b. trash      c. pipe      d. letter

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does a plumber do ?  
.....
4. Why is the job of a bus driver interesting ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. I don't really like ..... [drive].
2. Snakes and crocodiles ..... [be] dangerous.
3. The sunflower is the ..... [big].
4. .... [These] is a garbage collector.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

what job do you want to do  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Camels"**

**Guiding elements : - desert**

**- flat feet**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Samir grows many ..... every year.  
a. rice                      b. fruits                      c. tomatoes                      d. cotton
- He gives the ..... water they need.  
a. flowers                      b. plants                      c. trees                      d. leaves
- Samir sends a lot of fruit to the .....  
a. house                      b. bank                      c. farm                      d. factory
- Samir is a good .....  
a. farmer                      b. teacher                      c. doctor                      d. vet

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Camels are perfect for the .....  
a. river                      b. desert                      c. sea                      d. lake
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. seeds                      b. leaves                      c. roots                      d. nuts
- People in China speak .....  
a. English                      b. Arabic                      c. French                      d. Chinese
- The ..... connects the pipes.  
a. plumber                      b. vet                      c. teacher                      d. driver

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

throw – driver – trash – listen – get

We should show respect to the people around us. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw the (1) ..... in the street. I respect the teacher. I (2) ..... to him carefully. I respect the bus (3) ..... . I say thank you when I (4) ..... off the bus.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Sama. I spend my weekend at home with my family. We have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch, and dinner. I always have milk and eggs for breakfast. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sits together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. I often help her in the kitchen. Today we are having potatoes and chicken. It looks delicious !

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Sama's family has ..... meals every day.  
a. one                      b. two                      c. three                      d. four
2. They are having ..... and chicken for lunch today.  
a. pasta                      b. rice                      c. potatoes                      d. salad

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does Sama have for breakfast ?  
.....

4. What is Sama's favorite meal ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. I want to play, ..... [so] my leg hurts.
2. The cow is ..... [small] than the elephant.
3. The living room is ..... [behind] to the bathroom.
4. .... [This] children are going to school.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

my favorite animal is the lion  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Fennec foxes"**

**Guiding elements :** - Where do they live ?

- What do they eat ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Ahmed wants to be a/an .....  
 a. doctor                      b. electrician                      c. teacher                      d. engineer
- Electricity is very .....  
 a. safe                      b. nice                      c. dangerous                      d. interesting
- You shouldn't touch anything electrical with ..... hands.  
 a. wet                      b. dirty                      c. dry                      d. happy
- You never put anything into a ..... , only use the plugs.  
 a. bag                      b. box                      c. socket                      d. cupboard

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Spiders are ..... insects. People are afraid of them  
 a. beautiful                      b. scary                      c. unhelpful                      d. cute
- The boy is ..... He didn't pass the test.  
 a. disappointed                      b. happy                      c. good                      d. fine
- We send letters at the .....  
 a. hospital                      b. school                      c. supermarket                      d. post office
- The ..... grow above the soil.  
 a. roots                      b. shoots                      c. leaves                      d. seeds

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

school – fruits – animals – gets – factory

My grandfather is a farmer. He [1] ..... up early every day. He grows vegetables and [2] ..... . He sends a lot of fruits to the [3] ..... to make juice. He keeps [4] ..... for meat and birds for eggs. I visit him on holiday.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruits like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. When they grew up, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees because they are important for our life.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea in the text is about ".....".
- a. Growing trees                      b. Growing mangoes  
c. Keeping animals                  d. Playing tennis
2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to .....
- a. fruits                      b. trees                      c. wood                      d. bananas

**B. Answer the following questions.**

- ### 3. Why did Amr want to cut down the trees ?

4. What did Hisham advise Amr to do ?

**5** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I want to play football, ..... [and] my leg hurts.
2. The mouse is ..... [smallest] than the elephant.
3. We live in a village ..... [under] to the Nile.
4. The mechanic ..... [fix] buses and cars.

**6** Punctuate the following.

which food comes from egypt ?

**7** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

## "Camels"

**Guiding elements :** - cross the desert

- live without water

[illegible]

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Mona can see the whole ..... from the balcony.  
a. street                      b. desert                      c. river                      d. village
- The new apartment has ..... rooms.  
a. four                      b. six                      c. five                      d. seven
- Mona likes the .....  
a. balcony                      b. living room                      c. bedroom                      d. kitchen
- The new apartment is .....  
a. small                      b. lovely                      c. not big                      d. bad

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We need to grow ..... to make bread.  
a. lemons                      b. potatoes                      c. wheat                      d. guava
- A ..... is an insect. It gives us honey.  
a. bee                      b. pea                      c. pin                      d. pie
- The air in big cities is ..... because of factories and cars.  
a. fresh                      b. polluted                      c. clean                      d. nice
- Nora is a ..... She delivers parcels to all the city.  
a. doctor                      b. mechanic                      c. plumber                      d. mail carrier

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

hospital - learn - shopping mall - letters - clothes

There are different places in my town. We buy food at the supermarket. We send [1] ..... at the post office. I [2] ..... at school. I buy clothes and shoes at the [3] ..... . My mom and dad work in an office. We go to the [4] ..... when we are sick.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Kareem. I live with my family in Ismailia. We have three meals every day : breakfast, lunch and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. Today we are having potatoes and chicken for lunch. It looks delicious !

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We are having potatoes and chicken for ..... today.  
a. breakfast                      b. lunch                      c. dinner                      d. break
2. We have ..... meals every day.  
a. two                      b. one                      c. four                      d. three

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why does Kareem like lunch ?  
.....
4. Where does Kareem's family live ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. The giraffes are the ..... [tall] animals.
2. She likes to play football, ..... [and] she can't play it.
3. This ..... [are] the socket the electrician is fixing.
4. My school is next ..... [two] the park.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

what color are tomatoes  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Agricultural habitat"**

- Guiding elements :** - Where do farmers work ?  
- Which plants grow in the agricultural habitat ?  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Amira is from .....  
 a. Cairo                      b. Al-Fayoum                      c. Aswan                      d. Tanta
- Amira's father is a/an .....  
 a. teacher                      b. fisherman                      c. engineer                      d. farmer
- Amira's mother is a/an .....  
 a. nurse                      b. housewife                      c. teacher                      d. engineer
- Amira's mother likes to help ..... with his work.  
 a. Amira's dad                      b. Amira                      c. Amira's brother                      d. grandpa

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Rhim gazelles have big ears and long ..... on their heads.  
 a. feet                      b. horns                      c. tails                      d. coats
- Mom says that drinking ..... isn't healthy.  
 a. milk                      b. water                      c. juice                      d. cola
- Tomatoes are ..... before they're red.  
 a. orange                      b. purple                      c. green                      d. black
- Lara loved to experiment. She was very .....  
 a. curious                      b. lazy                      c. sad                      d. angry

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

milk – drink – desert – eat – fur

Camels are strong animals. They can carry people and things across the (1) ..... Their (2) ..... is delicious and we can use their (3) ..... to make clothes. Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't (4) ..... a lot of water.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

The seasons of the year are winter, spring, autumn and summer. We are now in winter. It starts on the 21<sup>st</sup> of December and ends on the 20<sup>th</sup> of March. Fathers and teachers always advise their children. We should wear heavy clothes. It is good to have a lot of hot drinks. Healthy food is very important. We should wash our hands before and after we eat. Sleeping early is a key to good health. Doing sports makes the body strong and fit.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. There are ..... seasons in the year.  
a. two                      b. three                      c. four                      d. five
2. The underlined word "wear" means ..... up.  
a. draw                      b. dress                      c. wash                      d. buy

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What season are we in now ?  
.....
4. Why is doing sports important ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. Camels are ..... [big] than horses.
2. My school is ..... [behind] to my house.
3. The doors ..... [is] open.
4. Mai is tall, ..... [and] Dina is short.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

tomatoes are not vegetables, but fruit  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Fishermen"**

**Guiding elements :**

- Where they work                      - What they do
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The fennec fox lives in the ..... of North Africa.  
a. farm                      b. forest                      c. desert                      d. sea
- The fennec fox has big ..... to hear insects and small animals.  
a. legs                      b. ears                      c. eyes                      d. nose
- The fennec fox eats .....  
a. plants                      b. leaves  
c. fruits                      d. insects and small mice
- The fennec fox weighs around ..... kilogram.  
a. one                      b. ten                      c. three                      d. four

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Farmers grow ..... in Egypt.  
a. goats                      b. chickens                      c. rice                      d. cows
- I can sit and watch TV in the .....  
a. bathroom                      b. balcony                      c. kitchen                      d. living room
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. leaves                      b. roots                      c. seeds                      d. soil
- People in the desert live in .....  
a. apartments                      b. tents                      c. houseboats                      d. houses

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

drink – grass – ugly – beautiful – ears

Rhim gazelles look very [1] ..... . They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat [2] ..... , leaves and plants. They have big [3] ..... and long horns. Like camels, they don't need to [4] ..... a lot of water.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

There are many jobs we can do. They are all important. They help us to have a better life. An electrician connects the electricity. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean. Mail carriers deliver letters and parcels. The bus driver helps us to go to school on time. The mechanic fixes cars and buses. All jobs are important.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about " ..... " .  
a. Electricity                      b. Jobs                      c. Water                      d. Computers
2. A ..... helps you keep your house nice and clean.  
a. farmer                                      b. mechanic  
c. garbage collector                      d. plumber

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the mechanic do ?  
.....
4. Who connects the pipes and faucets ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. I want to play football, ..... [and] my leg hurts.
2. Ali is ..... [tall] than Mona.
3. Fishermen ..... [uses] nets to catch fish.
4. The hospital is next ..... [of] the school.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

the fisherman works on a boat  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"My house"**

**Guiding elements :** - living room                                      - bedroom

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Horses are ..... animals.  
a. weak                      b. strong                      c. scary                      d. angry
- Horses can live in the .....  
a. sea                      b. river                      c. desert                      d. lake
- Horses have large, beautiful .....  
a. legs                      b. eyes                      c. ears                      d. hands
- They eat ..... and drink fresh water.  
a. grass                      b. fruit                      c. meat                      d. vegetables

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- A/An ..... helps me in the library.  
a. vet                      b. engineer                      c. librarian                      d. guide
- Some birds have long ..... They use them to eat.  
a. pens                      b. beaks                      c. peas                      d. horns
- A/An ..... fixes cars and buses.  
a. mechanic                      b. electrician                      c. dentist                      d. plumber
- I watch TV in the .....  
a. kitchen                      b. bathroom                      c. living room                      d. garage

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

plumber – mechanic – electrician – garbage – bus driver

All jobs are important in our society. A (1) ..... fixes our cars.  
A garbage collector takes away the (2) ..... A mail carrier delivers letters and parcels. A (3) ..... drives students to school.  
An (4) ..... connects electricity so that we can use the lights.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Hi! I'm Jana. I live in Damietta governorate. It's a beautiful place. The land in Damietta is rich in nutrients. The farmers here can grow lots of crops, like rice, tomatoes, potatoes and oranges. Farmers raise sheep, goats and cows. Damiette is famous for Domiati cheese. The weather here is very nice. Some tourists like to come here because the people here are kind and friendly.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The land in Damietta is rich in ..... .  
a. soil                      b. roots                      c. nutrients                      d. orange
2. Damietta is famous for Domiati ..... .  
a. cheese                      b. milk                      c. yogurt                      d. butter

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What do the farmers grow ?
- .....
4. What do the farmers raise ?
- .....

**5** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The fennec fox is ..... [small] than other foxes.
2. This ..... [are] my book.
3. I like reading, ..... [and] I don't like watching TV.
4. The rose is the ..... [more] beautiful flower.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i live in a city called Hurghada

**7** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

## "Horses"

**Guiding elements : - strong**

- beautiful



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Cheng was a/an .....  
a. gardener                      b. teacher                      c. emperor                      d. engineer
- Cheng lived in .....  
a. Egypt                      b. China                      c. France                      d. Canada
- The emperor would give a ..... to each gardener.  
a. plant                      b. shoot                      c. seed                      d. flower
- The one who could ..... the most beautiful plant would be the next emperor.  
a. eat                      b. water                      c. air                      d. grow

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Fishermen catch .....  
a. fish                      b. elephants                      c. sheep                      d. goats
- Camels have large, flat .....  
a. noses                      b. feet                      c. ears                      d. heads
- Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .....  
a. eyes                      b. boots                      c. coats                      d. shoes
- A librarian works in a .....  
a. hospital                      b. post office                      c. shopping mall                      d. library

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

heat - eyes - small - fur - ears

The fennec fox lives in the desert of North Africa. Its [1] ..... are big. It eats insects and [2] ..... mice. It's hot in the desert during the day. The fennec fox loses [3] ..... from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick [4] ..... keeps it warm.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Ziad. I live on a boat in the summer. My parents work on tourists boats so I go with them. I see many interesting places and meet people from all over the world. I speak English with the tourists. One day, the boat stopped and I saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into river. I called dad who jumped into the river and saved the child. I am so proud of my dad.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about "..... life".  
a. Ziad's                      b. Sherif's                      c. Mazen's                      d. Heba's
2. Ziad lives on a boat in the .....  
a. fall                      b. summer                      c. spring                      d. winter

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What language does Ziad speak with the tourists ?  
.....

4. Who saved the child who fell into the river ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. A giraffe is ..... (tall) than a horse.
2. The living room is next ..... (at) the kitchen.
3. I want to play football, ..... (and) my leg hurts.
4. A crocodile is ..... (most) dangerous than a fish.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

we water the plants every day  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Tomatoes"**

**Guiding elements : - green**

**- seeds**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Hurghada is a ..... in Egypt.  
a. village                      b. city                      c. town                      d. country
- Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt.  
a. west                      b. north                      c. east                      d. south
- Tourists go on safaris in the .....  
a. beach                      b. Sahara Desert                      c. house                      d. Sahl Hasheesh
- The tourists buy things from the .....  
a. sea                      b. hotels                      c. markets                      d. bazaars

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Horses can live in the .....  
a. river                      b. sea                      c. desert                      d. forest
- In Egypt, farmers ..... chickens.  
a. raise                      b. grow                      c. drink                      d. plant
- A/An ..... takes you to school.  
a. mechanic                      b. bus driver                      c. electrician                      d. plumber
- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a. shoots                      b. vegetables                      c. seeds                      d. flowers

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

dangerous – animals – family – camel – strong

Last summer, I went to the zoo. I went with my family. We saw many [1] ..... there. There were snakes. They are [2] ..... and scary. We saw a [3] ..... , too. It's very big and [4] ..... . We saw elephants, monkeys and lions there. We had a nice time.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

I am Salma. I live in a small city with my family. There are stores, offices, a shopping mall and a big library. Every day, I go to school by bus because my house is not near my school. My school is next to the hospital. My father works in that hospital. There is a big park in my city. I go to the park on the weekend to play basketball with my friends. There is also a big supermarket.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about "Salma's .....".  
a. school                      b. town                      c. village                      d. city
2. Salma's school is ..... the hospital.  
a. behind                      b. beside                      c. next to                      d. in front of

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Salma's father work ?  
.....
4. What does Salma do in the park ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. That mechanic ..... [are] fixing the cars.
2. I eat vegetables ..... [but] I exercise.
3. I have the ..... [heavy] bag.
4. The tent is ..... [behind] to the car.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i don't go to school on fridays.  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"How to be healthy"**

**Guiding elements :** - exercise                      - fruit and vegetables

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My uncle is a .....  
a. farmer                      b. vet                      c. nurse                      d. teacher
2. He gets up at ..... every day  
a. three                      b. six                      c. four                      d. two
3. My uncle has two .....  
a. cows                      b. horses                      c. dogs                      d. pens
4. He ..... potatoes.  
a. buys                      b. cuts                      c. grows                      d. cleans

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. A librarian works in a .....  
a. bank                      b. post office                      c. library                      d. hotel
2. People in the desert live in .....  
a. houseboats                      b. tents                      c. apartments                      d. houses
3. Camels have large, flat .....  
a. hands                      b. feet                      c. legs                      d. ears
4. I watch TV in the .....  
a. bedroom                      b. bathroom                      c. kitchen                      d. living room

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

drink - chickens - grow - onions - eat

Farmers [1] ..... a lot of food. They grow rice that we [2] ..... for lunch. Egyptian farmers produce many vegetables like [3] ..... and tomatoes. They also raise [4] ..... and goats. Farmers get eggs from chickens and meat from goats and sheep.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Yousef lives in Aswan. He has a big apartment. Yousef has two sons. There are three bedrooms. The kitchen is next to the bathroom. There are some trees in front of his apartment. The apartment has a big balcony that we can see all the street from it.





**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- I'm a .....  
a. carpenter      b. doctor      c. vet      d. fisherman
- I wake up very ..... every day.  
a. tall      b. soon      c. early      d. late
- I go out on my ..... to catch fish.  
a. car      b. boat      c. bus      d. bike
- I sell my fish in the .....  
a. market      b. house      c. school      d. hospital

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The fisherman ..... a lovely fresh fish.  
a. drew      b. wrote      c. caught      d. threw
- The camel is ..... than the horse.  
a. shorter      b. taller      c. faster      d. smaller
- The ..... connects electricity to light the house.  
a. doctor      b. mechanic      c. electrician      d. plumber
- My grandpa grows .....  
a. chicken      b. eggs      c. fish      d. tomatoes

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

wet – job – dangerous – plugs – sockets

My father is an electrician. He likes his (1) ..... . He knows a lot about electricity. He fixes (2) ..... and plugs. He tells us never to touch electrical things with (3) ..... hands. Electricity is very (4) ..... . It can burn our bodies.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My aunt moved to a new apartment in Luxor. She is very happy because there is a balcony. It is very big. My aunt can see the whole street from the new balcony. My friend and his family live in a houseboat. It is small, but he likes living on water. I love living in a house because it is big. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word "It" refers to a .....  
a. balcony                      b. boat                      c. house                      d. school
2. The main idea of the text is about ".....".  
a. Aunt                      b. Apartment                      c. Different houses                      d. Balcony

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does your aunt live ?  
.....
4. Does your friend like living on water ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. The cat is ..... [biggest] than the mouse.
2. The farmer grows potatoes ..... [but] tomatoes.
3. This ..... [are] my father.
4. The school is ..... [next] the office and the supermarket.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

horses have beautiful eyes  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Different houses"**

Guiding elements : - apartment                      - houseboat

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Tomatoes are ..... before they are red.  
a. blue                      b. red                      c. black                      d. green
- Tomatoes ..... seeds inside.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. are                      d. fruit
- We plant ..... and the plant grows.  
a. vegetables              b. seeds                      c. fish                      d. oranges
- The roots grow ..... the soil.  
a. on                      b. in                      c. under                      d. above

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Farmers ..... chicken to get eggs and meat.  
a. grow                      b. raise                      c. plant                      d. eat
- Plants in the ..... don't need a lot of water.  
a. desert                      b. dessert                      c. door                      d. farm
- I learn math at .....  
a. school                      b. office                      c. hospital                      d. post office
- The fennec fox ..... heat from its ears.  
a. walks                      b. drinks                      c. eats                      d. loses

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

huge – spiders – fennec fox – animals – dangerous

The Sahara Desert covers large parts of Egypt's land. There are a lot of [1] ..... in our country. Crocodiles are [2] ..... and scary, but [3] ..... are helpful. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. Snakes are [4] ..... We should be careful.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Marwa. I'm ten years old. I'm in primary four. My father is a doctor. He helps sick people. He loves his job very much. My mom is a teacher. Her students like her very much. She is kind and friendly. I have one brother. His name is Tarek. He is eight years old. He is in primary two. I want to be a doctor like my father. We are a happy family.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Marwa is ..... years old.  
a. 10                                      b. 11                                      c. 12                                      d. 13
2. Her father is a/an .....  
a. plumber                                      b. electrician                                      c. teacher                                      d. doctor

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What's the main idea of the passage ?  
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "Her" refer to ?  
.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. You ..... (is) a kind boy.
2. How about ..... (buy) some eggs ?
3. We can ..... (found) everything in Taba.
4. Many men ..... (wears) the galabeya.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

i wake up very early every day  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

**"Your house"**

Guiding elements : - rooms                                      - large

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- Hossam's favorite room is the .....  
 a. kitchen                      b. bedroom                      c. living room                      d. dining room
- Hossam ..... do his homework quietly.  
 a. can't                      b. can                      c. is                      d. are
- Hossam has a ..... balcony.  
 a. small                      b. big                      c. cold                      d. hot

## 2 Read the following dialogue and complete with the words below:

live - houseboat - you - Nile

Hazem : Where do [1] ..... live ?

Anas : I live on a [2] ..... What about you ?

Hazem I [3] ..... in a village next to the [4] .....

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Zain. I'm in grade four. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice four times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I eat healthy food. I eat fruit and vegetables. I play basketball with my friends in the park.

### A. Choose the correct answer.

- Zain is in grade .....  
 a. three                      b. four                      c. five
- He likes to play .....  
 a. volleyball                      b. tennis                      c. basketball
- Zain wants to drink more .....  
 a. juice                      b. water                      c. milk

### B. Answer the following questions.

4. How many times do they practice every week ?

.....

5. Does Zain eat healthy food ?

.....

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I sleep in a big ..... It has two big beds.

- a. bathroom                      b. bedroom                      c. kitchen

2. .... is the cat ? – It's under the table.  
a. What                                  b. Why                                  c. Where
3. The mouse is ..... than the elephant.  
a. smallest                                  b. smaller                                  c. small
4. .... keep the school clean.  
a. Cleaners                                  b. Plumbers                                  c. Teachers
5. Camels are perfect for the .....  
a. sea                                  b. lake                                  c. desert

**5** Rearrange these sentences to make correct sentences.

1. next - My home - is - the - to - school.
2. park - play - the - I - in - football.
3. are - and - in - The pelican - the bear - the river.
4. is - the - Where - mall - shopping ?
5. you - helping - Do - people - like ?

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer.

- We grow ..... in Egypt.  
a. rice                      b. flowers                      c. tea
- Farmers raise ..... to get eggs.  
a. cows                      b. chickens                      c. lions
- Our food is ..... .  
a. bad                      b. delicious                      c. salty

**2** Read the following dialogue and complete with the words below.

room - homework - apartment - bedroom

Mom : Look at our lovely new (1) .....

Hala : It's fantastic !

Mom : Which is your favorite (2) ..... ?

Hala : It's my (3) \_\_\_\_\_, I can relax and do my (4) \_\_\_\_\_.



**3 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow – white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

**A. Answer the following questions.**

1. What do rhim gazelles eat ?

.....

2. Where do rhim gazelles live ?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer.**

3. Rhim gazelles don't need a lot of water like .....

a. cats

b. foxes

c. camels

4. They have yellow-white coats to protect them from the .....

a. sun

b. animals

c. moon

5. They have long .....

a. mouth

b. horns

c. eyes

**Choose the correct answer.**

1. The elephant is ..... than the mouse.

a. big

b. bigger

c. biggest

2. The fishermen..... fish.

a. work

b. grow

c. catch

3. Mum cooks in the .....

a. living room

b. kitchen

c. bed

4. The hospital is ..... to school.

a. next

b. behind

c. in front of

5. His car is dirty, he will ..... it.

a. reclean

b. reread

c. redo

**5 Rearrange these sentences to make correct sentences.**

1. eats – The fennec fox – insects – lizards – and.

.....

2. do – you – Where – live ?

.....

3. fastest – Cheetah – is – the – animal.

.....

4. pencil case – My – is – the table – on.

.....

5. want – I – to be – a teacher.

.....

**1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text.**

mice - fur - ears - cold

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big [1] ..... It eats insects and small [2] ..... It is [3] ..... in the desert at night. Its thick [4] ..... keeps it warm.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We send letters at the .....  
a. post office      b. market      c. shop      d. class
- My favorite ..... is mango.  
a. fruit      b. vegetable      c. sport      d. class
- We have ..... in the morning.  
a. lunch      b. dinner      c. breakfast      d. park
- Cows give us .....  
a. fruit      b. onions      c. milk      d. eggs

**3 Read the text and answer the questions below.**

Mostafa is 10 years old. Football is his favorite sport. He plays it once a week. He plays it in the club. He plays it with his cousins. He plays it in the morning. It is fun.

**A. Choose the correct answer.**

- Mostafa is ..... years old.  
a. ten      b. two      c. three      d. twenty
- He plays .....  
a. tennis      b. football      c. basketball      c. judo
- He plays with his .....  
a. friends      b. sisters      c. cousins      c. mom
- They play in the .....  
a. club      b. school      c. street      c. class

**4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences.**

- have - feet - camels - flat  
a. Camels have flat feet.  
b. feet camels have flat.  
c. flat camels feet have.
- get up - I - 7 o'clock - at  
a. at 7 o'clock I up get.  
b. get up I at 7 o'clock.  
c. I get up at 7 o'clock.

**5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d.**

- A. I went there by car.      B. I went to the club yesterday.  
C. I played with my friends.      D. I went home at 6 o'clock.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....





# Listening Texts

## نصوص الاستماع

### 1. نصوص استماع اليوم الأول

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

**A** Damietta is an Egyptian governorate.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes and guavas. Fishermen can catch a lot of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta.

**B** My favorite job is a teacher.

The teachers teach boys and girls. The teacher's job is hard. Our teachers are kind.

**C** Mona lives in a small village.

Her school is near her house. She walks to school every morning. Her school is next to the hospital. In front of the hospital, there is a park. Mona often plays football in the park with her friends.

### 2. نصوص استماع الاختبارات

[1] محافظة القاهرة - إدارة حلوان التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

[2] محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العجوزة التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. It needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It has thick fur that helps the fox stay warm.

[3] محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

My house is big. I can play in the garden. My favorite room is the living room. I can see the whole street from the balcony.

[4] محافظة القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Hossam. I moved to a new apartment last week. My apartment is fantastic. My favorite room is the living room. The new apartment has a big balcony.

[5] محافظة الشرقية - إدارة بلبس التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

There are many habitats. In the desert habitat, there is not much rain. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water. Farmers work in the agricultural habitat. They grow food for us to eat. Plants near the rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

[6] محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes! Camels are perfect for the desert.

[7] محافظة الغربية - إدارة غرب طنطا التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the



soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the plant grows leaves and flowers.

[٨] محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

[٩] محافظة البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

My name's Ali. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

[١٠] محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة شرق كفر الشيخ التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, wheat and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Life is good in Damietta.

[١١] محافظة دمياط - إدارة فارسكور التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

I'm Samir. I grow many fruits every year. I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients they need. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory. I'm a good farmer.

[١٢] محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة شمال التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

My cousin Ahmed wants to be an electrician. He must study and

practice for three years. He tries to know how to work safely with electricity. Electricity is very dangerous. Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use the plugs.

[١٣] محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Mona moved to a new apartment with her family. She loves her house. She can see the whole street from the balcony. The new apartment has four rooms. She likes the balcony. The new apartment is lovely.

[١٤] محافظة الفيوم - إدارة يوسف الصديق التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Hello! I am Amira. I am from Al-Fayoum. I go to primary school. My father is a farmer. He grows fruit and vegetables. They are good for our health. My mother is a housewife. She likes to help dad with his work.

[١٥] محافظة بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The fennec fox lives in the desert of North Africa. It has big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. The fennec fox weighs around one kilogram.

[١٦] محافظة المنيا - إدارة المنيا التعليمية

• **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Horses are strong animals. They live in the desert. Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses need people to look after them.

(١٧) محافظة أسيوط - إدارة أبو تيج التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Cheng was a gardener. He lived in China. The emperor would give a seed to each gardener. The one who could grow the most beautiful plant would be the next emperor.

Cheng put the seed in the soil and gave it water. But nothing happened because the seed was dead.

(١٨) محافظة سوهاج - إدارة جهينة التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hurghada is a city in Egypt. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. The tourists buy things from the bazaars.

(١٩) محافظة قنا - إدارة قنا التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

My uncle is a farmer. He gets up at six every day. He has two cows. He looks after his animals and gives them food and drink. He grows potatoes.

(٢٠) محافظة الأقصر - إدارة الطود التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my boat to catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

(٢١) محافظة أسوان - إدارة كوم امبو التعليمية

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We plant seeds and the plant grows. The roots grow under the soil.

## Sample Tests for Al-Azhar students

(١) محافظة الإسكندرية - منطقة الاسكندرية الازهرية

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Hossam. My favorite room is the bedroom. I can do my homework quietly in it. It has a big balcony.

(٢) محافظة الشرقية - الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية الأزهرية

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

In Egypt, we grow rice, tomatoes and onions. Farmers raise chickens to get eggs and meat. Farmers produce many things. Our food is delicious.